

# 教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

# ▶ 英语

必修 第二册

配外研版





Unit 1 F	ood for	thought
○单元概览・・	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	1
○探究构建	Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending
	Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points
		Using language 12
○迁移应用		Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 18 用文写作 25 后续写 26
○重构拓展		n
Unit 2 L	et's cele	ebrate!
○单元概览	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	38
○探究构建	Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending
	Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points
	Section IV	Using language
○迁移应用	Part 1 应,	用文写作 ····································
○重构拓展		·····································
Unit 3 C	n the m	iove
○单元概览	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
○探究构建	Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending
	Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points
	Section III Section IV	Using language
○迁移应用		用文写作 ······ 96 后续写 ····· 97

○重构拓展············· 100

UIIIL4 S	riage a	anc	a screen	
 ○单元概览··		• • • • •		116
○探究构建	Section	Ι	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehend	ing
				118
	Section	$\prod$	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language po	
	Section		Using language	
			Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	
○迁移应用			月文写作	
			F续写 ······	
○重构拓展・・	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••		144
Unit 5 C	n the	ro	ad	
○单元概览…		• • • • •		154
○探究构建	Section	Ι	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehend	ing
	Section	$\prod$	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language po	ints
	Section	$\coprod$	Using language	164
	Section	IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	169
○迁移应用			月文写作	
			f续写 ······	
○重构拓展・・	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • •		178
Unit 6 E	arth f	irs	t	
 ○单元概览··				187
○探究构建	Section	Ι	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehend	ing
				189
	Section	$\prod$	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language po	ints
				193
	Section	$\coprod$	Using language	197
	Section	IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	203
○迁移应用			月文写作	211
			F续写 ······	
○重构拓展・・		• • • • •		215

Unit 1

## Food for thought

单元概划	汔。	٦													

## ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is about eating cultures and healthy eating habits. This unit starts with the introduction of typical foods from different countries, and then you will read "A Child of Two Cuisines" to learn about an eating story of a Sino-British transnational family. You also have the chance to read "Cold Truths" to understand how different lifestyles can affect people's diet. You will listen to a conversation about persuading others to choose healthy food and write a recipe for your favourite dish. Through this unit, you are expected to know different eating cultures, think deeply about the relationship between healthy eating and lifestyles, and finally improve your own healthy eating habits.

## ◇ 学习目标

核心素养			具体要求
		词汇	能正确使用与"食物"主题相关的单词和词组。
	语言	语法	能恰当地运用情态动词。
	知识	语篇	能读懂网络点评等语篇并了解其结构特征及语言特点。
		语用	能正确使用情态动词给他人提建议。
		听	听两个好友关于点餐的对话,探讨不健康的饮食会给人带来什么危害,并能用恰当的表达劝告朋友做到健康饮食。
语言能力	语言	说	1. 能用自己的语言恰当表达食物的色、香、味等特征; 2. 能根据语境的需要,简要描述不同国家的餐桌礼仪; 3. 能就健康饮食给他人提出合理的建议。
	技能	读	1. 阅读"A Child of Two Cuisines",了解中英两国的代表性食物及不同的饮食习惯和文化; 2. 阅读"Cold Truths",了解不同职业的不同饮食习惯,并对这些习惯进行评价,形成健康的饮食观念。
		写	能运用所学知识介绍中国的美食。

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	<ol> <li>能读懂语篇内容,听懂并谈论与饮食相关的话题;</li> <li>能使用新学习的语言点描述健康的与不健康的饮食习惯;</li> <li>能恰当使用情态动词对他人的饮食提出合理的建议。</li> </ol>
文化意识	1. 了解中外不同的饮食习惯和餐桌礼仪,丰富对饮食文化的认知; 2. 明确不健康的饮食习惯会给人带来的危害,形成健康的饮食观念。
思维品质	1. 能正确遵循餐桌礼仪,了解不同国家的餐桌礼仪; 2. 能正确看待不同国家的不同饮食习惯,尊重差异,开阔国际视野; 3. 能分辨健康的和不健康的饮食习惯,对不健康的饮食方式提出合理的建议,选择健康的食物, 增强健康饮食的意识。

## ○ 必备知识

必背单词	maple, pudding, snack, marriage, wedding, sort, super, butter, typical, suffer, horrible, gather, bite, poison, china, symbol, opinion, function, download, diet, addict, tip, custom, plate, slightly, recommend, attack, yoghurt, within, belong, honey, satisfying, convenient, identify, blog, originally, official, resist, adapt
重点表达	take to, suffer from, come across, remind of, feel at home, had better, put to the test, in case, belong to, end up, catch up, bring up, pick up
重点知识	1. ever since 引导时间状语从句 2. each time 引导时间状语从句 3. too to 4. "否定词+比较级"表达最高级含义
单元 语法	情态动词(1)
单元 写作	食品介绍类文章

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Get the main idea of this text by skimming.
- 2. Find out the family's opinions on different kinds of food by scanning.
- **3.** Develop a cross-cultural attitude to different food cultures.

## 自主式预习。

#### 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

- 1. maple n. 枫树,槭树
- 2. pudding n. 布丁
- 3. butter n. 黄油,牛油
- 4. marriage n. 婚姻
- 5. wedding n. 婚礼
- 6. super adj. 极好的,了不起的
- 7. horrible adj. 糟糕的
- 8. china n. 瓷,瓷料
- 9. sort n. 种,类
- **10.** typical *adj*. 典型的,有代表性的
- 11. symbol n. 象征,标志
- **12.** opinion *n*. 意见,看法

- 13. gather v. 聚集
- 14. suffer from 遭受;因……而蒙受损害
- 15. remind... of... 使……想起……
- 16. come across 偶遇;偶然发现;被理解

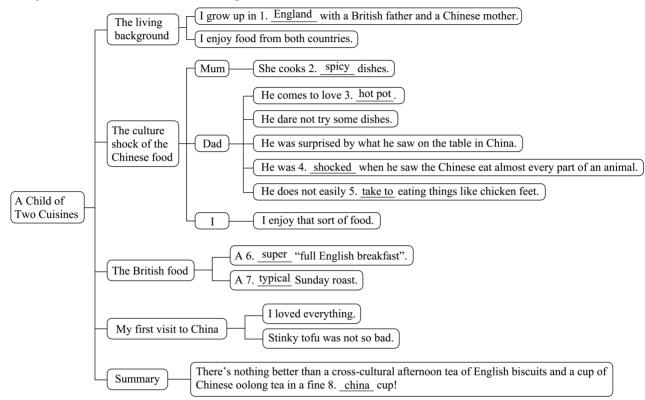
#### (二)阅读词汇

- 1. dare modal verb 胆敢,敢于
- 2. sausage n. 香肠
- 3. butcher n. 肉贩
- 4. poison n. 毒素,毒物,毒药
- **5.** cuisine n. 烹饪(法)
- 6. toast n. 烤面包(片),吐司
- 7. cheese n. 干酪,奶酪
- 8. take to doing sth. 养成做某事的习惯
- 9. feel at home 舒适自在,不拘束

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

## Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What does "this" mean in the sentence "Thanks to this, Dad has come to love hot pot!" in Paragraph 2?
  - A. Mum is a Chinese.
  - B. Mum often cooks spicy dishes.
  - C. Mum loves Dad.
  - D. Mum loves hot pot, too.
- **2.** What shocked the author's father when he first visited his parents-in-law?
  - A. The wedding celebration.
  - B. The spoken language.
  - C. The Chinese tea.
  - D. The Chinese food.
- **3.** How did the butcher feel when the author went to buy pigs' ears?
  - A. Unbelievable.
  - B. Satisfied.
  - C. Happy.
  - D. Frightened.

- **4.** What's the author's attitude towards food from the two cultures?
  - A. He prefers to eat British food rather than Chinese food.
  - B. He agrees with the proverb "One man's meat is another man's poison."
  - C. He feels at home with food from the two cultures.
  - D. He has taken to eating Chinese food.

#### 答案:1~4 BDAC

#### ○语言知识运用

## Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them,

1. Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

[尝试翻译] 我在英国长大,爸爸是英国人,妈妈是中国人,从我能拿刀叉还有筷子开始,我就一直在享受这两个国家的食物!

2. He once told me he was surprised by what he saw on the table when he first visited my mother's parents in China.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。主句是 He once told me... on the table。在主句中, he was surprised by what he saw on the table 是宾语从 句;在该宾语从句中,又含有从句 what he saw on the table,作介词 by 的宾语; when he... China 是 时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]他曾经告诉我,当他第一次去中国拜访 我妈妈的父母时,他对餐桌上摆放的食物感到惊讶 不已。

3. We all love roast beef and vegetables, but Mum says we'd better not eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies, according to traditional Chinese medicine.

[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句,but 前是简单

句,其后是复合句。we'd better not eat too much roast food 为省略了 that 的宾语从句, as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies 是 as 引导的原因状语从句, according to traditional Chinese medicine 为介词短语作状语。

[尝试翻译]我们都喜欢烤牛肉和蔬菜,但是妈妈 说我们最好不要吃太多的烤制食物,因为根据中 医学的说法,这可能会使我们的身体遭受内热之 苦。

#### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- 1. What did the butcher mean by saying "just these ordinary ones"?
  - He thought the author was joking.
- 2. What food from other regions in China impressed you most? Please introduce it briefly.

#### 课后素养评价(一) Unit 1

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### Ⅰ. 阅读理解

What is one of the best parts of travelling abroad? It's the food, of course! Eating different foods native to a country, authentically (地道地) prepared by locals, is special. Trying these native foods will widen what you know about a country's cuisine. I discovered that this is true for Chinese food. Chinese food in China is much more diverse (多样的) and rich in tastes and spices (香料) than I had ever imagined before my travels.

Before travelling to China, I was a little worried about whether I would really enjoy the food or not. I was not sure what types of food I would be trying, but I have always enjoyed eating Chinese food in Massachusetts. However, I was only used to the spring rolls and Gong Bao Chicken of American Chinese cuisine.

Don't get me wrong. I still love these dishes from my local Chinese restaurants! However, I did not realise how much variety of food there actually was to try in China and the cultural differences that I would learn to understand during my time abroad.

In my first few days, I fell in love with one of Beijing's most famous dishes called Peking duck. Some of my friends had told me that we were going to one of the best Peking duck restaurants in Beijing, and they were not wrong! The Peking duck we ate surprised us, with thin, crisp (酥脆的) skin on the outside, delicious meat on the inside and various tasty sauces.

As I began trying new foods like Guilin mifen (rice noodles), I started to love these foods that I had never tried before in my life. While I was in Chengdu, I even learned about the ingredients (原 料) of an authentic "huo guo" (hot pot).

After my time abroad in China, I realised how much I enjoyed eating and trying new foods. I also soon realised that the Chinese food here in America is different from that actually in China.

- 1. What does the underlined word "this" in Paragraph 1 refer to?
  - A. Eating actual local food improves the understanding of a country's cuisine.
  - B. Eating locally is becoming more and more important worldwide.
  - C. Food differs from country to country in both taste and richness.
  - D. Food is one of the most interesting parts of
  - A 代词指代题。根据第一段中的"Trying these

native foods will widen what you know about a country's cuisine."以及画线词下文"Chinese food in China is much more diverse (多样的) and rich in tastes and spices (香料) than I had ever imagined before my travels."可知,作者认为品尝当地美食可以拓宽你对一个国家饮食文化的了解,他发现这对中国食物来说确实如此。由此可知,此处的 this 指代"品尝当地美食有助于更好地了解一个国家的饮食"。故选 A。

- **2.** What did the author worry about before going to China?
  - A. What types of food he should introduce to his friend.
  - B. Whether he could get used to the local dishes.
  - C. How to understand a menu in Chinese.
  - D. Where to find some authentic restaurants.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Before travelling to China, I was a little worried about whether I would really enjoy the food or not. I was not sure what types of food I would be trying, but I have always enjoyed eating Chinese food in Massachusetts."可知,在去中国旅行之前,作者有点担心自己是否喜欢中国的食物。故选 B。
- 3. What did the author think of Peking duck?
  - A. It was very famous among foreigners.
  - B. It was more in name than in reality.
  - C. It was quite expensive.
  - D. It was really amazing.
  - D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"In my first few days, I fell in love with one of Beijing's most famous dishes called Peking duck. Some of my friends had told me that we were going to one of the best Peking duck restaurants in Beijing, and they were not wrong!"可知,北京烤鸭惊艳到了作者,他非常喜欢吃这道菜。故选 D。
- **4.** What do we know about the author from the text? A. He would like to live in Guilin.
  - B. He wants to start his career as a chef.
  - C. He keeps an open mind to new foods.
  - D. He loses interest in the Chinese food in America.
  - C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者非常愿意尝试新食物,他对新食物保持开放的心态。故选C。

#### Ⅱ. 七选五

Usually, healthy diets and a healthy lifestyle fill you with fear because you imagine a simple green salad for lunch and countless hours of doing sports.

- 1 Here are some advantages of healthy eating.
  - \* You'll feel alive and have more energy.

Healthy eating isn't just about keeping your body healthy, but also about allowing your body to turn what you eat into energy. 2 They can keep you full for longer, and turn you into an energetic person ready to take on the world, or a least go dancing once in a while!

#### \* 3

When you start eating healthy food, your body learns to act. This keeps you away from seasonal colds, and even if you catch a flu by accident, it won't cause as much harm, and you'll overcome it more easily.

- \* A happier mood becomes your everyday mood.
- \* The skin will regrow faster, and you'll look younger.

Unluckily, your skin really does show what you eat, drink, or smoke. Being the largest part of your body, your skin is possibly most influenced by your poor food choices. 5

- A. You will never be ill.
- B. Illnesses and colds are a thing of the past.
- C. The longer you keep your body healthy, the longer you will live.
- D. But a healthy diet will make you look younger than you really are.
- E. Proper nutrition means that your body has enough energy to go every day.
- F. Adding vegetables and whole foods to your meals will increase your energy levels.
- G. But you will change your opinions by learning what good proper meals and exercise do to you.

#### 答案:1~5 GFBED

## Starting out & Understanding ideas Section | Language points

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Learn more words and expressions about feelings and opinions.
- 2. Learn and use some key words and expressions.
- 3. Master and use some important sentence structures.

#### 自主式预习。

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. It's not a good idea to miss meals or replace them with snacks.
- 2. All the brides look beautiful on their wedding days.

- 3. There are so many different sorts of mushrooms available these days.
- 4. Some people use "super" to mean "very nice or very good". 极好的,了不起的
- 5. In the evenings, we gathered around the fireplace and talked.
- 6. She took a couple of bites of the sandwich.

(咬下的)一口

- 7. The rose is regarded as a symbol of love in both China and some Western countries.
- 8. The media play a major role in influencing people's opinions. 意见,看法

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
marriago es des des	marry v. 结婚;娶;嫁
marriage n. 婚姻	married adj. 已婚的
suffer v. (身体或精神 上) 受苦	suffering n. (肉体或精神上的)痛苦,苦难,折磨
工)文古	sufferer n. 患者;受苦者
horrible adj. 糟糕的	horribly adv. 糟糕地
poison n. 毒素,毒物, 毒药	poisonous adj. 有毒的
typical adj. 典型的, 有代表性的	typically adv. 典型地,具 有代表性地

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. come across 偶遇;偶然发现;被理解
- 2. remind... of ... 使 ..... 想起 ......
- 3. grow up 成长;长大
- 4. thanks to 多亏;由于
- 5. take to 喜欢上,对……产生好感;养成……的习惯
- 6. suffer from 遭受;因……而蒙受损害
- 7. according to 根据

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语

Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

我在英国长大,爸爸是英国人,妈妈是中国人,从 我能拿刀叉还有筷子开始,我就一直在享受这两 个国家的食物!

2. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

He once told me he was surprised by what he saw on the table when he first visited my mother's parents in China.

他曾经告诉我,当他第一次去中国拜访我妈妈的 父母时,他对餐桌上摆放的食物感到惊讶不已。

3. 句型公式: must have done He must have thought I was joking.

他一定以为我在开玩笑。

4. 句型公式:"否定词+比较级"表示最高级

To me, there's nothing better than a crosscultural afternoon tea of English biscuits and a cup of Chinese oolong tea in a fine china cup! 对我来说,没有什么比由英式饼干和用精致瓷杯 沏的中国乌龙茶组成的这种跨文化的下午茶更好 的了!

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### 1. marriage n. 婚姻

[教材原文] But there are still some dishes that Dad dare not try even after many years of marriage to my mother.

但是,尽管已经和妈妈结婚好多年了,爸爸还是不敢尝试一些菜。

#### 「归纳拓展]

- (1) marriage to sb. 与某人的婚姻
- (2) marry v. 结婚;娶;嫁
- (3) married adj. 已婚的

be married to 与……结婚(表状态) get married to 与……结婚(表动作)

#### ---名 师 点 拨 ■■■■

marry 是及物动词,表示"与某人结婚"直接说marry sb.,不用在其后加介词 with。但形容词married 后可加 to sb.,表示"与某人结婚"。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Her father will never approve of her marriage to Tom.
- They plan to get married (marry) in summer.
- ③The old couple have been married (marry) for 40 years and never have they quarrelled with each other.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)我们计划为祖父母举办一个聚会,**庆祝他们结婚五十周年**。

We are planning to hold a party for our grandparents to celebrate their fiftieth anniversary of marriage.

#### 2. take to 喜欢上,对……产生好感;养成……的习惯

[教材原文] Even today, he still does not easily **take to** eating things like chicken feet.

直到今天,他还是很难喜欢上吃鸡爪之类的东西。「归纳拓展」

take off 脱下(衣服等);起飞

take down 拿下,取下;拆卸;记下

take back 退回;同意收回(退货);收回(说过的话);使······回忆起

take on 承担,从事;呈现;雇用

take up 开始从事;占用(时间或空间)

take apart 拆开

take in 吸收;领会,理解;接收,收留;欺骗

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①(2023 新课标Ⅱ卷)I once took <u>up</u> a challenge to create a painting every day for a month and

post the works online.

- ②The lecturer had the feeling that a good deal of what he said had not been taken in by the students.
- ③ With the development of science and technology, my hometown has taken <u>on</u> a new look.
- ①It took me a while to take to the new job, but now I'm enjoying it.
- (2)写作微练

(2024·新课标 I 卷读后续写之动作描写)我拿出笔记本,问冈特的电话号码,**赶紧把它记了下来**,承诺我会给他回电话的。

I took out my notebook, asked Gunter's number and took it down hurriedly, promising I would call him back.

#### 3. come across 偶遇;偶然发现;被理解

[教材原文]... I came across stinky tofu, a horrible grey thing that looked and smelt like a burnt sports shoe.

……我遇到了臭豆腐,一种可怕的灰色食物,样子和气味就像是烧焦的运动鞋。

#### 「归纳拓展」

come about (=happen) 发生

come out (太阳、月亮等)出现;开花;出版,发表 come up (困难或问题)出现;被提出;长出地面;破 土而出

come up with 找到或提出(答案、办法等) when it comes to... 当谈到……时

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①In our daily life, we will come <u>across</u> various barriers (障碍), so we should try to break them down.
- ② He has just finished writing his book and it will come out next month.
- 3 The police have been looking into how the plane crash came about.
- ④I planted some lily seeds in the yard. But they failed to come up.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之感谢信)我写信是为了表达我对你的衷心感谢,因为**每当我遇到困难时**,你总是帮助我。

I'm writing to express my heartfelt gratitude to you because you always help me whenever I come across difficulties.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)说到环境保护,植树也成 为使我们的家乡变得更加干净的一个重要手段。

When it comes to environmental protection, planting trees has also become an important means by which our hometown becomes much cleaner.

#### 4. ever since 引导时间状语从句

[教材原文]Growing up in England with a British father and a Chinese mother, I've enjoyed food from both countries ever since I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!

我在英国长大,爸爸是英国人,妈妈是中国人,从我 能拿刀叉还有筷子开始,我就一直在享受这两个国 家的食物!

「句式分析]本句中的 ever since 意为"自从, 自……以来",引导时间状语从句。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(ever) since 意为"自从,自……以来",其后可以跟 短语或从句;从句的时态常用一般过去时,主句的 时态常用现在完成时或现在完成进行时。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Ever since childhood. sister and my I have dreamed (dream) about taking a great bike
- 2 They have been friends ever since they were

(be) in primary school.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之通知)上周五我们开了一次班会, 会上老师告诉我们一个消息,一个以"劳动最光荣" 为主题的活动将会举行,从那以后我们都情绪高 昂。

Last Friday we had a class meeting where our teacher told us the news that an activity on the theme of "Labor is the most glorious" would be held and we all have been in high spirits ever

②(读后续写之心理描写)自从我和他失去联系,我 就一直面临着一种深深的失落感。

Ever since I lost contact with him, I have been faced with a deep sense of loss.

## 多义词汇 专练

- 1. take to A. 养成……的习惯 B. 喜欢上
  - ① More and more students take to the new teaching method of the English teacher.
  - 2 The writer had taken to jogging in the early morning before he became famous.
- 2. There are two parks less than 10 minutes' walk from home where neighbourhood children gather to play. A
  - A. v. 聚集 B. v. 采集 C. v. 收拢,归拢

## Unit 1 课后素养评价(二)

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. It's typical of our maths teacher to be very patient with us. Never have I seen her get angry with us.
- 2. Mary came into the house nervously, not daring (dare) to lift her head.
- 3. Thanks to your help, we accomplished the task ahead of schedule.
- 4. He is one of my old schoolmates, who I came across the other day in the street.
- 5. They have taken to wandering (wander) through the streets arm in arm.
- 6. Nothing is more valuable (valuable) than time, but nothing is less valued.

#### Ⅱ. 短语填空

deal with; sort of; suffer from; feel at home; take to; make an impression on; come across; remind... of...

- 1. If you suffer from serious sleep problems, go to your doctor, who will help treat the problems.
- 2. He came cross this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
- 3. Watching antelopes move slowly across the green grass, I'm attracted by the lovely animals. I'm also reminded of the danger they are in.
- 4. By the end of the year she was beginning to feel at home in her new school.
- 5. The writer has taken to getting up at 6 and going jogging ever since he was in university.
- 6. Although she had only met the old man once, his manners made an impression on her.
- 7. Learning to resolve conflicts can help students deal with friends, teachers, and parents.

8. To tell the truth, I sort of like this writer's new novel.

#### Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 站在楼顶上,我们可以看到整个城市。(现在分词 短语作状语)

Standing on the top of the building, we can see the whole city.

- 2. 自从我们成为朋友以来,我们一起经历了很多难忘的时刻。(ever since 引导时间状语从句)

  Ever since we became friends, we've shared many memorable experiences together.
- 3. 这就是我想要告诉你的。(what 引导表语从句)
  This is what I want to tell you.
- 4. 昨晚一定下雨了,因为地面是湿的。(情态动词+have done)

It <u>must have rained</u> last night, for the ground is wet.

5. 如果我们情绪低落或感到孤独,那么没有什么比看到好朋友的一张笑脸更好的了。(用比较级表最高级)

And if we are feeling down or lonely, there is nothing better than to see the smiling face of a good friend.

#### Ⅳ. 完形填空

#### Tomorrow Will Be Another Day

On my way home from work every evening, there would be a homeless middle-aged man standing by the walkway. He was always \_\_1\_\_, smiling and sometimes almost dancing.

Every day after work I would remember to gather any spare 2, and put it aside. If I saw him I'd give him the coins. A feeling of 3 would come over me every time I saw him as he looked to feel joyful. Sometimes we would ask each other about our day. His 4 would be the same, "I'm fine, Have a bright day."

I knew what his reply was going to be every time, \_\_5\_ I would still ask. It \_\_6\_ me that even in his situation of being homeless, he was so cheerful. He \_\_7\_ me how lucky I was, a single mother of four kids, with a good job to provide for

them.

Then one day I was called into my boss's office and was told that I was 8 due to the weak economy. A feeling of worry filled my mind immediately, and for the rest of that day all I could think about was "How am I going to 9 my family, and how am I going to pay rent?"

That day I was very sad and upset on my way home. I <u>10</u> forgot to prepare some coins for the homeless man as usual. As I waited for the red light to turn, he walked over with a big smile and asked, "How is everything going?" I told him I lost my job and felt really bad. "OK, I will <u>11</u> you a dollar today. Tomorrow will be another day," said the man.

I was deeply <u>12</u> and burst into tears. I wanted to hug him! That day what the man handed me was more than a dollar bill. He taught me a <u>13</u> lesson. Whatever material things are taken from you, no one can take away your <u>14</u> to be joyful. Tomorrow will be a bright day and full of 15.

1. A. happy B. shy

C. nervous D. careful

A 根据题空所在的句子和下文的"as he looked to feel joyful"可知,这个中年男人总是很快乐(happy)。故选 A。

**2.** A. time B. food

C. change D. water

C 根据下文的"If I saw him I'd give him the coins."可知,作者每天下班后,都会把多余的零钱(change)收起来放在一边。故选 C。

3. A. pity B. pain
C. anger D. joy

D 根据下文的"I saw him as he looked to feel joyful"可知,作者的喜悦(joy)之情油然而生。故选D。

4. A. demand B. answer
C. view D. reason

B 根据上文的"we would ask"及下文可知,此处 指这个中年人的回答(answer)。故选 B。

- **5**. A. but
- B. for

C. or

D. so

A 根据题空所在的句子可知,上下文表示转折关 系。故选A。

- 6. A. satisfied
- B. frightened
- C. disappointed
- D. amazed
- D 根据下文的"even in his situation of being homeless, he was so cheerful"可知,作者对那个中 年男人在无家可归的情况下还是那么快乐感到非 常惊讶(amazed)。故选 D。
- 7. A. informed

B. advised

C. reminded

D. warned

C 根据题空所在的句子可知,这个中年男人的乐 观提醒(reminded)作者自己是很幸运的。故选 C。

8. A. fired

B. examined

C. questioned

D. invited

A 根据下文的"the weak economy"以及"How am I going to 9 my family, and how am I going to pay rent?"可知,作者被解雇(fired)了。 故选A。

**9.** A. miss

B. support

C. trust

D. check

B 根据下文的"how am I going to pay rent"可 知,作者得知自己被解雇以后,心里想着怎样支撑 (support)自己的家。故选 B。

**10.** A. still

C. even

D. always

C 根据上文的"That day I was very sad and upset on my way home."可知,作者被解雇了之

后非常沮丧,这里的 even 指程度的加深,即作者 甚至(even)把平日经常做的事情都忘记了。故选  $C_{\circ}$ 

11. A. charge

B. find

C. show

D. give

D 根据题空所在的句子和下文的"what the man handed me was more than a dollar bill"可 知,作者看到了那个无家可归的中年男人,中年男 人说:"好,今天我给(give)你一美元。"故选 D。

**12**. A. moved

B. hurt

C. lost

D. relaxed

A 根据下文的"... burst into tears. I wanted to hug him!"可知,作者因为中年男人的举动而非常 感动(moved)。故选 A。

13. A. terrible

B. valuable

C. hard

D. strange

B 根据题空所在的句子和上文内容可知,中年 男人的话语和举动给作者上了宝贵的(valuable) 一课。故选B。

**14.** A. cost

B. secret

C. stress

D. choice

D 根据题空所在的句子可知,没有人能夺走你 对快乐的选择(choice)。故选 D。

**15**. A. doubt

B. regret

C. hope

D. praise

C 根据上文的"Tomorrow will be a bright day" 可知,此处作者想要表述的是明天又是新的一天, 充满了希望(hope)。故选 C。

## Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Learn and use some key words and expressions.
- 2. Summarise the basic usage of be able to do, dare, have to, had better and need.
- 3. Use the words above to complete the tips for good table manners.
- 4. Know how to comment on food and how to eat healthily.

## ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- As we all know, the function of the heart is to pump blood through the body.
   功能;作用
- Fresh fruit and vegetables are a very important part of our diet.

  日常饮食
- 3. It is bad manners to talk with your mouth full.

礼貌,礼仪

- 4. The website gives new graduates **tips** on applying for jobs. 建议
- 5. The general massed his troops for a final attack.

攻击

- 6. The photos can be **downloaded** for free from our website. 下载
- 7. Within these old walls there was once a town.

在……里

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇				
related adj. 有关系的,相关的	relate v. 有关联;把······ 联系起来				
addict n. 对······着迷	addicted adj. 上瘾的				
的人	addiction n. 瘾;入迷				
custom n. 风俗,习惯, 传统	accustom v. 使习惯于, 使适应				
	accustomed adj. 习惯的				
differ v. 不同,不一样, 有区别	different adj. 不同的;个 别的				
	difference n. 差异,不同				
slightly adv. 略微,稍微	slight adj. 轻微的,细小的				

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
incredibly adv. 极端	incredible <i>adj</i> . 不能相信的,难以置信的
地,非常地	credible $adj$ . 可靠的,可信的
recommend v. 推荐	recommendation n. 推荐; 建议

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. had better 最好
- 2. sort of 有几分;近似;有那么点儿
- 3. pick up 拿起,捡起
- 4. in case 以防万一
- 5. in different situations 在不同情况下
- 6. stay/keep healthy 保持健康
- 7. pay for 为 ...... 付款

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: until 引导时间状语从句 You have to wait <u>until everyone else has been</u> <u>served</u> before you start eating.

你必须等到所有人的食物上齐了才可以开始吃。

2. 句型公式:in case 引导条件状语从句

Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up in case you get it wrong.

有时有那么多的刀叉,以至于你不敢拿起来,以防 弄错了。

3. 句型公式: each time 引导时间状语从句

The sugar in soft drinks forms acid and attacks our teeth for about 20 minutes each time we drink them.

软饮料中的糖会形成酸,每次我们喝它的时候,它们就会侵蚀我们的牙齿大约20分钟。

Е

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### 1. addict n. 对······着迷的人

[教材原文]So, if you're a sugar addict and aren't able to say no to chocolate or cola, you had better download it now!

因此,如果你是个对糖有瘾的人,而且不能拒绝巧 克力或可乐,你最好现在就下载它!

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)a TV addict 电视迷
- (2)addicted adj. 上瘾的

be/get/become addicted to (doing) sth. 对(做)某事人 迷/上瘾

- (3)addictive adj. 使人上瘾的;使人入迷的
- (4)addiction n. 瘾;入迷

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Young people addicted (addict) to the Internet can go to the doctor to ask for some advice.
- ②I find jogging very addictive (addict).
- 3 People who suffer from addiction are called addicts. (addict)
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信)我对电子产品如此上瘾,以 致出现了一系列健康问题。

So addicted to electronic products am I that a series of health problems are arising.(用过去分词 短语作状语)

#### 2. in case 以防万一

[教材原文] Sometimes there are so many knives and forks that you dare not pick them up in case you get it wrong.

有时有那么多的刀叉,以至于你不敢拿起来,以防 弄错了。

#### 「归纳拓展」

in any case 无论如何,不管怎样

in case of 万一,如果;防备

in no case 无论如何不(置于句首,句子用倒装语 序)

in this/that case 在这/那种情况下;既然这样/那

as is often the case 通常就是这样

#### ┈名 师 点 拨 ■■■■■

- (1) in case 可用作副词,也可用作连词,引导从 句。
- (2) case 常作定语从句的先行词,后面跟 where 引导 的定语从句,表示抽象意义的地点。

Have you ever had such a case where you are vague about a person's name?

你有没有记不清楚别人名字的情况呢?

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①We'll discuss a case where the shortage of water is a serious problem due to population growth and water pollution.
- ② As is often the case, being addicted to electronic products makes it hard for you to concentrate on study.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之活动报道)在讲座中,消防员向我 们展示了万一发生火灾时应该做什么,如何预防火 灾,以及如何使用不同种类的消防设备。

In the lecture, the firefighter showed us what to do in case of a fire, how to prevent the fire and how to use different kinds of firefighting equipment.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)在任何情况下我们都不 应该违背自然规律,否则我们会遭受很多痛苦。

In no case should we go against the law of nature, or we'll suffer a lot.(倒装句)

## 多义词汇 专练

- 1. **tip**: A. n. 小费 B. n. 提示 C. n. 尖端 D. v. 付小费 E. v. (使)倾斜
  - ① Sorry, your name is just on the **tip** of my tongue.
  - ②After I had my hair cut, I gave the hairdresser A
  - 3 The boat tipped to one side.
  - 4 She tipped the waiter two dollars for his excellent service. D
  - ⑤(2024 · 浙江 1 月卷) The **tip** that comes up most often is simple: build online courses into your weekly schedule, just like what you would do with in-person courses. В
- 2. handle: A. n. 柄,把手 B. v. 处理 C. v. 拿
  - ① Consider turning your travel plan over to a travel agent and letting him double-check all the details, make suggestions, and then handle the actual reservations. В

- 2 The way you handle chopsticks is important to C avoid annoying your companions.
- 3 She presses the button, pulls the handle and the door pops opens. Α
- 3. (2024 · 新课标 [ 卷) After Charlie had a heart attack, Tindale says, she was prepared to put

him to sleep, but Farber's treatments eased her dog's suffering so much that she was able to keep him alive for an additional five months.

A. n. 发作,侵袭

B. n. 攻击:袭击

C. n. 抨击, 非难

D. n. (情感的)一阵突发

## 语法研习课

## 情态动词(1)

### • 语法感知

- ①... I was able to hold a knife and fork—and chopsticks!
- 2) But there are still some dishes that Dad dare not try even after many years of marriage to my mother.
- 3... Mum and I just have to find a way to get him into the kitchen!
- 4... we'd better not eat too much roast food as it may make us suffer from heat inside our bodies, ...
- 5"You needn't try it if you don't want to," Mum said, ...
- 1. 情态动词的基本特征是有一定的词义,不能单独作 谓语,需和实义动词或系动词一起作谓语。情态动 词后接动词原形。
- 2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化,个别情态动词有 现在时和过去时两种时态变化。
- 3. 构成否定句时, not 放在情态动词后面, 如句②④

### ○语法精讲

#### 一、概念理解

1. 情态动词有一定的词义,不能单独作谓语,需和实 义动词或系动词一起作谓语。

She can speak English though she is six. 尽管她才6岁,但她会说英语。

2. 情态动词一般无人称和数的变化,个别情态动词有 现在时和过去时两种时态变化。

I couldn't get the tickets after all; they were sold

我最终还是没能拿到票;票全部卖完了。

- 3. 构成否定句时, not 放在情态动词后面。 The young man can't carry the big stone. 这个年轻人搬不动那块大石头。
- 4. 情态动词后接动词原形。

I'll see what I can do to help. 我看看我能帮上什么忙。

#### 二、部分情态动词与 had better 的基本用法

#### 1. can, could

(1)意为"能,会",指拥有做某事的能力、机会、时 间等。其中,can 表示现在的能力,could 表示过去 的能力。

By the time she was five, she could read English. 她五岁时就能读英文了。

You never know what you can do till you try.

除非你亲自尝试一下,否则你永远不知道自己能

- (2)表示请求、许可。在疑问句中, could 可以代替 can,此时 could 不是过去式,使用 could 可以使语 气更委婉。
- —Can/Could I speak to your manager?
- —Yes, you can./No, you can't.
- 一我能跟你们经理说话吗?
- 一是的,可以。/不,不可以。
- (3)表示惊讶、怀疑等,常用于否定句和疑问句。

How can you be so careless!

你怎么会这么粗心!

You can't be serious!

你一定是在开玩笑!

#### 2. need

(1)作情态动词

need 作情态动词时,后跟动词原形,意为"需要,有 必要",无人称和数的变化,多用于疑问句、否定句 或条件句中。其否定形式是在其后直接加 not,疑 问形式是直接将 need 提到主语前。由 need 构成 的一般疑问句,其肯定回答用 must 或 have to,否 定回答常用 needn't。

- —Need I finish the work today?
- -Yes, you must/have to./No, you needn't.
- 一我需要今天做完这项工作吗?
- 一是的,你必须做完。/不用,你不必做完。

There's plenty of time. You needn't drive so fast. 时间很充足,你不必开这么快。

#### (2)作实义动词

need 作实义动词时,后可接名词、动名词、不定式 等,有人称、时态和数的变化,其否定形式、疑问形 式都要通过加助动词 do 构成。物作主语时, need 后跟 doing 或 to be done。

There are always people who need help from others.

总会有人需要他人的帮助。

He didn't **need to set off** so early.

他不必这么早出发。

Do I need to leave my telephone number and address?

我有必要把电话号码和地址留下吗?

The bike **needs** repairing.

= The bike needs to be repaired.

这辆自行车需要修理。

#### 3. must 与 have to

- (1) must 意为"必须",语气强烈。have to 意为"不 得不",意义与 must 相近,但又有所区别。must 表示说话人的主观看法, have to 则强调客观需要; must 只有一种形式,而 have to 有人称、时态等的 变化。
- -Shall I inform him of the change of the schedule right now?
- -I am afraid you must, in case he comes late for the meeting.
- 一日程改了,我该马上通知他吗?
- 一我想你必须(通知他),以免他开会迟到。

I have to go now, because my mother is in hospital.

我现在得走了,因为我母亲在住院。

(2) must 意为"偏要,非要……不可"。

If you **must** go, at least wait until the storm is over.

如果你非要走,至少等到暴风雨停了。

(3) mustn't 表示禁止,意为"不得,不允许;一定不 要"。

That car is my property; you mustn't use it without my permission.

那辆车是我的财产,没有我的允许你不能使用它。

(4) have to 意为"不得不",有时态、人称和数的变 化,其否定形式为 don't/doesn't/didn't have to。

It's too late, I have to go home now.

天色太晚了,我现在得回家了。

You don't have to finish the work now. 你没有必要现在完成这项工作。

#### 4. will, would

(1)表示请求、建议等,多用于第二人称疑问句,

would 比 will 语气更委婉。

Will/Would you pass me the ball, please? 请把球 传给我好吗?

(2)表示意志、愿望和决心。

I will never do that again.

我再也不会那样做了。

She said she wouldn't be coming to the store any

她说她再也不会来这家商店了。

(3)表示习惯性的动作、必然趋势或固有属性,意 为"就会;总是"。

As is known to all, fish will die without water. 众所周知, 鱼离开水就会死。

On summer evenings, they would sit outside, chatting.

夏日的夜晚,他们总会坐在外面聊天。

(4)表示物体的功能或倾向性。

The car won't start.

这辆车发动不起来。

#### 5. shall

(1)shall 用于第一、三人称疑问句,表示说话者征 求对方的意见。

Shall I wait for you at the gate?

我在门口等你好吗?

(2) shall 用于第二、三人称陈述句,表示命令、威 胁、警告、允诺等。

You shall suffer for this.

你会为此事吃苦头的。(表示威胁)

You shall be punished if you break the rules. 如果你违反规则,就会受到惩罚。(表示警告)

You shall have the book when I finish reading. 我读完之后你就能拿到这本书。(表示允诺) (3) shall 用于规定、法令、条约等正式文件中, 意为 "必须"。

All payments shall be made in cash. 所有款项都必须以现金支付。

#### 6. should

(1) should 表示义务、责任、劝告、建议等,意为"应 该:应当"。

We **should** pay attention when crossing the road. 我们过马路的时候应该小心。

(2) should 表示惊奇、遗憾等,意为"竟然"。

It's surprising that he should have failed to pass such an exam.

真令人吃惊,这样的考试他竟然都没通过。

#### 7. dare

(1)dare 既可以作实义动词,也可以作情态动词。 作情态动词时多用于疑问句、否定句、条件状语从 句以及表示怀疑的名词性从句中,意为"敢……"。

I dare not walk through the wood at night.

夜间,我不敢在小树林里走。

How **dare** you say that he's a thief? 你怎么敢说他是一个贼呢?

#### ---名 师 点 拨■■■■

dare 作情态动词时没有第三人称单数形式,但有过去式。

He dared not tell people the truth. 他不敢告诉人们实情。

(2) dare 作实义动词时,在否定句、疑问句中不定式符号 to 也可以省略。

I don't dare (to) climb first.

我不敢第一个爬。

Does he **dare** (**to**) **go** out alone at night? 他晚上敢一个人出去吗?

#### 8. had better

had better 后跟动词原形,表示"最好……",其否定式在 had better 后加 not。而构成疑问式时,则通常将 had(而不是 had better)置于主语之前。

You'**d better get** there before it gets dark. 你最好天黑前到达那里。

We'd better not talk so loudly.

我们最好不要这么大声说话。

What had we better do?

我们最好怎么办?

### ·语法冲关

#### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. You had better not talk (talk) with strangers.
- 2. —Need I hand in my homework today?
  - -Yes, you must/have to.
- Most of us love weekends, because we don't need to get (get) up early.
- 4. They had better not go there together, <u>had</u> they?
- **5.** All the students have to hand in a composition once a week, don't they?

#### Ⅱ. 完成句子

- 1. <u>Can/Could you help me</u> with this box? 你能帮我搬一下这个箱子吗?
- 2. He had to ask for leave last week, because his sick mother needed taking care of/to be taken care of.

上周他不得不请假,因为他生病的母亲需要照顾。

3. The king was so hot-tempered that no one <u>dared</u>
(to) tell him the bad news.

国王脾气极差,以至于没有人敢告诉他这个坏消息。

- **4.** On Sundays, he would go fishing. 星期天,他总是去钓鱼。
- 5. Shall we meet somewhere for lunch? 我们约个地方一起吃午饭好吗?

## Unit 1 课后素养评价(三)

## Section II Using language

#### Ⅰ. 词语填空

function; in case; custom; download; diet; attack; tip

- 1. You can <u>download</u> the file and edit it on your word processor.
- **2.** I have learned a lot about robots, especially about their functions and shapes.
- 3. You should observe the local <u>customs</u> when you go abroad.
- **4.** Do you have any ideas or <u>tips</u> on how to organise magazines?
- **5.** When the enemy <u>attacked</u>, they were completely powerless against them.
- 6. In case you should need any help, here's my number.
- 7. People are advised to eat a <u>diet</u> with much less fat or oil.

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. We had better not let him go there, had we?
- 2. The fire was very big, but all the people were able to escape (escape) from it.
- 3. The car is so dirty. It needs <u>cleaning/to be cleaned</u> (clean).
- **4.** A secretary has to know shorthand (速记) and typing, doesn't he?
- 5. She is shy and dare not (to) say (say) what she thinks.
- **6.** The students are also required to read the passage below and some related (relate) stories.
- 7. It's a pity that her child has got <u>addicted</u> (addict) to smoking.
- **8.** That's why small <u>differences</u> (differ) in the conversational style can have a great effect on one's life.

- 9. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly (slight) different from that spoken in England.
- 10. The doctor recommended eating (eat) an apple every day to keep healthy.

#### Ⅲ. 完成句子

- 1. I will be able to speak English fluently in three
  - 三年后我将能流利地讲英语。
- 2. I'm afraid you dare not/daren't do such a thing. 我恐怕你不敢做这样的事。
- 3. Do I need to leave my telephone number and address?
  - 我有必要把我的电话和地址留下吗?
- 4. Given his health condition, we had better not let him go there.
  - 考虑到他的身体状况,我们最好不要让他去那里 了。
- 5. It is raining outside. We have to stay at home. 外面在下雨,我们不得不待在家里。
- 6. If you must go, at least wait until the storm is

如果你非要走,至少等到暴风雨停了再走。

#### Ⅳ. 阅读理解

There are two kinds of people: those who like to pack up leftovers as soon as dinner is over, and those who let leftovers sit out for a few hours so they can cool down.

However, both leaving leftovers out for a long period of time and adding hot items to the fridge can cause problems.

Whether you should immediately put food in the fridge or let it sit out to cool depends on its temperature. Dangerous bacterial (细菌的) growth happens between 41 and 135 degrees Fahrenheit.

Potentially harmful bacteria grow most rapidly at these temperatures.

Placing lots of hot food in the fridge can raise the temperature of the fridge into this danger zone. Fridge temperatures should always be set below 40 degrees Fahrenheit. This may help the food get out of the danger zone as fast as possible.

However, there's no harm in putting hot food directly into the fridge if you need to. If you are a forgetful person, or if you won't be around to store the food after it has cooled enough, go ahead and put it in the fridge. Your fridge can handle the heat and get the food cooled quickly.

Food should never stay out at room temperature for more than two hours. Leftovers can become breeding grounds (滋生地) for dangerous bacteria if they're left out too long and can make people sick.

"It is OK to leave the food cooling outside before you hit the two-hour mark," says Serena Poon, nutritionist of Le Cordon Bleu's Grand Diploma training programme. "In fact, the sooner you can get your leftovers in the fridge, the better."

- 1. Which temperature most leads to the growth of harmful bacteria?
  - A. Below 40 degrees Fahrenheit.
  - B. Between 39 to 40 degrees Fahrenheit.
  - C. Between 41 to 135 degrees Fahrenheit.
  - D. Above 135 degrees Fahrenheit.
  - 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Dangerous bacterial (细菌的) growth happens between 41 and 135 degrees Fahrenheit."以及第四段的内容可 知,41至135华氏度之间的温度最容易导致有害 细菌的生长。故选C。
- 2. What is the author's attitude towards putting hot food directly into the fridge?
  - A. He is for it.
  - B. Neither for nor against it.
  - C. He is against it.
  - D. He doesn't tell us.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容以及第六段 中的"However, there's no harm in putting hot food directly into the fridge if you need to."可知, 作者介绍把热的食物放进冰箱会引起问题,但如果 需要,将其直接放进冰箱也没什么坏处,由此可知, 作者对于将热的食物直接放入冰箱的态度是既不 赞成也不反对的。故选 B。
- 3. What does Serena Poon suggest doing about the leftovers?
  - A. Dividing them into small parts.
  - B. Storing them in the fridge right away.
  - C. Waiting until they cool down completely outside.
  - D. Leaving them sitting at room temperature for two hours.
  - В 细节理解题。根据最后一段的内容可知, Serena Poon 建议马上把剩菜放在冰箱里。故选 В
- **4.** Which is the best title for the text?
  - A. When to Pack up Leftovers
  - B. How to Prevent Bacterial Growth
  - C. To Cool Food Outside or in the Fridge
  - D. A Good Idea to Store Food in the Fridge
  - 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容以及文章内 容可知,本文主要讨论了是应该将热食直接放入冰 箱冷却保存还是先放在外面冷却后再放入冰箱,作 者就此提出了自己的看法,所以"把食物放在外面 或冰箱里冷却"适合作为文章标题。故选 C。

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Get to know some words about food and how to eat healthily.
- 2. Understand the content of the text, evaluate the lifestyles of different characters and give suggestions.
- 3. Relate to your own life and have a deeper understanding of the relationship between eating habits and healthy lifestyles.

## 。 自主式预习 。

- Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
- Honey is a sweet, sticky, yellowish substance that is made by bees.

  蜂蜜
- 2. A chef is a cook in a restaurant or hotel. 厨师
- 3. According to the report, she is now fifth in the world rankings. 排行,排名
- 4. An official is a person who holds a position of authority in an organisation.高级职员

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
belong v. 属于	belongings n. 所有物;财产
construction n. 建造, 建筑	construct v. 建造,构筑
salty adj. 含盐的,咸的	salt n. 盐
resist v. 忍住,按捺	resistant adj. 抵抗的

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. belong to 属于
- 2. catch <u>up</u> 打听(不在时所发生的事情),别后叙谈; 赶上
- 3. pick up 买,购买

- **4.** end <u>up</u> (尤指经历一系列意外后)最终处于,到头来
- **5**. bring up 抚养;提起;呕吐

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:too... to...

My fridge is usually half empty and I'm often <u>too</u> tired to eat much anyway.

我的冰箱通常都是半空的,不过反正我也经常累得吃不下太多东西。

2. 句型公式:"否定词+比较级"表示最高级含义
When I get back home, there's <u>nothing more</u>
satisfying than a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时,没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

3. 句型公式:否定前置

I still don't think that anything can beat my mum's homemade sausages, though.

不过,我还是觉得没什么能比得上我妈妈自制的 香肠。

4. 句型公式:it 作形式主语

What's more, it is easy to make and can be adapted to individual tastes.

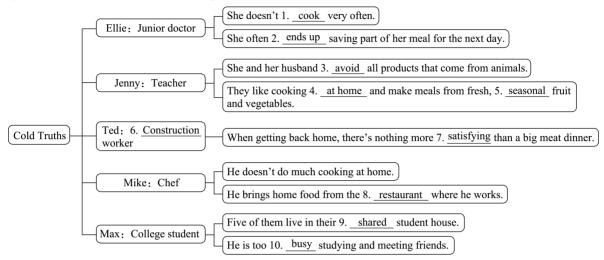
更重要的是,它很容易制作,也可依据个人口味进行调整。

## 任务型课堂

#### 课文理解 Part 1

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Who often leaves some food for the next day?
  - A. Jenny.
- B. Mike.
- C. Ted.
- D. Ellie.
- 2. How does Ted feel about his mum's homemade sausages?
  - A. Very satisfied. B. Very tired.
  - C. Not mentioned. D. Very disappointed.
- 3. Why don't Mike and his wife do much cooking at home?
  - A. They are too lazy.
  - B. They like eating at restaurants.
  - C. They have no much time to cook.
  - D. They aren't good at cooking.
- 4. What does Jenny think of her lifestyle?
  - A. Healthy.
  - B. Unhealthy.
  - C. It needs to be changed.
  - D. It doesn't need to be changed.

#### 答案:1~4 DACA

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. As a doctor, I know I had better change the way I eat, but I just don't have the time or the energy right now.

[句子分析]本句是由 but 连接的并列复合句。but 前面是主从复合句,I know...是主句,I had better change the way I eat 为省略了 that 的宾语从句, 其中又有一个 way 作先行词引导的定语从句。 but 后是一个简单句。

「尝试翻译了作为医生,我知道我最好改变我的饮 食方式,但我现在没有时间或精力。

2. If we have children, I want to bring them up just like us, but my husband says that everyone should be able to make their own lifestyle choices. 「句子分析]本句是由 but 连接的并列复合句,but 的前面是主从复合句。If 引导条件状语从句, I want to bring... 是主句。but 后面也是个主从复 合句,主句是 my husband says,其后是 that 引导 的宾语从句。

「尝试翻译]如果我们有孩子,我想按照我们的生 活方式养育他们。但我丈夫说每个人都应该有权 选择自己的生活方式。

#### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. What dishes do you like best? Describe it in your own words.

略

2. Whose eating habits are similar to yours? Give your reasons.

略

#### Part 2 语言梳理

#### 1. satisfying adj. 令人高兴的,令人满意的

[教材原文] When I get back home, there's nothing more satisfying than a big meat dinner. 当我回到家时,没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更令人满足的了。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1) satisfy v. 使满意,使满足
- (2) satisfied adj. 感到满意的

be satisfied with 对······感到满意

be satisfied to do sth. 对做某事感到满意

(3) satisfaction n. 满意;令人满意的事

to one's satisfaction 令某人满意的是with satisfaction 满意地

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①From the <u>satisfied</u> smile on her face, we can see the performance was satisfying.(satisfy)
- ② Frankly speaking, none of the tourists was satisfied with the travel agency's service.
- ③ You should feel <u>satisfied</u> (satisfy) at the end of a meal, but not too full.
- ④ On hearing what he had achieved in his field, his father stared at him with satisfaction (satisfy).
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之活动报道)**令我们感到既满足又兴奋的是**,我们看到自己的劳动果实被装上卡车。
- ① To our satisfaction and excitement, we saw our fruits of labour were loaded onto the truck. (satisfaction)
- ② What made us satisfied and excited was that we saw our fruits of labour were loaded onto the truck.(satisfied)

#### 2. convenient adj. 方便的,便利的;近便的,附近的

[教材原文]I know we should eat more fresh fruit and vegetables, but ready meals are so **convenient**. 我知道我们应该多吃些新鲜的水果和蔬菜,但即食餐太方便了。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)It is convenient for sb. to do sth. 某人方便做某事。

if/when it is convenient 方便的话/方便的时候

(2) convenience n. 便利;舒适

for convenience 为了方便起见

at one's convenience 在某人方便的时候

(3) inconvenient adj. 不方便的;引起麻烦的

inconvenience n. [U]不便,麻烦 [C]麻烦事v. 给……带来不便,添麻烦:打扰

#### ---名 师 点 拨■■■■

convenient 不能用人作主语,可用事物作主语或用 it 作形式主语。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①I wonder if it would be convenient <u>for</u> you to pick me up at four o'clock and take me to the airport.
- ②(2024 新课标 [[ 卷) Also, there is a <u>convenient</u> (convenience) app that provides growing data in real time.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之申请信)**如果方便的话**,我们可以 在本周五下午 5 点在你的公寓见面吗?

If it is convenient, could we meet in your apartment at 5 pm this Friday?

②(读后续写之情节描写)听到我的话,冈特脸上带着熟悉的微笑回答道:"没关系,尽管去吧,你可以在方便的时候付钱给我。"

Hearing my words, Gunter replied with the familiar smile on his face, "That's OK, just go ahead, you can pay me at your convenience/when it is convenient for you."

#### 3. adapt v. (使)适应,(使)适合

[教材原文] What's more, it is easy to make and can be adapted to individual tastes.

更重要的是,它很容易制作,也可依据个人口味进行调整。

#### [归纳拓展]

(1)adapt (oneself) to (doing) sth. (使某人)适应 (做)某事

adapt... for... 将……改编成……

adapt... from... 根据……改编……

- (2)adaptation n. 适应;改编本
- (3)adaptable adj. 能适应的

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Mr Smith has adapted the novel for television.
- ② All in all, successful businesses are highly adaptable (adapt) to economic changes.
- ③ Most students choose to live with a host family, who can help with their <u>adaptation</u> (adapt) to the new culture.

#### (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信)我和我的同学们根据这个 故事改编了一个短剧,这颇具挑战性。

My classmates and I wrote a short play adapted from the story, which was quite a challenge.(用分 词作定语)

## 4. end up (尤指经历一系列意外后)最终处于,到头

[教材原文]I often end up saving part of my meal for the next day.

我常常会把一部分饭菜留到第二天吃。

#### 「归纳拓展」

end up with... 以·····结束/告终 end up doing sth. 最终做了某事 end up as... 最后成为 ······· end in... 以 ……结束/告终(多指不好的结局)

### 

end 的相关短语:

bring sth. to an end 使某事结束 put/bring an end to sth. 结束某事 come to an end 结束

in the end 最后,终于

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- The party ended up with a beautiful song.
- 2 The storm lasted for hours, but the arrival of the calm weather brought the chaos to an end.
- 3 After several years of hard work, she ended up as a successful writer.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之心理描写)马克自言自语道:"我需 要勇气和智慧来打败这只狼,否则我可能会死在它 的胃里。"

Mac said to himself, "I call for courage and wisdom to defeat the wolf, otherwise I might end up in its stomach."

②(读后续写之动作描写)在比赛结束前,他踏上滑 板,沿着斜坡加速下滑,在空中完成了一个漂亮的 跳跃和旋转,最终稳稳地落在草地上。

Before the match came to an end, he stepped onto the skateboard, accelerated down the slope, performed a beautiful jump and spin in the air, and ended up landing steadily on the grass.

#### 5. "否定词十比较级"表达最高级含义

[教材原文] When I get back home, there's nothing more satisfying than a big meat dinner.

当我回到家时,没有什么比一顿丰盛的肉类大餐更 令人满足的了。

「句式分析]本句中的 nothing more satisfying than... 是"否定词+比较级"结构,表示最高级的含 义。

#### 「归纳拓展」

形容词比较级与否定词连用,表达最高级的含义。 常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等,其意义为"再也没有……比这 更……的了"。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Mr Smith is a great teacher—I really couldn't find a better (good) teacher.
- ②I had never spent a more worrying (worry) day than the day when I was waiting for the result of the college entrance examination.
- 3 In my opinion, nothing is more pleasant than travelling.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之活动描写)没有什么比参加五千 米越野比赛更有意义的了,它对我们的身心都有益 处。

Nothing is more rewarding than taking part in the five-kilometre cross-country running race, which benefits us physically and mentally.

②(读后续写之动作描写)马克从未见过比这只狼 更可怕的动物,因此他屏住呼吸,不敢挪动一步。

Mac had never seen a more frightening animal than this wolf, so he held his breath, not daring to make a movement.

## 多义词汇 专练

Students should resist the temptation to focus on exams alone. В

A. v. 使不受……的伤害

B. v. 抵制(诱惑)

C. v. 抵抗

## Unit 1 课后素养评价(四)

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### Ⅰ. 单词拼写

- 1. People coming from various countries lead quite different lifestyles (生活方式).
- 2. The classroom doors <u>swung</u> (摆动) open, and the hallways filled up with students.
- 3. Please try some of this <u>homemade</u> (自制的) bread.
- **4.** Updating my <u>blog</u> (博客) has become one of my habits
- 5. He has improved his <u>ranking</u> (排名) this season from 10th to 5th.
- 6. Which is the <u>official</u> (官方的) language of this country, Mandarin or English?

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- China started <u>construction</u> (construct) of its national museum of marine archaeology in 2024 in Qingdao, Shandong Province.
- 2. The boy couldn't resist showing (show) off his being praised by the teacher on arriving home.
- 3. To his parents' satisfaction, he got full marks in the final exam.
- **4.** I believe that you will soon adapt yourself <u>to</u> this new environment.
- When I travelled here for the first time, my guide recommended some hot pot restaurants to me.
- **6.** You'd better take more cash with you in case <u>of</u> any emergency.
- 7. It is widely acknowledged that education should not end up with the graduation.
- 8. In China, there is only about 7% of the land <u>used</u> (use) for growing crops, which feeds more than one fifth of the world's population.
- It is clear that each product has a number for easy identification (identify).
- **10.** I felt <u>incredibly</u> (incredible) ashamed of your treating him in such a rude manner.

#### Ⅲ. 短语填空

pick up; be similar to; end up; belong to; bring up; adapt to; catch up; for convenience

- For convenience, people use plastic bags in their daily life when they go shopping.
- 2. After catching up, they found that both of them had changed a lot.
- **3.** Reading some Chinese novels ahead of time will help you <u>adapt to</u> the Chinese language environment easily.
- **4.** He was born and <u>brought up</u> in Australia, so he can speak English.
- **5.** Paper-cutting has a history of over 1,500 years, and belongs to traditional art in China.
- 6. Did it ever occur to you that you would end up in prison if you continued behaving like that?
- Studying the menu, I found that many of the dishes were similar to those of that restaurant.
- **8.** Tom soon <u>picked up</u> some French when he went to live in France.

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 我记得你对我微笑的样子。(the way 作先行词的 定语从句)

I remember the way (that/in which) you smiled at me.

2. 一看到凶猛的狼,我吓呆了,不敢动弹。(too... to...)

At the sight of the ferocious wolf, I froze with terror, too scared to move an inch.

- 3. 我认为他不会来看我了,这让我很难过。(否定前 移)
  - I don't think that he will come to see me, which makes me sad.
- **4.** 在这个传统节日,没有什么比家人团聚更幸福的了。(用比较级表示最高级)

Nothing is happier than family reunions on this traditional holiday.

5. 学习一门外语需要付出很多努力。(动名词短语作 主语)

Learning a foreign language requires a lot of effort.

#### Ⅴ. 语法填空

In recent years, food has 1. obviously (obvious) become a new hot spot for Chinese cities to attract tourists, Following Zibo and Harbin, Tianshui, 2. an ancient city in Northwest China's Gansu Province, became the 3. hottest (hot) tourist destination of 2024 because of malatang, a local street dish.

Malatang, literally meaning "numbing, spicy, and hot" in Chinese, is a common street food that can be found all over China, but its tastes differ depending 4. on the region. In Tianshui, malatang features a mix of fresh vegetables and meat 5. boiled (boil) in a hot, spicy chicken soup.

Tianshui went viral after a student 6. posted (post) a seven-second video in February on her social media. In the video, she suggested 7. making (make) Gansu malatang a national dish. The video, 8. which quickly received millions of likes online, attracted food lovers to the city 9. to experience (experience) this local dish firsthand. Malatang also helps draw more visitors to key 10. attractions (attraction) in Tianshui.

#### Ⅵ. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华。你校英文报的美食栏目正面向 全校学生征稿,请你写一篇英语短文投稿,介绍一道 中国美食。

注意:词数 80 左右。		

#### 【参考范文】

In China, nothing can be compared with dumplings in terms of their popularity significance.

Dating back to more than 1,800 years ago, dumplings are a famous traditional food in northern China. They consist of meat or vegetables wrapped in a thin piece of dough. The fillings can vary according to one's taste. And the cooking methods involve boiling, steaming, and frying.

Dumplings are eaten on many important occasions, especially at the Spring Festival, with good wishes for a better life.

#### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写 两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When the night fell, James, a middle school student in London, dragged his tired body home. In order to save money to buy himself a new bike, he had been working at a restaurant for over a month during the summer vacation. He had already earned some money. With one more week, he would have his dream bike.

Entering the room, James found his younger brother Adam sitting on the edge of his bed with an uneasy expression on his face. James stared at Adam confusedly.

"Sorry. I did something wrong," Adam said, on the verge of tears.

"What's the matter with you?" James asked.

"This afternoon I went to play football on the road outside the house and accidentally hit our neighbour Mr Black's car. I was so scared and I hurried home in panic without telling him," Adam said, full of guilt.

"Is the car seriously damaged?" James couldn't

wait to continue asking.

"The ball hit the car back and the tail light got broken," Adam said in a low voice.

"It's truly your fault. It's really dangerous to play football on the road. What's worse, you shouldn't have come back without telling Mr Black about it. You are such a naughty boy," James raised his voice. Hearing this, Adam lowered his head and bit his lip hard. James added, "Anyway, it's never too late to mend. I'll take you to his house tomorrow to apologise. Now it's time to sleep."

When Adam went to bed, James couldn't go to sleep himself. Father always told him to be honest, to be a boy admired by the people and to be an example of his brother. He was sorry for his brother's behaviour. He shouldn't have blamed his brother after he did something wrong. But he could understand him. Anyway, Adam was only a boy of seven and what had happened really scared him. But as his elder brother, he should pay for it though this might delay his plan of having the bike. "Nothing serious. At worst, I can take more summer jobs," he said to himself.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

James got	up early	the next	morning.	

	Mr	Black	was	a	little	surprised	to	see	the
br	others	·							
_									

#### 【参考范文】

James got up early the next morning. He told Adam, "We should go to Mr Black's house as early as possible and explain to him what had happened." Before they went out, he took out all the money he had earned in the restaurant during the summer holiday. Adam knew that his dear brother wanted to pay for his fault. Tears filled his eyes because he knew very well how much his elder brother wanted to get a new bike and he was working on it.

Mr Black was a little surprised to see the brothers. "Mr Black, I'm here to make an apology," said James. Then he told Mr Black what had happened and drew out the money from his pocket. "This is all the money I have. I wonder if it can pay for your loss," he said sincerely. "Good boys, I truly appreciate your honesty. Just forget my car." Mr Black refused to get the money but accepted the brothers' suggestions of doing some work in his garden. What a good result! Adam regained his honesty and James could still have his dream bike.

## • 応 • 用

#### **⊗**Part 1 应用文写作

### ·食品介绍类文章

#### ○写作指导

本单元的写作目标是编写一份食谱。编写食谱前 应仔细斟酌这道菜的名称,确保菜名为大众所接受。 正文开篇先对这道菜做简要的描述(brief description), 然后列出做这道菜所需的食材(ingredients)及其用量, 最后写出说明(instructions),也就是做这道菜的操作步 骤。

#### ○典题示例

在中国饮食文化中,红烧排骨很受欢迎,请编写 一份食谱介绍红烧排骨的做法,要求至少包括两部分 内容:ingredients 和 instructions。

参考词汇:猪肋排 pork rib;四川辣椒 Sichuan pepper;生/老抽 light/dark soy sauce;一汤匙的量 1 tablespoon;一茶匙的量 1 teaspoon;把……切成细条 shred;条 strip;姜 ginger;腌料酱汁 marinade sauce; 淀粉 starch;冰糖 rock candy;醋 vinegar

#### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	<ol> <li>1. 简要说明</li> <li>2. 所需食材</li> <li>3. 操作指南</li> </ol>

#### Step 2:要点补全

- ①Do you know how you can make home-style pork ribs tender (让家常排骨变嫩) without overcooking?
- ②I would like to recommend this popular dish (想 推荐这道很受欢迎的菜) today.
- ③It is one of our favourite foods (最喜欢的食物).
- ④ The recipe is super easy (食谱非常简单), and the added sweet and sour taste would make your

mouth water.

- ⑤Then add the rest of the marinade sauce (加入剩 下的腌料酱汁), dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup).
- ⑥ Stir them a few times (搅拌几次), and cook over a medium heat with cover.
- ⑦ One third of the sauce (三分之一的酱汁) is left.

#### Step 3:句式升级

①用"疑问词+不定式"改写 Step 2 中的句①

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking?

②用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句②③

Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods.

③合并 Step 2 中的句⑤⑥⑦

Then add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.

Step 4:连可风扁		

#### 【参考范文】

Do you know how to make home-style pork ribs tender without overcooking? Today I would like to recommend this popular dish which is one of our favourite foods. The recipe is super easy, and the added sweet and sour taste would make your mouth water.

#### **Ingredients**

pork ribs cut to small pieces (2 inches) ..... 300g

#### Seasonings and Sauces

Marinade sauce:

Chinese cooking wine 2 tablespoons
Chinese vinegar 2 teaspoons
ginger 1 piece
Sichuan pepper 6-8 pieces
dark soy sauce 3 tablespoons

#### Instructions

- Combine the pork ribs with the marinade sauce.
   Set about 10 minutes.
- 2. Mix the pork ribs with the starch (1 tablespoon). Set about 1 minute.
- 3. Heat 2 tablespoons of oil in the pan at a mediumhigh heat. Add the ginger first and then the onion. Stir them together for half a minute.
- **4.** Add the pork ribs and continue stirring them for about 2 minutes until the pork ribs turn lightly brown on both sides.
- 5. Add the rest of the marinade sauce, dark soy sauce (1 tablespoon), rock candy (2 tablespoons) and water (3/4 cup), stir them a few times, and cook over a medium heat with cover until one third of the sauce is left.
- **6.** Add the carrots and peppers, stir them a few times, cover and cook until the meat is tender and the sauce starts to thicken slightly.
- 7. Put the dish on a plate and enjoy the meal.

#### ○学以致用

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Peter 来信称他准备到中国旅游,并且说他非常喜欢中国的美食,尤其想品尝火锅。请你给他回一封信,介绍中国的传统美食火锅,内容包括:

- 1. 火锅在中国很受欢迎;
- 2. 怎样烹饪火锅;
- 3. 为什么人们喜欢吃火锅。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右:

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:火锅 hot pot

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm glad to learn that you will travel to China and want to taste the hot pot. Here I'll introduce the traditional Chinese food to you.

Hot pot is one of the most famous folk dishes in China. No matter when you come to China, people eating the hot pot can be found everywhere. It is very convenient to make hot pot. When the soup in the pot is boiling, dishes such as mutton, fish and vegetables, are put into the pot. After a while you can enjoy the delicious dishes. The reason why people love eating the hot pot is that it gets people together and it is a good way to relax.

Welcome to experience it for yourself!

Yours,

Li Hua

## 窗Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

The school picnic day was on Sunday, and on Saturday morning I decided to ask Mum some questions. As soon as Mum took the last bite of her toast, I decided I couldn't wait for her any longer and asked, "Mum, where is Italy?"

My mum pushed up her glasses and looked at me with her head to one side. Then she said, "Italy is a European country which is very far away from here, my love. Why do you want to know that?" I shrugged (耸肩), "That's where Mike, the new boy in our class is from."

She nodded and invited me to go to fetch the geography book. The book was big and Mum always kept the very big books on the bottom shelf of our bookcase. I watched as Mum flipped to the index and then to a page near the middle. "Here we go," she said, turning the map around to show me. I let my finger meet hers where it said the word "Italy" in capital letters. According to the introduction to the country on the page, Mum helped me know more about the country.

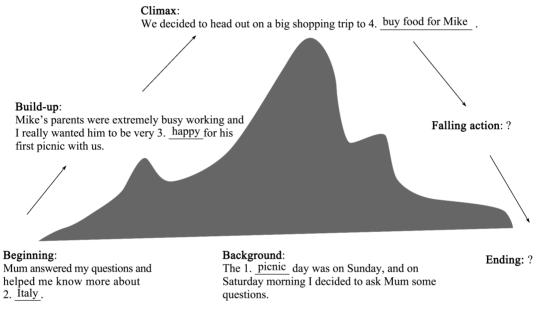
"You know, Mum, Mike's parents are extremely busy working in the downtown. He seldom eats regularly, let alone (更不用说) have his native foods. I really want him to be very happy for his first picnic with us..." I paused and observed Mum, worried that Mum would think that it was silly and maybe a waste of money buying food only to give it away. But she didn't, Instead, she said, "I think that's a brilliant idea! Go and get ready, and we'll head out on a big shopping trip."

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about before the school picnic day how the author asked his mother for help in preparing some traditional Italian food for Mike, a new classmate from Italy.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

	1. Why did the speaker think they might have
Paragraph 1:	beaten a world record that morning?
I got ready so quickly that morning that I	The speaker thought they might get ready for
thought I must have beaten a world record.	shopping so quickly.
	2. What did the speaker and his mother do after
	getting ready?
	After getting ready, they went to buy fruits and
	vegetables for making pizza.
	3. What would they do after shopping at the
	supermarket?
	They made a nice meal with all the things
	bought.

Paragraph 2:	1. What would the speaker do when seeing Mike?
We gathered on the grass on Sunday morning	The speaker would invite Mike to have the
and I saw the Italian boy immediately	traditional Italian meals.
	2. How would Mike react this time?
	He would be very glad and moved.
	3. What did the speaker and the Italian boy do
	together?
	They enjoyed a delicious pizza together and
	came to understand each other.
意:续写词数应为 150 左右。	
意:续写词数应为 150 左右。 I got ready so quickly that morning that I though	nt I must have beaten a world record.
意:续写词数应为 150 左右。 I got ready so quickly that morning that I though	nt I must have beaten a world record.
意:续写词数应为 150 左右。 I got ready so quickly that morning that I though	
	nt I must have beaten a world record.

#### 【参考范文】

I got ready so quickly that morning that I thought I must have beaten a world record. In five minutes I had my trousers and T-shirt pulled on, and hurriedly emptied my piggy bank. With all the money I saved carefully put in my pocket, I rushed to meet my smiling mum at the front gate. We went to stands of fresh fruits and vegetables, selecting some for making pizza. Proudly looking at the products, Mum and I drove back home in high spirits. I could picture the perfect pizza which my mother was expert at cooking and the new boy's amazed face.

We gathered on the grass on Sunday morning and I saw the Italian boy immediately. I waved my hand to draw Mike's attention. He looked around and finally made sure that he was my target. Shy and quiet, he approached me with a light-hearted pace. I patted the place beside me, gestured him to sit down and unpacked his native food. He hesitated at first but later focused his eyes on my sincere face and gave me a broad smile. What a beautiful day it was! We enjoyed the delicious pizza together and came to understand each other by sharing different experiences. No one would resist the sincere kindness.

#### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。

Words to describe different eating cultures, healthy eating habits and lifestyles	Write a recipe of a traditional Chinese cuisine and recommend it to the world		
Food	for thought		
Explore how to develop healthy eating habits to	to lead a healthy lifestyle		
-			
-	_		

#### 答案:略

#### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### **CULTURE AND CUISINE**

The French author Jean Anthelme Brillat-Savarin once wrote, "Tell me what you eat, and I will tell you what you are." Put more simply, this means "You are what you eat." Most people today relate this saying to healthy eating. However, Brillat-Savarin was actually referring to our personality, character, and culture.

Certainly, in many ways this seems to be true. Chinese cuisine is a case in point. Prior to coming to China, my only experience with Chinese cooking was in America, with Chinese food that had been changed to suit American tastes. For example, America's most popular Chinese dish is General Tso's chicken, which consists of fried chicken covered in a sweet sauce, flavoured with hot red peppers. This is probably not an authentic Chinese recipe, so it cannot tell us much about Chinese culture. On the other hand, it does tell us a lot about Americans. It tells us, for example, that Americans love bold, simple flavours. And, since the dish was also invented recently, it tells us that Americans are not afraid to try new foods.

Later, I had a chance to experience authentic Chinese food by coming to China. When my family and I had just arrived in China, we went looking for a good place to eat in Beijing. A Sichuan restaurant had been recommended to us by a friend, and finally, we found it. Tired, hungry, and not knowing a word of Chinese, we had no idea how to order, so the chef just began filling our table with the best food we had ever eaten. With this, we had the pleasure of experiencing an entirely new taste: Sichuan peppercorns. The food was wonderful and different, but what was even more important was the friendship offered us.

We soon moved to Shandong Province in the eastern part of North China. My favourite dish there was boiled dumplings served with vinegar. I observed that family is important to the people there. It has become a favourite traditional dish of the people in North China, where making dumplings has always been a family affair with everyone—from the youngest to the oldest—joining in to help. Later, I learnt that the most famous food in Shandong is pancake rolls stuffed with sliced Chinese green onions.

Then we moved to northern Xinjiang. Some of our friends were Kazak and Inner Mongolian. These groups traditionally wandered the open range on horses. As a result, their traditional foods are what you can cook over an open fire—usually boiled or roasted meat, such as lamb kebab.

Our travels then took us to South China, and then on to central China. In each place we went, we experienced wonderful local dishes, from Guangdong's elegant dim sum—small servings of food in bamboo steamers—to the exceptional stewed noodles in Henan. Everywhere, the food was as varied as the people. However, one thing is always true: Through food, Chinese people everywhere show friendship and kindness.

- 1. What does the author think of General Tso's chicken tasted in America?
  - A. It is delicious.

B. It is not authentic.

C. It is too spicy.

- D. It shows Chinese culture.
- 2. What impressed the author and his family more in a Sichuan restaurant?
  - A. The spicy food they ate.
  - B. Sichuan peppercorns.
  - C. The friendship they felt.
  - D. The new experience.
- 3. What does the author find from eating dumplings in Shandong?
  - A. Dumplings have to be eaten with vinegar.
  - B. Dumplings are the most popular in Shandong.
  - C. Everyone in Shandong can make dumplings.
  - D. Making dumplings is a family affair.
- **4.** What does the author find different people in China have in common?
  - A. They are all particular about food.
  - B. They are all good at making food.
  - C. They all show friendship and kindness.
  - D. They are all proud of their food and culture.

#### 答案:1~4 BCDC

## 单元测试卷(一)

(考查范围: Unit 1 时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

#### Riding School:

You can start horse-riding at any age. Choose private or group lessons any weekday. There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country. You will need a riding hat.

Opening Hours: 9:00 am to 8:30 pm(3:30 pm on Saturdays), Monday through Friday

Phone: (412)396-6754

Fax: (412)396-6752

#### Sailing Club:

Our Young Sailor's Course leads to the Stage 1 Sailing qualification. You will learn how to sail safely and the course also covers sailing theory and first aid. Have fun with other course members afterwards in the club room. There are 10 weekly two-hour lessons.

Opening Hours: 6:00 pm to 8:00 pm, Tuesdays

Phone: (412)396-6644 Fax: (412)396-6644

#### Diving Centre:

Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners. There are two evening lessons a week, in which you learn to breathe underwater and use the equipment safely. You only need swimming costumes and a towel. Reduced rates for couples.

Opening Hours: 6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday

Phone: (412)396-6312 Fax: (412)396-6706

#### Watersports Club:

We use a two-kilometre length of river for speedboat racing and water-skiing. A beginner's course consists of ten 20-minute lessons. You will learn to handle boats safely and confidently, but must be able to swim. The club is in a convenient central position and is open daily from 9 am to 4 pm, with lessons all through the day.

Opening Hours: 9:00 am to 4:00 pm, Monday through Friday

Phone: (412)396-6899

Fax: (412)396-6890

- 1. Which should you join if you want to swim and enjoy activities which are fast and a bit dangerous?
  - A. Diving Centre.
  - B. Riding School.
  - C. Watersports Club.
  - D. Sailing Club.
  - 细节理解题。根据最后一则广告中的 "speedboat racing"和"but must be able to swim" 等字眼可知,如果你想游泳并享受快速且有点危险 的运动,应该去 Watersports Club。故选 C。
- 2. Which number may you fax if you want to experience a new activity in the countryside in the mornings?
  - A. (412)396-6752.
  - B. (412)396-6644.
  - C. (412)396-6890.
  - D. (412)396-6706.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第一则广告中的"There are 10 kilometres of tracks and paths for leisurely rides across farmland and open country."可知,如 果你想在上午体验一项新的乡村活动,应该去 Riding School,传真是(412)396-6752。故选 A。
- 3. If you are planning to explore the ocean depths, when should you attend your lessons?
  - A. 9:00 am to 8:30 pm, Monday through Friday.
  - B. 24 hours from Monday to Sunday.
  - C. 6:00 pm to 8:00 pm, Tuesdays.
  - D. 6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday.
  - 细节理解题。根据第三则广告中的"Our experienced instructors offer one-month courses in deep-sea diving for beginners."可知,如果你打 算探索海洋深处应该去 Diving Centre,活动时间

为 6:30 pm to 8:30 pm, Monday and Friday。故 选 D。

R

Watching what you eat can be easier said than done, but a recent study shows it might not just be about what's on your plate—it could be about how quickly it disappears.

Japanese researchers followed 1,083 adults for five years, dividing them into three categories based on how quickly they ate: slow, normal, and fast. They also answered a questionnaire at the beginning of the study, sharing their diet, physical activity, and medical history. In the beginning, none of the volunteers had metabolic syndrome-meaning at least three risk factors—which can lead to health problems like heart conditions and diabetes.

When the participants reported back five years later, 84 had been diagnosed (诊断) with metabolic syndrome—and their eating speed was a major predictor, according to the results in the journal Circulation. The fast eaters were 89 percent more likely to have metabolic syndrome than slow and normal eaters. Just 2.3 percent of slow eaters received the diagnosis, compared to 11.6 percent of fast eaters. But that's not all. Fast eaters also saw more weight gain, larger waistlines, and higher blood sugar levels than slow eaters.

The researchers say gobbling makes it easier not to take notice of fullness before your body has a chance to signal you to stop. "So when people eat fast they are more likely to overeat," said Takayuki Yamaji, MD, study author and cardiologist at Hiroshima University in Japan in a statement.

Previous research backs up the weight benefits of slow eating, too. One study of New Zealand women found fast eaters have higher body-mass indexes (指数), and a Chinese study found that both healthy and fat men ate less when they were told to chew 40 times instead of 15 times before swallowing. Initial research even suggests chewing your food longer could burn more calories-up to about 1,000 extra every month.

- **4.** What are the participants divided by?
  - A. Medical history.
  - B. Health condition.
  - C. Physical activity.

- D. Eating speed.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"dividing them into three categories based on how quickly they ate: slow, normal, and fast"可知,按照参与者吃 饭的速度,研究者将他们分为吃得慢、正常、快三个 类别。故选 D。
- 5. Which may be the result of the study?
  - A. Fast eaters are 4 times more likely to have metabolic syndrome.
  - B. Normal and slow eaters don't have metabolic illness.
  - C. 89% of fast eaters have higher blood pressure.
  - D. Slow eaters are healthier than fast eaters.
  - D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Fast eaters also saw more weight gain, larger waistlines, and higher blood sugar levels than slow eaters."可知, 比起吃得慢的人,吃得快的人的体重增加更多、腰 围更大、血糖水平也更高,反向推知,吃得慢的人比 吃得快的人更健康。故选D。
- 6. What does the underlined word "gobbling" in Paragraph 4 mean?
  - A. Tasting slowly.
  - B. Digesting quickly.
  - C. Eating greedily.
  - D. Cooking carefully.
  - 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的"when people eat fast they are more likely to overeat"可知,吃 得快可能会让人吃得过多。所以画线词的意思应 是"狼吞虎咽地吃"。故选 C。
- 7. What does the last paragraph tell us?
  - A. The importance of eating speed.
  - B. The advantage of eating slowly.
  - C. The result of a Chinese study.
  - D. Fast eating and overeating.
  - B 段落大意题。根据最后一段的中心句"Previous research backs up the weight benefits of slow eating, too."及下文内容可知,本段主要讲吃得慢的好处。故 选 B。

#### C

We are what we eat. From high-calorie meals to low-fat lunches, much of our health depends on what we eat. We know about the benefits of eating fittingly for our physical health, but food, and cooking it, is proving to be good for our mental

Some people are now supporting the therapeutic

value of cooking food. It's not just about the end result but also the experience someone goes through. Dr Mark Salter, a consultant psychiatrist, told the BBC: "Baking and cooking are good therapies. They help patients develop planning skills, short-term memories and social skills-lack of which may lead to mental illness."

TV chef and author Nadiya Hussain agrees that cooking is great for helping our mind. She loves to bake and became the champion of the TV show, The Great British Bake Off. She says, "Baking's always been about therapy... It's never really been about the cake." And she thinks that baking is an important tool for our socialisation and mental health.

Certainly, creating some delicious food takes our mind off things and gives us something to do, helping us get through the recent lockdown. People have said that mixing dough (生面团) to make bread, for example, has given them a sense of calm and control. Research has shown that doing creative tasks, like cooking, makes us feel happier. Nicole Farmer, who studies how food influences our biology, behaviour and mental health, told BBC online, "Cooking represents the human experience of food, and growing people through food, so there is no doubt that it can bring us timely positive feelings."

Of course, cooking can be a very sociable activity and sharing the end result, a rewarding experience. Hopefully, as we start to mix with friends and family again, we can enjoy the benefits once more and put us all in the right state of mind.

- 8. What is baking in Nadiya Hussain's eyes?
  - A. It's helpful for our mind.
  - B. It's a kind of TV programme.
  - C. It's always about the cake.
  - D. It's a tool for physical health.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知, Nadiya Hussain 认为烘焙对思维有益。故选 A。
- 9. Why can creative tasks help people get through the lockdown?
  - A. They give people a lasting sense of calm and peace.
  - B. They mark the start of the experience of cooking food.

- C. They make people feel more confident and stronger.
- D. They help people take their mind off unhappy things.
- D 细节理解题。根据第四段第一句可知,创造性 任务可以帮助人们度过封锁期,因为它们能使人 们不再去想那些不开心的事情。故选 D。
- 10. What can we know from the passage?
  - A. Dr Mark Salter is a consultant psychiatrist of the BBC.
  - B. Hussain once got the first prize for her books on baking.
  - C. The Great British Bake Off is a TV show about cooking.
  - D. Nicole Farmer is a British scientist who studies biology.
  - C 细节理解题。根据第三段第二句可知, The Great British Bake off 是一个电视节目,并且她 通过这个电视节目获得了冠军,所以可推测出这 个电视节目是关于烹饪的。故选C。
- 11. What is the passage trying to convince (使确信) the reader of?
  - A. Eating fittingly for physical health.
  - B. Enjoying the course of cooking.
  - C. Sharing delicious food with others.
  - D. Developing our planning skills.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第一段第三句可知,文章 主要围绕烹饪对人们心理健康的益处展开,所以 文章试图使读者相信的是"享受烹饪的过程"。故 选 B。

#### D

The first spacecraft to visit China's Tiangong space station in 2024—the Tianzhou 7 robotic cargo (货船) ship—was scheduled to launch in the coming days, according to the China Manned Space Agency.

Tianzhou 7 became the 12th spaceship to visit the Chinese space station. Pang Zhihao, an expert on space exploration technology who worked at the China Academy of Space Technology for decades, said that the Tianzhou 7 is expected to transport living necessities and work materials to the Tiangong to support the Shenzhou XVII and XVIII mission crews (成员).

"Starting from the Tianzhou 6, our cargo vessels now have more inner space and thus can contain more things for the crew, so launching three cargo ships is enough to support a two-year stay in orbit for astronauts," he said. "Our Tianzhou series has been well developed and improved, and can be fully relied upon."

The Long March 7 rocket to lift the Tianzhou 7 was transported to the Wenchang centre in late December and then underwent prelaunch checks with the cargo ship. The Long March 7 model was a rocket developed by the China Academy of Launch Vehicle Technology. The rocket had a height of 53.1 metres, a core-stage diameter of 3.35 metres, and a liftoff weight of 597 metric tons. With six 120-ton-thrust engines, the launch vehicle could send 13.5 tons of things to a low-Earth orbit or 5.5 tons to a sun-synchronous (太阳同步的) orbit.

On the afternoon of January 12, the Tianzhou 6 cargo craft moved out of the Tiangong space station and started a period of solo flight. The space agency said the Tianzhou 6 would fall back to Earth soon, and most of the spaceship would burn up during reentry, and a small amount of debris (碎片) was expected to fall into secure areas in the South Pacific Ocean.

**12.** How many spaceships had visited the Chinese space station before Tianzhou 7?

D. 12.

- A. 6.
- B. 7.
- C. 11.
- C 细节理解题。根据第二段第一句可知,在天 舟七号之前,有11 艘宇宙飞船访问过中国空间 站。故选 C。
- 13. What does Pang Zhihao think of Tianzhou series?
  - A. Advanced and dependable.
  - B. Big and creative.
  - C. Developed and light.
  - D. Useful and fast.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Our Tianzhou series has been well developed and improved, and can be fully relied upon."可知,庞之浩认为天舟系列货运飞船是非常先进和可靠的。故选 A。
- 14. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?
  - A. The importance of the Wenchang centre.
  - B. The information about the low-Earth orbit.
  - C. An introduction to the Long March 7 rocket.
  - D. The preparation before the space exploration.

- C 段落大意题。通读第四段可知,本段主要介绍了运载天舟七号的长征七号火箭的高度、运载量等相关信息。故选 C。
- 15. What do we know from the last paragraph?
  - A. The Tianzhou 6 will stay in the space forever.
  - B. The Tianzhou 6 left the Earth on January 12.
  - C. All spaceships will completely burn up during reentry.
  - D. Some parts of the Tianzhou 6 will drop into the sea.
  - D 细节理解题。根据最后一段第二句可知,天 舟六号的一些碎片会掉入海中。故选 D。
- Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

### A Diet Without Enough Protein Can Cause Depression

Depression is a condition so common, the World Health Organization (WHO) calls it "a leading cause of disability".

Difficulty in falling asleep, loss of appetite, and loss of ability to concentrate are just a few of the other effects of depression. Now scientists are working on a new aspect of cure: nutrition. 16

The Indian Journal of Psychiatry reports that both before and during a happening of depression, those with the condition will show a "poor appetite..."

\_\_\_\_\_ Many cases of depression, if not most cases, affect those who don't eat properly.

So what does protein have to do with all this? It all comes down to amino acids (氨基酸). Proteins are made up of amino acids, chemicals known as the "building blocks of life". There are 20 different amino acids. 18

Both the human brain and nervous system use amino acids as a substance that creates a signal from one brain cell to another or one nerve cell to another, thus relaying information between the cells. What is the final result then? \_\_19\_\_

Since amino acids make up protein, a diet which lacks in protein will cause weaker communication between the brain cells. This lessens the signal being sent from one brain cell to the next during a thought. 20 This is why depression can often express itself as anger or aggression.

- A. The ultimate effect is how we think.
- B. Don't ruin your appetite by eating between meals.

- C. Skipping meals itself can create a depressed
- D. A new research suggests that nutrition can lessen some of the risks of depression.
- E. India is perhaps the world's leader in researching the connection between diet and depression.
- F. Many of them are made by the human body, but nine others, the "essential" amino acids, must be eaten in one's diet.
- G. The process can lead to twisted signals, which can not only lead to depression, but also, according to many scientists, aggression.

#### 答案:16~20 ECFAG

#### Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分15 分)

Imunek Williams was pregnant (怀孕的). One summer morning, she took a bus to a local 21 to have a body check. Among the passengers were 37 young students and they 22 for their school, the Milwaukee Academy of Science. While they had 23 a few blocks to go before reaching the bus stop, suddenly Imunek 24 a strong smoke smell. She quickly 25 the driver to pull over to ensure the 26 of the passengers.

With no time to 27 help, Imunek and the driver took immediate action. They immediately 28 all the students off the bus and made sure there were no remaining children in the aisle (过道). Imunek left last, and minutes later, the went up in flames (火焰).

Firefighters arrived at the scene as the smoke and fire rose out of the 30 bus. Onlookers felt amazed and 31 that everyone escaped without injury. The cause of the fire was under examination, and experts said that the problem with the engine was the 32 cause.

The Milwaukee Academy of Science and the students' parents offered their 33 to Imunek for her heroic action. The Milwaukee Brewers honoured their hometown hero by 34 her to throw the first ball of a recent game at American Family Field.

Later Imunek said, "It just felt good that I was able to get them off and my 35 was that no one was hurt."

21. A. hospital B. school C. station D. museum A 根据下文的"to have a body check"可知, Imunek去"医院"做检查。故选 A。

22. A. hunted

C. headed

D. asked

C 该空的主语是 students,宾语是 their school, 此处表示"去"学校, head for 表示"前往"。故选  $C_{\circ}$ 

23. A. secretly

B. hardly

C. really

D. simply

D 此处修饰下文的"a few blocks",所以是"仅 仅"几个街区。故选 D。

24. A. imagined

B. noticed

C. stopped

D. showed

B 根据下文的"a strong smoke smell"可知,她 "注意"到了一股浓烈的烟味。故选 B。

**25.** A. reminded

B. taught

C. promised

D. allowed

A 根据上文可知, Imunek 突然注意到了浓烟, 所以接下来的动作是"提醒"司机停车。故选 A。

**26.** A. connection

B. memory

C. pleasure

D. safety

D 根据上文的"to ensure"和下文的"of the passengers"可知,靠边停车的目的是保证乘客的 "安全"。故选 D。

27. A. make use of

B. come up with

C. call for

D. give up

C 根据下文的"help, Imunek and the driver took immediate action"可知,当下情况紧急,没时 间去"寻求"帮助。故选 C。

**28.** A. drove

B. guided

C. threw

D. dropped

B 主语"They"指代 Imunek 和公共汽车司机,宾语 是 all the students,所以他们俩"引导"所有学生下 车。故选 B。

**29**. A. bus

B. tree

C. house

D. machine

A 根据第一段中的"bus"可知,该事情发生在 "公共汽车"上,原词复现。故选 A。

30. A. formal

B. used

C. burnt

D. repaired

C 根据上文的"went up in flames(火焰)"可知, 公共汽车"着火"了。故选 C。

31. A. doubtful

B. thankful

C. regretful

D. fearful

B 根据并列连词"and"前的形容词"amazed"可

知,围观的人对没人受伤这件事是心存"感激的"。 故选 B。

- 32. A. natural
- B. same
- C. frequent
- D. possible
- D 根据上文的"the problem with the engine"和下文的"cause"可知,发动机异常是"可能的"原因。故选 D。
- 33. A. praise
- B. advice
- C. courage
- D. patience
- A 根据上文可知,Imunek 和公共汽车司机救了一车的学生,所以学院和学生家长对她进行"赞赏,表扬"。故选 A。
- 34. A. expecting
- B. sending
- C. inviting
- D. challenging
- C 根据下文的"her to throw the first ball of a recent game at American Family Field"可知,该队伍"邀请"Imunek 在比赛中投出第一球。故选C。
- 35. A. dream
- B. request
- C. decision
- D. happiness
- D 根据下文的"no one was hurt"和上文的"good"可知,Imunek的"幸福"是没人受伤。故选D。

#### Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分15 分)

The mouth-watering hot pots of Sichuan are as famous overseas as they are in China, and the hot flavour is enough 36. to heat (heat) up a cold midwinter evening or to let loose rivers of sweat on a summer afternoon. I gave it my first try last night, together 37. with a few local friends. As the soup bubbled slowly over a gas burner in the middle of the table, 38. its (it) surface was covered with a beautiful layer of chillies, Sichuan peppers, spring onions and red oil. Slowly at first, and then faster and faster, we tipped plates of fresh meat, fish and vegetables into the pot. The hot flavour quickened our laughter and conversation, 39. making (make) the meal the perfect way to relax with friends.

Sichuan hot pots are perfect for the damp,

40. foggy (fog) climate in which they were invented.

They are believed to have started off in the late Qing

Dynasty as a way for boatmen on the Yangtze River

to keep warm during the cold and wet winters. In
the beginning, the delicious dish was made

41. simply (simple) by boiling vegetables, chillies

and Sichuan peppers in water. Over time, it 42. has expanded (expand) to include multiple options of soups, vegetables, meats and sauces, appealing to people of different 43. tastes (taste). What I love best about Sichuan hot pots is that they offer 44. a great opportunity to socialise with friends since a meal can last for hours. I instantly became a big fan of Sichuan hot pots 45. and I'll soon be back for more!

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假如你们学校的英语爱好者俱乐部正在对"良好饮食习惯"这一话题进行讨论,请根据下列提示,用 英语写一篇80词左右的发言稿。

部分同学的饮食习惯	良好的饮食习惯	个人看法
不吃早餐、爱吃零食、 偏食、饮食过度	饮食多样化、 饮食定时定量	重要性:有助于身体健康

注意:1. 发言稿必须包括所有提示要点,可适当发挥;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:偏食 be particular about food;零食 snack Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits.

That's all. Thank you!

#### 【参考范文】

Dear friends,

As we all know, we are what we eat. Therefore, it's very important for us to form healthy eating habits. However, bad eating habits are still very common among us students. Some of us often go to school without breakfast; some like to have snacks; some are particular about food, and others eat or drink too much. All these bad habits will surely do harm to our health.

To keep fit, we should have a healthy diet, which generally includes proper amounts of fish, meat, vegetables, fruit as well as main food. Besides, we'd better have meals regularly.

In my opinion, we should try to develop healthy eating habits to build up a strong figure. Only in this way can we have enough energy to study better.

That's all. Thank you!

#### 第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两 段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I sat at the breakfast table with my four-yearold son, Matthew-trying to ignore the ache in my stomach. "Mama, want to play?" "Not today, baby." I shook my head. These days I could barely get out of bed. I was still recovering from a surgery. I hoped for strength and happiness. But the future seemed so hopeless.

Suddenly, Matthew jumped up from his spot on the kitchen floor. "Bird!" he shouted, rushing to our courtyard. Sure enough, there was a white dove seated in a rubber tree. It sat there for a few moments, and then flew away. Strangely, I'd never seen one in our neighbourhood before.

When I dragged myself to the kitchen the next morning, the dove was back. This time with a mate carrying twigs (嫩枝). "Look, Matthew," I said, pointing to the tree. "They're going to make a nest." The doves flew in and out of the courtyard all week, building on top of the rubber tree.

Matthew could hardly contain his excitement. Every morning, he'd run into the kitchen and take his spot by the sliding glass door talking to the birds while they worked. His enthusiasm was influential. As much as I was grieving (悲伤), I couldn't help but look forward to the doves' visits too.

Then it all went wrong. The courtyard was a safe enough spot for a nest, but the rubber tree's branch, thin leaves were far from stable. One night, a strong wind blew, throwing the doves' nest to the ground. I heard the twigs break apart.

I surveyed the damage. Nothing good ever lasts. I wouldn't blame the doves if they never came back. But they returned. And they paid no attention to the pile of sticks that had once been their nest. They started again from scratch. Again, though, the wind destroyed all their hard work. The next day, and the next, they renewed their efforts, as if nothing had happened.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。 I knew I had to do something. "It works! The birds are back!" Matthew announced.

#### 【参考范文】

I knew I had to do something. The white dove and its mate had given me something to look forward to, even in my darkest days. Now I was going to help them in return. I woke up the following morning with a plan. There was only an hour before the doves usually made their visits. I hammered a shelf into the wall next to the rubber tree and covered it with leaves to make it look like a tree. Then Matthew and I stood by the sliding glass door, waiting and hoping.

"It works! The birds are back!" Matthew announced. There they were sitting on top of the shelf, adding some twigs to the new nest despite damage from the strong wind. Three weeks later, we watched three chicks break free from their shells. "Chirp, chirp!" Matthew sang. I held him close and kissed him, feeling more positive and hopeful than I had in months. I realised all around me, life went on. And it was filled with wonders and surprises that I couldn't even imagine.

П	n	i÷.	2
U	n	IL	_

## Let's celebrate!

## ┌╸单元概览 ∽......

## ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, with the topic involving Chinese and Western festivals. The unit will present multi-modal texts such as a book review, a festival invitation and a column article including two letters from the readers. This unit starts with introducing various festivals throughout the world, then you will read a book review of *Letters from Father Christmas* to raise awareness of the meaning behind a festival. Then you will have the chance to listen to the introduction about the Lantern Festival celebrations and Thanksgiving to have a deep understanding of the meaning of festivals. Next you will learn to write a letter to express ideas by reading an article about Chinese Spring Festival. Through this unit, you are expected to figure out that all ethnic groups and regions have their own unique festivals. Besides, you will have your own understanding of the transformation and spread of traditional festivals.

## ◇ 学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
		词汇	能正确使用与"节日"主题相关的单词和词组。
	语言知识	语法	能恰当使用情态动词来谈论某一节日的庆祝方式。
		语篇	能围绕"节日"的主题语境内容,基于单元提供的多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容,深入理解不同国家的节日文化。
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论某一节日的庆祝方式,恰当使用情态动词表示推测,能书面表达自己对某种节日现象的观点。
语言能力语言技能		听	听关于"邀请"的对话,了解在正式和非正式的场合下,发出和回应邀请的方式的不同, 思考在不同文化背景和情景下应如何做出选择,激发求知欲和探索欲。
	语言	说	能谈论与节日有关的话题,且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用情态动词,使表达更加准确、自然。
		读	<ol> <li>阅读书评,获取文中介绍作品的关键信息,了解文章所赞颂的给予和奉献精神,加深对节日意义的理解;</li> <li>阅读专栏文章的两封信,深入思考传统节日和习俗的变迁,了解中国文化逐渐走向世界这一趋势,并初步学习书信的文体特点和写法。</li> </ol>
		写	能正确运用情态动词表示推测,并能用文字表达自己的观点和感受。

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过阅读,从文章中提取事实和细节,并基于这些信息推导出合理的结论。
文化意识	了解中国传统节日走向世界这一趋势,增强民族自豪感,主动弘扬和传播中华优秀文化,增强社会责任感。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

## ○ 必备知识

必背单词	honour, dragon, decoration, regardless, inequality, regard, literature, envelope, pole, regular, warning, starving, indicate, request, fancy, guy, lantern, attract, decorate, competition, formal, host, occasion, editor, admit, effort, loss, eve, software, adult, process, retired, exist, overseas, global, nationality, audience, joy
重点表达	keep alive, as as, regard as, address to, complain about, be keen on, eat out, have to do with, wrap up, in one's opinion, not only but (also)
重点知识	1. do/does/did 表强调 2. 否定转移 3. not only but (also)
单元语法	情态动词(2)
单元 写作	一封表达看法的书信

## 探・究・构・建

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Acquire information about different aspects of festivals by reading and summarising.
- 2. Think of the reasons why people celebrate festivals.
- 3. Understand the spirit in the text and deepen your understanding of the meanings of festivals.

## ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

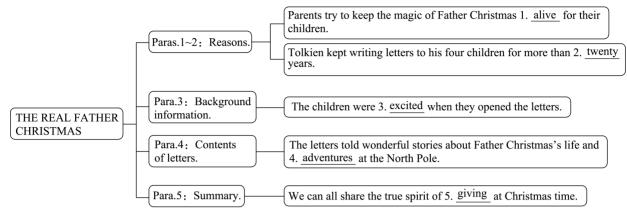
- 1. participate v. 参加,参与
- 2. inequality n. (社会上的)不平等
- 3. novel n. (长篇)小说
- 4. limitless adj. 无限的
- 5. complain v. 抱怨,不满,发牢骚
- **6.** warning *n*. 警告,警示,告诫
- 7. honour v. 向 .....表示敬意
- 8. decoration n. 装饰物
- 9. freedom n. 自由,自由权利
- 10. regular adj. 频繁的,经常的
- 11. regardless of 不管;不顾;不理会
- 12. regard... as... 把……视作……
- 13. be based on 以……为基础

- 14. as well as 也,还;和……一样好
- (二)阅读词汇
- 1. literature n. 文学
- 2. lunar adj. 月球的
- 3. fantasy n. 幻想,想象
- 4. dragon n. 龙
- 5. envelope n. 信封
- **6**. poet n. 诗人
- 7. harvest n. 收成
- 8. vote v. 投票,表决
- 9. pole n. (行星的)地极,(尤指地球的)北极或南极
- 10. roof n. (建筑物、汽车、帐篷等的)顶,顶部
- 11. starving adj. 挨饿的,即将饿死的
- 12. be addressed to sb. 写信给某人
- 13. take place 发生;举行

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Who may be most interested in the book *Letters* from Father Christmas?
  - A. People who like reading novels.
  - B. People who like playing games.
  - C. People who like reading books about festivals.
  - D. People who consider Christmas as a special time.
- 2. What kind of father do you think J.R.R. Tolkien is?
  - A. Humorous.
- B. Strict.
- C. Serious.
- D. Caring.
- 3. What topic might be talked about in the letters?
  - ①Father Christmas's life at the North Pole.
  - ②J.R.R. Tolkien's daily life at the North Pole.
  - ③Father Christmas's warnings to the children.
  - ④ Father Christmas's complaints about his helpers.
  - A. ①②
- В. ①③
- C. 114
- D. 34

#### 答案:1~3 DDC

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. That is why Letters from Father Christmas could

be the perfect book for those who regard Christmas as a special time of year.

[尝试翻译]那就是为什么《圣诞老人的来信》这本书,对于那些把圣诞节视为一年中特殊时刻的人来说,是一本完美的书。

2. ...but if you find that not many of the things you asked for have come, and not perhaps quite as many as sometimes, remember that this Christmas all over the world there are a terrible number of poor and starving people.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句,其中 if 引导的是条件状语从句,在 if 从句中 find 后跟一个that 引导的宾语从句,其中 you asked for 是定语从句修饰 the things; remember 是主句的谓语动词,其后是一个that 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]……但是,如果你发现自己并没有得到很多想要的东西,有时甚至所获无几,请你记住,在这个圣诞节,世界上还有很多的穷人和饥饿的人。

#### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following question.

What kind of true spirit can we learn from the book Letters from Father Christmas?

Giving.

## Unit 2 课后素养评价(五)

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### Ⅰ. 阅读理解

The lion dance, which mimics (模仿) a lion with kung fu and acrobatic (杂技的) styles, is a traditional Chinese performing art that could often be seen during festive occasions like the Spring Festival. It's believed to have started in the Three Kingdoms period and peaked in the Southern and Northern Dynasties. In ancient China, the lion was regarded as a symbol of good luck. The lion dance is often performed in celebrations to this day and in 2006, it was listed as a national intangible cultural heritage (非物质文化遗产).

Qiu Haiwei, 17, and Huang Qingliang, 16, are two lion dance lovers in Guangxi Zhuang autonomous region. They started learning the dance two years ago. Though lion dance performances are breathtaking, learning the art is another matter.

Dancing on the poles makes the art a fascinating sight. There are 21 poles of heights between 1.2 metres and 2.5 metres with up to 1.8 metres between them. A single false step will send the performers falling to the ground below.

As a result, the ancient art form has fallen out of favour with the young generation, as the skills take years to master while only a low wage can be earned. Also, coaches and funding can be hard to find, so it's difficult for a lion dance troupe (表演队) to survive. But since 2017, local authorities in Guangxi have teamed up with companies and schools to help reboot the ancient art.

"We must work hard to help pass on the heritage and its spirit to future generations," Deng Minghua, a national inheritor of the cultural heritage, told Xinhua.

- 1. What's the longest distance between two poles used for lion dance?
  - A. 1.8 metres.
  - B. 2.5 metres.
  - C. 1.2 metres.
  - D. 2.4 metres.

- A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"There are 21 poles of heights between 1.2 metres and 2.5 metres with up to 1.8 metres between them."可知,舞狮中用到的柱子之间的距离最远达 1.8 米。故选 A。
- 2. Why is it difficult for the lion dance troupe to survive?
  - A. No one wants to learn lion dance.
  - B. Mastering lion dance takes decades.
  - C. The payment is not satisfying enough.
  - D. Coaches are not professional enough.
  - C 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"As a result, the ancient art form has fallen out of favour with the young generation, as the skills take years to master while only a low wage can be earned. Also, coaches and funding can be hard to find, so it's difficult for a lion dance troupe (表演队) to survive."可知,舞狮表演队很难生存的其中一个原因就是薪水很低。故选 C。
- 3. What can be learned about lion dance according to the text?
  - A. People will perform it only in the Spring Festival.
  - B. Local authorities attach great importance to it.
  - C. It started in the Southern and Northern Dynasties.
  - D. It has been added to the list of tangible cultural heritage.
  - B 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段最后一句"But since 2017, local authorities in Guangxi have teamed up with companies and schools to help reboot the ancient art."可知,当地政府很重视这种艺术的传承。故选 B。
- **4.** What's the text mainly about?
  - A. The future development of lion dance.
  - B. How to perform lion dance successfully.
  - C. Why young generations don't prefer lion dance.
  - D. The importance of keeping lion dance culture
  - D 主旨大意题。第一段中的"The lion dance is

often performed in celebrations to this day and in 2006, it was listed as a national intangible cultural heritage (非物质文化遗产)."主要介绍了 这种艺术的悠久历史及其在中国文化中的地位;第 二段至第四段介绍了这种古老的艺术形式的动人 之处及其现在的状况。所以综合全文,这篇文章旨 在介绍使舞狮文化生存下去的重要性,A、B、C三 个选项只是文章中的几个细节,不是文章主旨。故 选 D。

#### Ⅱ. 七选五

It feels good to buy gifts for others. So what's the best way to manage your money, shop wisely and smartly this holiday season? Susan Beacham has recently given kids some money management skills.

"My first tip is to make a list and check it twice. Start by writing down whom to include in your gift giving," says Beacham. "Then put the amount of money next to each name and add up. 1 If not, make changes."

Take the list with you to the store. " 2 If you've just spent 30 dollars on someone you had planned to spend 25 dollars on, you're going to have to spend 5 dollars less on somebody else," says Beacham. The key is staying within the limits you've set for yourself.

How to get the best deals? Beacham suggests skipping the supermarkets. 3 Things sold there often cost less than those at traditional stores. "You'll be able to save a lot more money," says Beacham.

4 Beacham points out that some of the best presents are free. They are gifts from the heart. "Kids can give time or talent," says Susan Beacham.

For parents, write a note telling them how special they are to you. For a friend, you may just create a work of art, like a poem or a drawing. For people in your community, show that you care by volunteering. 5 Giving your time to help others may end up being the best gift of all!

- A. Shop online instead.
- B. Do you have enough money?
- C. Make sure that you do the maths.
- D. Choose gifts with practical value.
- E. Find out who needs your help and what you can do
- F. It's also important to praise the fine taste of the gift-giver.
- G. And don't forget—not everyone needs a storebought gift.

### 答案:1~5 BCAGE

# Section Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Learn new words and expressions about festivals.
- 2. Learn and then use some key words and expressions.
- 3. Master and use some important sentence structures.

## 自主式预习。

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. A **poet** is a person who writes poems. 诗人
- 2. The poor harvest caused prices to rise sharply.

收成

- 3. Nearly two-thirds of this group **voted** for Buchanan. 投票
- 4. Write your letter and seal (封住) it in a blank envelope. 信封
- Novels, plays, and poetry are referred to as literature, especially when they are considered to be good or important.
- 6. If you say that you are **starving**, you mean that you are very hungry. 挨饿的
- 7. With the temperature rising, **polar** ice will melt at a faster rate. 极地的
- 8. The **roof** of a building is the covering on top of it that protects the people and things inside from the weather. (建筑物的)顶,顶部

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
honour v. 向······表示 敬意	honourable adj. 可敬的
decoration n. 装饰物	decorate v. 装饰,布置
freedom n. 自由,自由 权利	free adj. 自由的
participate v. 参加, 参与	participation n. 参加
	participant n. 参与者,参 加者
inequality n. (社会上的)不平等	equal adj. 平等的
	equally adv. 平等地
	equality n. 平等;相等

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
limitless adj. 无限的	limit n. 边界,限度 v. 限制,限定
	limited adj. 有限的
regular adj. 频繁的, 经常的	regularly <i>adv</i> . 定期地; 经常
complain v. 抱怨,不满,发牢骚	complaint n. 抱怨
warning n. 警告,警示,告诫	warn v. 提醒,警告
starving adj. 挨饿的, 即将饿死的	starve v. 挨饿,饿死
	starvation n. 挨饿,饿死

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. regard... as ... 把 ······视作 ······
- 2. regardless of 不管;不顾;不理会
- 3. complain about 抱怨
- 4. take place 发生;举行
- 5. in memory of 纪念;追念
- 6. be known as 作为……而出名
- 7. be made into 被制成……
- 8. instead of 代替;而不是
- 9. wrap up (用纸、布等)包,裹
- 10. get together 聚集在一起

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:That is why...

That is why Letters from Father Christmas could be the perfect book for those who regard Christmas as a special time of year.

那就是为什么《圣诞老人的来信》这本书,对于那

些把圣诞节视为一年中特殊时刻的人来说是一本 完美的书。

2. 句型公式: must have done

The children must have been very excited as they opened it.

孩子们打开信时一定很兴奋。

3. 句型公式:that 引导同位语从句

Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.

有趣的是,信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警 告,比如如果他们做得不好,他们就可能收不到礼 物之类的话。

4. 句型公式:do/does/did 表强调

The letters did, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...

不过,随着托尔金的孩子们渐渐长大,信的内容的 确发生了变化 ……

#### ○ 仟务型课堂 ○

#### 1. honour v. 向······表示敬意;尊敬 n. 尊敬;荣誉

[教材原文]Freedom Day is to honour an event. 自由日是为了纪念一个事件。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)honour sb. for 因……而尊敬某人 be honoured as 被尊为 ·······

be/feel honoured to do sth. 很荣幸做某事

(2) have the honour of doing sth. 有幸做某事 It's an honour for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说很荣 幸做某事。

in honour of sb. = in sb.'s honour 为了纪念某人; 为了向某人表示敬意

#### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①His colleague honoured him for his bravery.
- ② I feel greatly honoured to give (give) a presentation about the Mid-Autumn Festival, one of the most important traditional Chinese festivals.
- 3 Yuan Longping is honoured as the "Father of Hybrid Rice".
- (4) I do think it is a great honour to take part in the activity.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之通知)随着端午节的临近,我们计 划举行一场龙舟比赛,以纪念著名诗人屈原。

With the Dragon Boat Festival approaching, we are planning to hold a dragon boat race in honour of the famous poet, Qu Yuan.

- ②(应用文写作之演讲稿)能有机会在这里发表演 讲,我感到非常荣幸。
- → It is a great honour for me to have the opportunity to deliver a speech here.(it 作形式主
- → I feel it a great honour to have the opportunity

to deliver a speech here.(it 作形式宾语)

→ I feel greatly honoured to have the opportunity to deliver a speech here. (honoured)

#### 2. decoration n. [C]装饰物 [U](室内的)装饰,装潢

「教 材 原 文 ] People prepare decorations with flowers and dance around maypoles.

人们准备鲜花装饰,并且围着五朔节花柱跳舞。

#### 「归纳拓展」

decorate v. 装饰,布置

decorate... with... 用······装饰(某物、某处)

be decorated with/by 装饰着……

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①He decorated his room with pictures of all his favourite sports figures.
- 2) The decoration (decorate) of their new house is very modern and fashionable.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之节日介绍)村里所有的房子都用红 灯笼装饰,以庆祝春节。

All the houses in the village are decorated with/by red lanterns to celebrate the Spring Festival.

#### 3. inequality n. (社会上的)不平等

[教材原文] It celebrates the end of racial inequality in the country.

它庆祝该国种族不平等的结束。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)inequality in... 在 ······ 方面不平等

inequality between... and... ······ 和······之间的不平等

(2) equal v. 等于,与 ······ 相等; 比得上 adj. 相等 的;能胜任的;平等的 n. [C]同等的人;相等物

equal sb./sth. (in+n.) (在 ...... 方面) 比得上某 人/某物

be equal to (doing) sth. 能胜任(做)某事;比得上 某物(equal 作形容词时后面的 to 是介词)

be without equal(=have no equal) 无与伦比

- (3) equality n. 平等;相等
- (4) equally adv. 平等地

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Though they are equal to him in height, no one can equal him in playing basketball.
- ②When it comes to wildlife protection, all species should be treated equally (equal).
- ③ Ensuring every child equal rights to education is where the key to the elimination of inequality (equal) across the world lies.
- ①I always think that a great conversation should be made up of equality (equal) and trust.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信)我写信是想申请志愿者一职,我认为我**能胜任这份工作**。

I'm writing to apply for the position as a volunteer and I think I am equal to the job. (equal adj.)

#### 4. warning n. 警告,警示,告诫

[教材原文] Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they might not receive their presents if they were not good.

有趣的是,信里并没有那些常见的对孩子们的警告,比如如果他们做得不好,他们就可能收不到礼物之类的话。

#### [归纳拓展]

warn v. 提醒,警告

warn sb. of sth. 警告某人当心某事 warn sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事 warn sb. against doing sth.

= warn sb. not to do sth. 警告某人不要做某事 warn sb. that... 提醒某人……

#### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Mrs Smith warned her son never to drive (drive) after drinking.
- ②We've just heard a warning (warn) on the radio that a typhoon may be on the way.
- ③I tried to warn him of the danger, but he is determined to get his own way.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之话题总结)经过这件事,我想起来老师总是告诫我们绝不能放弃我们的梦想。

After this experience, I remember that our teacher always warned us not to give up on our dreams.

②(应用文写作之建议信)医生**警告不要熬夜,**因为这可能导致严重的健康问题。

Doctors warn against staying up late as it can lead to serious health problems.

#### 5. do/does/did 表强调

[教材原文] The letters **did**, however, change as Tolkien's children got older...

不过,随着托尔金的孩子们渐渐长大,信的内容的确发生了变化……

[句式分析]本句中助动词 did 起强调作用,强调谓语动词 change,意为"的确"。

#### 「归纳拓展」

"do/does/did+动词原形"结构用来强调谓语动词的一般现在时和一般过去时,且只对肯定的谓语动词进行强调。在一般现在时中,do有人称的变化,第三人称单数用 does;在一般过去时中,do 变成did。在祈使句中,"do+动词原形"往往不表示命令,而表示强烈的请求或客气的语气。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①He does like (like) the film.
- ②She did (do) tell me about her address, but I forgot all about it.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之主旨升华)我**确实认为**真正的友谊 应该建立在相互理解和有相似理想的基础上。
- I <u>do believe</u> that true friendship should be based on mutual understanding and similar ideals.
- ②(读后续写之主旨升华)有了勇气和毅力,我确实取得了很大的进步。

With bravery and perseverance, I did make great progress.

## 多义词汇 专练

1. Snow is **novel** to people from tropical countries. <u>B</u> A. n. 小说

B. adj. 新奇的

C. adj. 与众不同的

2. I remember the first really difficult customer we had at Covent Garden. She was displeased with absolutely everything, nothing was right and I was rather surprised that she became a "regular".

A. adj. 频繁的;经常的

B. adj. 常规的

C. n. 常客;老主顾

## Unit 2 课后素养评价(六)

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. To improve my spoken English, I have made it a routine to participate in the English Corner on a regular basis.
- 2. I am keen on contemporary Chinese literature, and it is why I sign up for the reading club.
- 3. On the plate there was chicken decorated with carrots and tomatoes.
- 4. Other experts feel that giving the worker freedom to do (do) his job in his own way is important.
- 5. It is impolite of you to open that letter which was addressed to me.
- 6. The house is so cold that the roof needs to be repaired regularly (regular).
- 7. In your opinion, what can we do to stop these animals dying (die) out?
- 8. He spent the evening wrapping (wrap) up the New Year gifts.
- 9. We got a good harvest so we can help those who are suffering from starvation (starve).
- 10. I am a lovely and cheerful chef who likes cooking as well as doing (do) sports.

#### Ⅱ. 短语填空

take place; regardless of; be known as; regarded as; instead of

- 1. They are known as "four new great inventions of modern China".
- **2.** Do you know when the accident took place?
- 3. Tom does not feel well today, so I will attend the meeting instead of him.
- 4. Regardless of the risk of getting infected, she was determined to set off for the city to fight against the terrible disease.
- 5. As we all know, Yuan Longping is regarded as the "Father of Hybrid Rice".

#### Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 他通过了考试,这让他的父母很高兴。(which 引 导定语从句)

He passed the exam, which made his parents very happy.

- 2. 吃月饼、赏月、欣赏舞龙表演、挂装饰精美的灯笼是 人们的传统习俗。(it 作形式主语)
  - It is a traditional custom for people to eat moon cakes, appreciate the moon, enjoy dragon dance, and hang up lanterns with beautiful decorations.
- 3. 汤姆今天早上起床晚的原因是他昨晚睡得太晚了。 (The reason why... is that...)
  - The reason why Tom got up late this morning is that he stayed up too late last night.
- 4. 中秋节确实是一个重要的中国传统节日,需要代 代相传。(强调谓语动词)

The Mid-Autumn Festival is indeed an important traditional Chinese holiday that needs to be passed down from generation to generation.

#### Ⅳ. 完形填空

I opened the door of our campervan (房车). My two cats, Gatinha and Jon Snow, 1 down the stairs and onto the grass. In the distance, the sea 2 before me and the sun's rays danced on the surface, creating a(n) 3 display of light and shadow.

A month earlier, Wade, 35, and I thought we were ready for our travel in 4 . So we 5 our office jobs to travel around Australia in our truck that we'd transformed into a 6 on wheels. Besides saving for the trip, we'd set up a website to 7 money while we were travelling, along with renting out our home.

Knowing we couldn't leave our two rescue cats behind, we decided to bring them with us. After doing some 8, I discovered that seeing cats on the road is 9 but we didn't let it stop us. To 10 the cats to their new home, we brought them into the van while we worked. Finally, we were on the way to travel.

For the first few days they 11 the inside of the van but as days turned to weeks, they gradually grew more 12 . It wasn't long before they were curiously sniffing the grass. 13, neither of the cats have ever walked far and we 14 them to wander freely.

Looking back, 15 the city life to travel around was the best decision we ever made, and our cats make the perfect companions!

- 1. A. jumped
- B. bent
- C. fell
- D. stopped

根据上文的"I opened the door of our campervan (房车)."和下文的"down the stairs and onto the grass"可知,作者打开车门,两只猫从车里 跳下来。故选A。

- 2. A. shouted
- B. stretched
- C. folded
- D. disappeared

B 根据上文的"In the distance, the sea..."可知, 大海向远处延伸。故选 B。

- 3. A. heartbreaking B. imaginary

  - C. breathtaking
- D. disturbing

C 根据上文的"the sun's rays danced on the surface"和下文的"display of light and shadow"可 知,太阳的光线在海面上跳跃着,形成了一个光影 交织的画面,这个画面很美丽,令人惊叹。故选 C。

- **4.** A. time
- B. budget
- C. energy
- D. facility

B 根据下文的"Besides saving for the trip..."和 下文的"we were travelling, along with renting out our home"提到作者和韦德节省钱来旅行可 知,此处指为旅行做好预算。故选 B。

- 5. A. quit
- B. ignored
- C. took
- D. changed

A 根据下文的"our office jobs to travel around Australia in our truck"可知,作者和韦德辞职去旅 行。故选A。

- 6. A. library
- B. school
- C. home
- D. hotel

C 根据上文的"we'd transformed into a"和上文 提到作者和韦德辞职去旅行可知,他们开着车去旅 行,卡车即将变成一个家,下文"the cats to their new home"中的 home 也是提示。故选 C。

- 7. A. make
- B. save
- C. collect
- D. donate

A 根据上文的"Besides saving for the trip, we'd set up a website to..."可知,建立网站是为了挣钱。 故选A。

- 8. A. practice
- B. thought
- C. discussion
- D. research

D 根据下文的"I discovered that seeing cats on the road is 9 ..."可知,这是作者在做了一些研 究后所发现的。故选 D。

- 9. A. common
- B. fascinating
- C. rare
- D. natural

C 根据第一段提到的"I opened the door of our campervan (房车). My two cats, Gatinha and Jon Snow, 1 down the stairs and onto the grass." 以及下文"but we didn't let it stop us"可知,作者 是带了这两只猫去旅行的; but 前后是转折关系, 即虽然带着猫去旅行是很少见的,但是作者却选择 这么做。故选C。

- **10.** A. force
- B. adapt
- C. move
- D. lead

B 根据下文的"the cats to their new home, we brought them into the van while we worked"可 知,作者在工作的时候把这两只猫带进了货车,这 是为了让猫适应新家。故选B。

- 11. A. focused on
- B. messed up
- C. stuck to
- D. escaped from

C 根据上文的"For the first few days..."和下文 的"the inside of the van",以及下文提到的慢慢 地这两只猫开始去外面可知,刚开始的几天这两 只猫一直待在车里。故选C。

- 12. A. dependent
- B. anxious
- C. confident
- D. tolerant

C 根据下文的"It wasn't long before they were curiously sniffing the grass."和上文提到的刚开 始几天这两只猫一直待在车里可知,慢慢地这两 只猫变得自信起来,开始走出卡车。故选C。

- 13. A. Amazingly
- B. Suddenly
- C. Regretfully
- D. Doubtfully

A 根据下文的"neither of the cats have ever walked far"可知,这两只猫从未走远过,这令作者 很惊讶。故选A。

- 14. A. ordered
- B. reminded
- C. taught
- D. trusted

D 上文的"neither of the cats have ever walked far"提到这两只猫从未走远过可知,作者信任这 两只猫,相信它们可以自由漫步而丢不了。故选  $D_{\circ}$ 

- 15. A. exchanging B. choosing
  - C. abandoning D. experiencing
  - C 根据下文的"the city life to travel around"和 上文提到的作者和韦德辞职开着卡车环游澳大利 亚可知,此处指放弃城市生活去旅行。故选 C。

#### Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Identify the meanings and forms of the modal verbs by observing the sentences.
- 2. Find out the functions of the modal verbs.
- 3. Use modal verbs to make a deduction or guess.

## 自主式预习 。

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The magazine was packaged in a fancy plastic case with attractive graphics (图案).
- 2. I showed my pass to the security guard and he waved me through.
- 3. We go to the square and enjoy various lanterns there every year on the Lantern Festival.
- 4. Dessert is something sweet, which you eat at the end of a meal.
- 5. The management is understood to be very unwilling to agree to this request. 要求,请求
- **6.** Atlanta was chosen to be the **host** of the 1996 Olympic Games.
- 7. Sean is really a very sweet guy and has many talents. (尤指青年)男子
- **8.** An **occasion** is a time when something happens.

场合,时刻

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
indicate v. 表明,显示	indication n. 表明;标示; 象征
attract v. 吸引,引起的兴趣	attractive adj. 吸引人的;有魅力的
	attraction n. 吸引力;具有吸引力的事物或人
competition n. 比赛, 竞赛	compete v. 比赛,竞争
	competitive adj. 竞争性 的
	competitor n. 竞争者;对 手

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
formal adj. 正式的	informal adj. 非正式的

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. put up 举起;张贴;供给……住宿
- 2. be dressed as 装扮为 ......
- 3. check out 检验;通过考核
- 4. pay attention to 注意
- 5. wave at 朝……挥手
- 6. find out 找出,查明

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: spend (time) (in) doing...

I spent ages putting up all the balloons and flowers last night.

昨晚我花了很长时间,把所有的气球和花都装上 去了。

- 2. 句型公式:过去分词短语作后置定语 Look at those two guys dressed as chickens! 看那两个打扮成小鸡的家伙!
- 3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语

Depending on regional customs, it may be acceptable to be 15 to 30 minutes late.

视地方风俗而定,迟到15至30分钟也许是可以接 受的。

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### 1. attract v. 吸引,引起……的兴趣

「教材原文] The lantern fair attracts a lot of people, so it's one of the busiest times of year for the traffic police.

灯会吸引了很多人,所以这是一年中交通警察最繁 忙的时候之一。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)attract sb. to sb./sth. 引起某人对某人/某物的 注意

attract one's attention 吸引某人的注意

- (2)attractive adj. 吸引人的;有魅力的
- be attractive to... 对……有吸引力的
- (3) attraction n. 吸引力;具有吸引力的事物或人 a tourist attraction 旅游胜地

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Especially interesting is making dumplings, which I think is particularly attractive (attract) to you.
- 2 The competition aiming to broaden students' horizons and enrich students' life is an attraction (attract) for me.
- (2)写作微练

(2024・新课标 ] 卷应用文写作之活动分享) 在我完成 画作之后,它引起了我的美术老师的注意,他对它评 价很高,因为它栩栩如生。

After I finished the painting, it attracted my art teacher's attention, and he thought highly of it because it was true to life.

#### 2. 否定转移

[教材原文]No, I don't think that's Lucy. 不,我觉得那不是露西。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)当 I/We think/believe/expect 等后面接一个具 有否定意义的由 that 引导的宾语从句时,通常把 否定词转移到主句中,而宾语从句的谓语动词用肯 定式。
- (2)否定转移的三个条件:
- ①主句主语是第一人称 I 或 we;

- ②主句的谓语动词为一般现在时;
- ③主句的谓语动词是表示心理活动的动词,如 think, suppose, believe, imagine, expect 等。
- (3)否定转移的反义疑问句的主谓语要与宾语从句 一致,并用肯定形式。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①I don't believe he did that, did he?
- ②I don't suppose she has finished her homework,
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)我认为我们不一定成功, 但是不管怎样还是试试吧。

I don't think we'll succeed, but let's try anyway. ②(应用文写作之建议信)尽管互联网对我们有很 大的帮助,我仍认为在这方面花太多的时间并不是 个好主意。

While the Internet is of great help to us, I still don't think it is a good idea to spend too much time on it.

## 多义词汇 专练

- 1. fancy: A. adj. 豪华的 B. adj. 花哨的 C. v. 想 要 D. v. 认为
  - ①I don't **fancy** going out in this cold weather. C
  - ②She fancied she heard a noise downstairs.
  - ③I just want a basic sports coat—nothing fancy.

- (4) Harry took me to a fancy restaurant for our anniversary.
- **2. host**: A. n. 东道主; 主办国 B. v. 主办 C. n. 主
  - ① At the party, we thanked our **host** for the delicious snacks and the flavoursome wine he
  - 2) Which country will be the host country for the next Olympic Games?
  - 3 New Bedford hosts a number of lively festivals throughout the summer months. В

## 语法研习课

## 情态动词(2)

## ·语法感知

- ①That is why Letters from Father Christmas could be the perfect book...
- ②The children **must** have been very excited as they opened it.
- 3 The letters were also beautifully illustrated—each **must** have taken its true author...
- ④ In another letter, Father Christmas complained about how he **could** not stop his helpers...
- ⑤ Interestingly, the letters did not contain the usual warnings to children that they **might** not...
- 6... we can all share the true spirit of giving at Christmas time.
- 1. 以上句子中,句①、句④和句⑥中的情态动词表 能力。
- 2. 句⑤中的情态动词表可能性。
- 3. 句②和句③中的情态动词表猜测, must have done 的意思是"肯定(已经)·····"。

## 。语法精讲

#### 一、can 表推测的用法

1. can 可以表推测,既可以用于肯定句,也可以用于 否定句。can 用于肯定句时,表示理论上的可能 性。其否定式 can't 是语气最强的否定推测,翻译 为"不可能,一定不"; can 也可用于疑问句中表推 测。

Learning English as a second language can be a wonderful experience.

把英语作为第二语言来学习可能是一种美好的经 历。

You **can't** be hungry, for you had lunch only two hours ago.

你不可能饿,因为你两个小时前才吃完午饭。

2. can't/couldn't have done 表示对过去事实的推测,意为"不可能做过……"。can't 比 couldn't 的语气更强一些,但当主句的谓语动词是一般过去时的时候,从句要用 couldn't have done。could have done 还可以表示过去本来能够做某事却没有做,含有惋惜或责备的语气,意为"本来是可以……的"。

He **couldn't have watched** TV yesterday for he knew he would have an exam.

昨天他不可能看电视,因为他知道他快要考试了。

I **could have passed** the exam, but I was too careless.

本来我能够通过考试的,但是我太粗心了。

#### 二、may 和 might 表推测的用法

1. may 和 might 表推测时既可以用于肯定句,也可以用于否定句。may 和 might 用于肯定句时意为 "可能";否定式 may not/might not 意为"可能 不";might 的可能性比 may 更小,语气更委婉一 些。

The little problems that we meet in our daily lives **may** be inspirations for great inventions.

我们在日常生活中遇到的小问题可能就是伟大发明的灵感。

If you have an office job, you **might not** be getting outdoors enough, and your health **might** suffer. 如果你在室内办公,你可能去户外活动得不够,那么你的健康就有可能受到影响。

- 2. may/might have done 表示对过去事实不大肯定的推测,语气较弱,用于肯定句时表示"可能已经……",否定式 may/might not have done 表示"可能还没……"。might have done 还可以表示"本来可能或可以做某事但没有做",含有轻微的责备或遗憾口吻。
  - —What has happened to George?
  - —I don't know. He may/might have got lost.
  - -----乔治发生了什么事?
  - ——我不知道。他可能迷路了。

What a pity! Considering his ability and experience, he **might have done** better.

真遗憾!考虑到他的能力和经验,他本可以做得 更好的。

#### 三、must 表推测的用法

1. must 表推测时只用于肯定句,意为"一定"或"肯定",所作出的推测接近事实,语气最肯定。

He has been working all day. He **must** be very tired.

他工作了一整天。他肯定非常累。

2. must have done 表示对过去事实有把握的推测,语气最强,只用于肯定句,意为"肯定(已经)·····"。

Harry is feeling uncomfortable. He **must have drunk** too much at the party last night.

哈里感觉不舒服。他肯定是在昨晚的聚会上喝 多了。

## 。语法冲关

- Ⅰ. 用适当的情态动词或所给动词的正确形式填空
- 1. My book is missing. Who could have taken it?
- 2. Since nobody gave him any help, he <u>must</u> have done the research on his own.
- 3. I got to the party at 6 pm, but there was no one there, so I needn't have arrived (arrive) so early.
- **4.** This problem <u>may/can</u> lead to more serious ones if left unsolved.
- 5. You <u>mustn't</u> smoke in this part of the hospital. It's not allowed.
- **6.** Mr White has gone to the library so he <u>can't</u> be in the office now.
- 7. They <u>might</u> be having a meeting, but I'm not sure.
- 8. You must come here on time, or you'll be fined

next time.

#### Ⅱ. 完成句子

- 1. They must have been to the Great Wall. 他们一定去过长城。
- 2. The work <u>could have been finished</u> yesterday, but the heavy rain kept us indoors all day. 这项工作昨天本可以完成的,可是一场大雨把我们困在了室内。
- It may/might rain this afternoon. You had better take a raincoat with you.
   今天下午可能会下雨。你最好随身带件雨衣。
- 4. Mr Smith <u>can't have gone to Beijing</u>, for I saw him in the library just now. 史密斯先生不可能去北京了,因为我刚才在图书 馆看见他了。
- 5. Sorry, I'm late. I might have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.
  对不起,我迟到了。我可能把闹钟关掉后又睡着了。

## Unit 2 课后素养评价(七)

## Section II Using language

#### Ⅰ. 词语填空

request; attract; indicate; put up; formal; competition; host; wave at/to

- 1. At such a formal party you shouldn't wear jeans.
- 2. A survey of retired people has <u>indicated</u> that most of them are independent and enjoying life.
- **3.** I feel it a great honour to represent my class to take part in the group dancing competition.
- **4.** New Bedford <u>hosts</u> a number of lively festivals throughout the summer months.
- 5. Smile and wave at/to people who pass you.
- **6.** Beijing <u>attracts</u> millions of tourists from all over the world every year.
- 7. The names of the successful candidates (候选人) will be put up on the noticeboard.
- **8.** The workers <u>requested/request</u> that their working conditions should be further improved.

#### Ⅱ. 句型转换

- 1. It is impossible that she has left school, for her bike is still here.
  - → She <u>can't/couldn't have left school</u>, for her bike is still here.

- 2. You were supposed to have the ability to pass the job interview, but you were too nervous.
  - → You could have passed the job interview, but you were too nervous.
- It's our duty to look after our parents when they are old.
  - $\rightarrow$  We should/must look after our parents when they are old.
- 4. I'm not sure why he hasn't turned up; maybe, he has missed the flight.
  - →I'm not sure why he hasn't turned up; he <u>may/</u> might have missed the flight.
- **5.** I'm sure he has completed his homework for I just saw he was playing football on the playground.
  - → He <u>must have completed his homework</u> for I just saw he was playing football on the playground.

#### Ⅲ. 根据汉语提示完成句子

- 1. I can't find my purse. I <u>might have left it</u> (可能把它忘在) in the supermarket yesterday, but I'm not sure.
- 2. In today's information age, the loss of data <u>can</u> <u>cause serious problems</u> (可能引起严重的问题) for a company.

- 3. We missed the bus. We should have set off earlier (本该早点出发的).
- 4. You may feel it a waste of time to have a training now (你现在可能觉得训练是浪费时间), but I'm sure you will be grateful for it sooner or later.
- 5. You cannot be too careful (再怎么仔细也不为过) when taking an exam.

#### Ⅳ. 阅读理解

#### World's Best Summer Festivals

#### The Governors Ball Music Festival

A relative newcomer to the summer music festival scene, the Governors Ball offers a variety of performers and a taste of New York culture. Visitors can watch shows from rock, electronic, and performers, all while tasting food from popular New York City restaurants. To take a break from the music, festival goers can participate in activities such as Silent Disco or lawn (草坪) games.

WHERE: New York City WHEN: June 3 to 5

#### Roskilde Festival

Created by two Danish college students, Roskilde Festival has developed from a hippie (嬉皮 ±) gathering ground to a mainstream music festival. The festival attracts followers from all over the world to watch their favourite artists perform in large tents.

WHERE: Roskilde, Denmark WHEN: June 25 to July 2

#### Montreux Jazz Festival

Set on Lake Geneva's beautiful shoreline, the Montreux Jazz Festival attracts a global audience. Founded in 1967 as a jazz-only festival, Montreux has since evolved into a two-week-long showcase that attracts more than 200, 000 music enthusiasts. Performances don't end on the shore; visitors can catch themed shows from boats and train cars.

WHERE: Montreux, Switzerland WHEN: July 1 to 16

#### Rock al Parque

Rock al Parque is proud of an attendance of 88,600

visitors a day. Most music festivals require tickets, but the participation in the three-day festival is free of charge. Festival-goers line up to watch performances from some of Latin America's most popular artists, but the festival also offers performances from international bands.

WHERE: Bogotá, Colombia WHEN: July 2 to 4

- 1. What can you do while visiting the Governors Ball Music Festival?
  - A. Feed yourself.
  - B. Tour a famous park.
  - C. Enjoy Latin America music.
  - D. Watch outdoor performances.

A 细节理解题。根据 The Governors Ball Music Festival 中的 "Visitors can watch shows from rock, electronic, and performers, all while tasting food from popular New York City restaurants."可知,在 The Governors Ball Music Festival,你可以吃东西。故选 A。

- 2. What is the advantage of Rock al Parque?
  - A. It lasts the longest.
  - B. It is free to watch.
  - C. It is held in large tents.
  - D. It offers games for visitors.
  - B 细节理解题。根据 Rock al Parque 中的"Most music festivals require tickets, but participation in the three-day festival is free of charge."可知, Rock al Parque 的优势是免费。故 选 B。
- 3. Which of the following can you enjoy on the water?
  - A. Roskilde Festival.
  - B. Rock al Parque.
  - C. Montreux Jazz Festival.
  - D. The Governors Ball Music Festival.
  - C 细节理解题。根据 Montreux Jazz Festival 中的 "Performances don't end on the shore; visitors can catch themed shows from boats and train cars."可 知,在 Montreux Jazz Festival,游客可以从水上观 看演出。故选 C。

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Master the language points of the text.
- 2. Understand the true meaning and spirit of festivals.
- 3. Distinguish facts from opinions in the text.
- 4. Clarify the structure of the text, and understand the content of the text.

## ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- If you make an effort to do something, you try very hard to do it.

  努力
- 2. With the world becoming a **global** village, I find it necessary to have a good command of English.

#### 全球的

- 3. She's Italian by birth but is now an Australian citizen. 公民
- **4.** The concert will be broadcast to a worldwide television **audience** estimated at one billion. 观众
- A phenomenon is something that is observed to happen or exist.

  现象
- 6. Videos about the three years' life, which witnessed (见证) the whole **process** of our growth, were played at the graduation ceremony. 过程,进程
- 7. He has returned to China after studying **overseas** for ten years. 在海外,在外国

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
	edit v. 编校;编辑;剪辑, 剪接
editor n. (报纸、杂志的)主编,编辑	edition n. 版 本; 版 次; (报纸、杂志等的)版;(电 视或广播节目、系列节目的)一集,一辑
admit v. (不情愿地) 承认	admission n. 承认;入场 费;允许进入;录用
<u>loss</u> n. 失去,丧失	lose v. 丧失
	lost adj. 丢失的,迷路的

续表

	• • •
教材词汇	拓展词汇
exist v. 存在,实际上 有	existence n. 存在
nationality n. 国籍;民 族	nation n. 国家
	national adj. 全国的
retired adj. 退休的	retire v. 退休;退役
	retirement n. 退休
	interaction n. 互动
interact v. 互动	interactive adj. 互动的, 相互影响的,交互式的
joy n. 欢欣,愉快,喜悦	joyful $adj$ . 高兴的,快乐的;令人愉快的

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. be keen on 喜爱;热衷于 ······
- 2. in one's opinion 在某人看来
- 3. have... to do with 与……有……关系
- 4. feel like 感觉像;想要
- 5. clean up 彻底打扫,清理
- 6. interact with 与……互动;交流

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

2. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作真正的主语 For me, it just won't feel like Spring Festival having the dinner out.

出去吃饭让我觉得不像是在过春节。

our whole family gathered together.

3. 句型公式:not only... but (also)... It was not only for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, but for the opportunity to have 不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食, 而且全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

4. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语 I would run around the house, listening to the adults chatting about their year. 我会在家里跑来跑去, 听大人们闲聊他们这一年

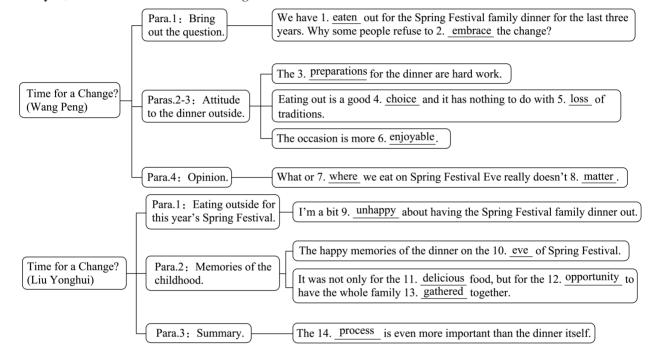
## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

(的情况)。

#### Part 1 课文理解

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What is the main idea of the first letter?
  - A. Eating at home is really tiring.
  - B. It is important to choose a good place to eat.
  - C. Eating out is the best way to have the Spring Festival dinner.
  - D. Eating out doesn't change the love between family members.
- 2. What does the writer mean by saying "we have enjoyed it no less than eating at home" in Paragraph 1 of the first letter?
  - A. The writer doesn't like eating out.
  - B. The writer doesn't like eating at home.

- C. Both eating at home and eating out are enjovable.
- D. Eating at home is more enjoyable than eating
- 3. Why does eating out have nothing to do with loss of traditions in the first letter?
  - A. Because the dishes taste better.
  - B. Because we eat in a different place.
  - C. Because we can avoid the tiring cooking.
  - D. Because we still celebrate it with our family.
- 4. Why is the writer unhappy about eating the Spring Festival family dinner out in the second letter?
  - A. Because he thinks it lacks the feeling of Spring Festival.

- B. Because his son booked a table without his permission.
- C. Because he can cook delicious food himself.
- D. Because it is too expensive.

#### 答案:1~4 DCDA

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

 When I was a little boy, the dinner on the eve of Spring Festival was what I looked forward to most.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。When 引导时间状语从句,在主句中 what 引导表语从句, on the eve of Spring Festival 是介词短语作定语修饰 the dinner。

[尝试翻译]小时候,除夕的年夜饭是我最盼望的。

## Part 2 语言梳理

admission (admit).

作宾语补足语。

○思维品质培养

他们这一年(的情况)。

family and relaxing.

Spring Festival family dinner?

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情景描写)意识到我确实冤枉了他, 我真诚地向他道歉并**承认了我的错误**。

2. I would run around the house, listening to the

「句子分析 Tlistening to... 在本句中为现在分词短

语作伴随状语,表示与谓语动词 run around 的动

作同时发生,而 chatting about... 是现在分词短语

[尝试翻译]我会在家里跑来跑去,听大人们闲聊

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. Why does Wang Peng choose to eat out for the

2. Can you think of any other Chinese festival

traditions? Share them with the class.

Because he wants to spend more time with his

adults chatting about their year.

Realising I really did wrong to him, I sincerely apologised to him and admitted my mistake.

②(应用文写作之邀请信)我们学校的乒乓球队现在正招收新队员,我想邀请你加人。

The table tennis team of our school is admitting new members right now so I would like to invite you to join.

③(应用文写作之推荐信)即将到来的汉语演讲比赛被认为是外国人提高汉语口语的好机会。

The upcoming Chinese speech contest <u>is admitted</u> to be a good chance for foreigners to improve their oral Chinese.

#### 2. effort n. 力气,精力

[教材原文] I really don't think it's worth the **effort** of spending so much time preparing for a single meal, and then another hour cleaning up the mess after it's over. 我真的认为花这么多时间准备一顿饭,然后在餐后再花一个小时清理这堆烂摊子是不值得的。

#### [归纳拓展]

make efforts to do sth. 努力做某事 spare no effort to do sth. 不遗余力地做某事 in an effort to do sth. 为了做某事/试图要做某事 with effort 努力地,艰难地

without effort 容易地,不费力地

## \_\_\_\_\_

1. admit v. (不情愿地)承认;准许·····加入,招收;准 许·····进入

[教材原文]Can't they **admit** that the preparations for the dinner are hard work?

难道他们不觉得准备年夜饭很辛苦吗?

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1) admit doing/having done sth. 承认做了某事 admit sb./sth. to be... 承认某人/某事是…… admit to sb. that... 向某人承认……

be admitted to/into... 被······接收(入学、入院等); 被准许进入······

(2) admission n. 承认;入场费;允许进入;录用

#### 【语境助记】

Finally, the boy who had **been admitted to/into** a key university **admitted that** the doorman **admitted him into** the cinema which can **admit** 800 people. 最终,这位已经被一所重点大学录取的男生承认看门人准许他进入了这个能容纳 800 人的电影院。

## [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Her father admitted <u>forgetting/having</u> <u>forgotten</u> (forget) her birthday because of busy work and apologised to her.
- ②Finally, I had to admit my friend's plan to be (be) better than mine.
- $\cent{3}$  He admitted  $\cup{to}$  his boss that he had made a mistake.
- 4 No one can go into the room without my

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1) The strong young man removed the rock without effort.
- 2 We'll spare no effort to help (help) you, but you must get prepared to meet all kinds of difficulties.
- 3 I am sure that with great effort, you will enjoy a colourful and fruitful life here.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)当面对这些问题时,我们 应该尽一切努力改善现状。

When facing these problems, we should make every effort to improve the present situation.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)让我们共同努力,创造一 个绿色和谐的环境。

Let's make joint efforts to create a green and harmonious environment.

#### 3. exist v. 存在,实际上有

[教材原文] A fact is something that exists or has happened, for example, an object, event or experience.

事实是存在或已经发生的事情,例如物品、事件或 经历。

#### 「归纳拓展〕

- (1) exist in 存在于 ······ (相当于 lie in)
- exist on 依靠······生存,依靠······生活(相当于 live on)
- (2) existence n. 存在
- come into existence 开始存在;产生;成立
- (3) existing adj. 现存的,现行的

#### 

exist 是不及物动词,不用于被动语态,通常不用 于进行时。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①It was impossible for them to exist on such a low income (收入).
- ②Happiness does not exist in wealth.
- 3 The Book of Songs, also known as Shijing, is the oldest existing (exist) collection of Chinese poetry.
- (4) As is known to all, matter exists (exist) in three states: solid, liquid and gas.
- 5 Scientists have many theories about how the universe first came into existence.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之通知)在我们学校,自行车停车位 是一个长久以来存在的问题。

The parking place for bikes was an existing problem for a long time in our school.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)只有学会与大自然和谐 共处,我们才不会成为野生生物和地球的威胁。

Only when we learn to exist in harmony with nature can we stop being a threat to wildlife and to our planet.

#### 4. not only... but (also)...

「教材原文 Tt was not only for the delicious food that we seldom got to eat, but for the opportunity to have our whole family gathered together.

不仅是因为我们可以吃到平时难以吃到的美食,而且 全家人也能因此有机会团聚在一起。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1) not only... but (also)... 表示"不但……而 且……",用于连接平行结构:名词、代词、动词(短 语)、非谓语动词、介词短语、句子等。
- (2)not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列主语时, 谓语动词与 but (also)后的主语在人称和数上保持
- (3) not only... but (also)... 连接两个并列分句,且 not only 位于句首时, not only 后的分句需部分倒 装,but(also)后的分句不用倒装。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Not only you but also he is (be) going to attend the meeting tomorrow.
- 2 Not only did the exchange student programme broaden my view, but it also strengthened my confidence.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之推荐信)毫无疑问,体育活动不仅 能丰富我们的学校生活,而且能使我们更强壮。

There's no doubt that the sport events can not only enrich our school life, but also make us stronger.

②(应用文写作之通知)在参观这次展览时,我们不 仅能欣赏民间艺术作品,而且还会对中国传统文化 有更好的了解。

While visiting this exhibition, not only will we enjoy the folk artworks but also we will have a better understanding of traditional Chinese culture.(倒装句)

## 多义词汇 专练 🖯

Only on special occasions would they take it out and let us hold it in our hands. A

A. n. 场合 B. n. 理由 C. n. 时机

## Unit 2 课后素养评价(八)

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### Ⅰ. 单词拼写

- 1. Does life exist (存在) on other planets?
- 2. The Chinese nation consists of fifty-six <u>nationalities</u> (民族), each having their own characteristics.
- 3. Losses and deaths caused by earthquakes can be reduced with humans' effort(s) (努力).
- 4. The cartoon shows a common <u>phenomenon</u> (现象) that children are the focus of families, shouldering the hope of their parents.
- 5. As well as winning the recognition from the <u>audience</u> (观众) at home, the movie *Ne Zha* has attracted many foreigners' attention.
- 6. What the government is carrying out is an important project, which will benefit the <u>citizens</u> (公民) in many aspects.

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- He was fired by the company because of the huge loss/losses (lose) caused by the mistakes he had made.
- 2. The <u>retired</u> (retire) man enjoys painting and planting some flowers in his daily life.
- **3.** He is unwilling to admit <u>cheating</u> (cheat) in the exam to his classmates.
- **4.** Although this idea is very good, not everyone is keen on it.
- 5. To most of us, happiness has nothing to do (do) with money, but is connected with the attitude to life.
- **6.** My minimum expectation is no less than 4, 000 yuan because my college degree deserves that amount.

#### Ⅲ. 短语填空

what's more; rather than; have nothing to do with; be keen on; interact with; look forward to

- 1. We are <u>looking forward to</u> a cleaner and better environment by changing our lifestyle.
- **2.** Most of the scientists do the job out of their passion for science rather than money.

- 3. Most people spend much more time interacting with digital media than they did ten years ago.
- **4.** What one does in his free time may have nothing to do with his job.
- 5. Given that you <u>are keen on</u> the traditional Chinese festival, the Dragon Boat Festival, I am writing to introduce it to you.
- I'm good at operating computers, and <u>what's</u> more, I have plenty of experience.

#### Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. The present problem is what we can do to help him out of trouble.

目前的问题是我们能做些什么来帮助他摆脱困难。

2. My computer doesn't work and <u>I</u> will have it repaired this afternoon.

我的电脑坏了,今天下午我要请人修理它。

3. This is because reading classics can <u>not only</u> improve our learning level but also enrich our daily lives.

这是因为读经典作品不仅能提高我们的学习水平 而且能丰富我们的日常生活。

4. Not all people are willing to do such work/All people are not willing to do such work, for it is quite hard for some of them.

并不是所有人都愿意做这样的工作,因为它对于 有些人来说太难了。

#### Ⅴ. 语法填空

The Great Wall of China 1. was listed (list) in the World Cultural Heritage (世界文化遗产) by UNESCO in 1987. Just 2. like a huge dragon, it winds up and down across deserts, grasslands and mountains, covering 3. approximately (approximate) 6,700 kilometres from the east to the west of China.

In ancient China, many people built walls around their states to protect their land. It was Emperor Qinshihuang who had the walls 4. joined (join) up. The project cost much money and

hundreds of thousands of people worked on 5. the wall. On top of it, it is wide enough for five horses or ten men 6. to walk (walk) side by side. Along the wall are watchtowers, 7. where soldiers used to keep watch. With a history of more than 2,000 years, some of the sections of the Great Wall are now in ruins or even disappeared. However, it is still one of the most 8. attractive (attract) spots around the world because of its wonderful buildings and historical 9. importance (important). Many of the tourists have come to know the famous Chinese saving—"He who does not reach the Great Wall 10. is (be) not a true man."

#### Ⅵ. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国笔友 Mike 对中国的重 阳节很感兴趣,想要了解一些相关内容。请你给 Mike 写一封信, 简要介绍重阳节并邀请他来中国亲 自感受节日氛围。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

- 2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
- 3. 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。

参考词汇: 重阳节 Double Ninth Day; 菊花 chrysanthemum

Dear Mike,

How is everything going?

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours, Li Hua

#### 【参考范文】

#### Dear Mike,

How is everything going? So delighted to learn from your last letter that you are interested in the Double Ninth Day. Now I'd like to tell you some details about this festival.

Just as the name indicates, this festival comes on the ninth day of the ninth month of the Chinese lunar calendar. It can date back to the Spring and Autumn Period. On that day, family members always climb the mountains together, enjoying colourful chrysanthemums, tasting delicious desserts and respecting the old in their families.

If possible, why not come to China and enjoy the approaching Double Ninth Day with me? I am sure you will have a good time here.

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

#### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写 两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It seems that friendship can also exist between dogs and horses. I've witnessed one inspiring case.

One morning, I went outside to feed our horse Bullet. Usually, Bullet waits eagerly at the fence for his breakfast. But this morning he stayed near a tree in the pasture's centre. As he began joyfully walking towards me, I noticed a dog lying in the tall grass beneath the tree. So this was what held Bullet's attention this morning: a homeless dog. Most of the homeless dogs shied away from our large Bullet, but this one seemed to feel safe in the shelter of the tall grass regardless of Bullet. I placed alfalfa (苜蓿) cubes inside the fence. After Bullet ate them, I'd give him some cookies he loved most.

I walked back to my porch and sat down. As Bullet ate alfalfa, the dog stood up cautiously, stared at Bullet for long and then slowly walked towards Bullet. The dog often paused and looked at me to ensure I wasn't a threat. As the dog drew closer to Bullet, I held my breath. I didn't know how Bullet would react to an animal that approached while he was eating. Knowing a horse's kick can kill a dog, I decided to scare the dog away. Just then Bullet swung his head and looked at the dog. Not minding it, he ate his food again.

The dog drew close enough to take an alfalfa cube. My heart broke as I watched the dog—a female—chewing on the alfalfa. She had to be extremely hungry to attempt to eat horse feed. I went inside the house, carried some meat and walked towards the fence. The dog soon ran to the safety of the tall grass near the tree. I put the meat down outside the fence and went back inside the house. She'd probably come for the meat when I was out of sight.

Minutes later, I realised I hadn't yet given Bullet his cookies. I took some and went back outside. Amazingly, Bullet was lying down in the grass beneath the tree with the dog next to him. I smiled at the warm scene they created.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

F	Know	ing	I	carri	ed	his	treat,	Bullet	got	up
quickly	y and	ran	to	me.						

But Bullet didn't care as the dog jumped

### 【参考范文】

Knowing I carried his treat, Bullet got up quickly and ran to me. The dog watched as I threw cookies over the fence. I noticed she hadn't got the courage to venture outside the fence to get the meat. I went back to the porch, trying to think of a way to make the dog overcome her fear and come for the meat. Noticing Bullet was eating, the dog began to move forward slowly, watching me all the while. "He might share his alfalfa with you, but he'll never let you eat his favourite cookies!" I said to myself.

But Bullet didn't care as the dog jumped forward and took a cookie. The dog soon swallowed the cookie, and then took more. When Bullet walked back towards the tree's shade, the dog walked along. All day long, they stayed together. The next day, Bullet still shared his food with the dog. And I managed to make the dog get out of the pasture and adopted her. Although she eventually warmed to me, she always loved Bullet's company most. They'd run joyfully together and rested together. And often Bullet touched the dog with his nose and she licked his face. I knew they had become close friends.

## · 移 · 应 · 用

#### 窗Part 1 应用文写作

## - 一封表达看法的书信

#### ○写作指导

本单元的写作目标是写一封信,就一种社会问题 (现象)发表自己的观点。在写作时应注意以下三个 方面:

- 1. 文体:应用文——表达个人看法;
- 2. 目的:针对某种社会现象或某一事件进行分析,表 明自己的看法、态度并说明理由;
- 3. 内容:陈述自己的观点及理由,理由要充分合理,有 说服力。

#### ○典题示例

假如你是李华,如今世界各地掀起了学汉语热 潮。请你用英语给报社的编辑写一封信来分析产生 这种现象的原因,并就这种现象可能带来的影响简要 阐述自己的看法,表达自己的观点。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

- 2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
- 3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

#### Dear Editor,

In recent years, learning Chinese has become popular among people around the world, with the rapid development of economy in China.

> Yours, Li Hua

#### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 开门见山,引入这种社会现象 2. 阐述理由,分析这种现象产生的原因 及其影响 3. 总结全文,陈述自己的看法

#### Step 2:要点补全

- ①There are many reasons (很多原因).
- 2 More and more people are crazy about learning Chinese (热衷于学习汉语).
- ③ Many experts focus on (关注) ancient Chinese literature.
- 4 Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world (世界上最古老的文明之 **一**).
- 5 Due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China (来中国旅游).
- ⑥They show great interest in learning Chinese (学 习汉语).

#### Step 3: 句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的①②句

There are many reasons why more and more people are crazy about learning Chinese.

②用 for 引导的并列句合并 Step 2 中的③④句

Many experts focus on ancient Chinese literature, for Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world.

③用非谓语动词合并 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句

Due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China, showing great interest in learning Chinese.

#### Step 4:连句成篇

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Editor,

In recent years, learning Chinese has become popular among people around the world, with the rapid development of economy in China.

There are many reasons why more and more

people are crazy about learning Chinese. Firstly, learning Chinese will facilitate the economic trade contacts and enhance the communication with other countries. Secondly, many experts focus on ancient Chinese literature, for Chinese civilisation is one of the oldest civilisations in the world. Learning Chinese has become a necessary tool for them. Thirdly, due to plenty of natural landscapes and scenery of humanities in China, a lot of foreign tourists start to travel in China, showing great interest in learning Chinese.

In my opinion, the popularity of Chinese learning shows that our country has become stronger. We should be proud of that.

> Yours, Li Hua

#### ○学以致用

现在,世界上有越来越多的人庆祝春节,有的国家甚至将春节定为法定假日。假设你是李华,请你针对这种现象给报社编辑写一封信来表达你的看法。 注意:1. 词数 80 左右:

- 2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
- 3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Editor,

Yours, Li Hua

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Editor,

It seems that more and more countries around the world are holding celebrations of Chinese Spring Festival. I think the reasons are as follows.

First, millions of Chinese spend their holiday overseas during Spring Festival, bringing huge tourism benefits to their popular destinations. This greatly contributes to the spread of Chinese Spring Festival. Second, with Chinese economy developing rapidly, more and more people realise they must learn more about Chinese culture if they want to cooperate with their Chinese partners.

All in all, I think this phenomenon is a reflection of China's economic boom and I believe more Chinese culture will be accepted by the world.

Yours, Li Hua

## 窗Part 2 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Grandma got Grandpa out of bed and helped him to the kitchen for breakfast. After his meal, she led him to his armchair in the living room where he would rest while she cleaned the dishes. Every so often, she would check to see if he needed anything.

This was their daily routine after Grandpa's latest stroke (中风). Although Grandpa was once a very active, strong and healthy man, his badly damaged left arm, difficulty walking and slurred (含混不清) speech now kept him housebound. For nearly a year, he hadn't even been to church or visited family. Grandpa filled his hours with television. He watched the news and game shows while Grandma went about her day. They made an agreement—he was not to leave his chair or his bed without her assistance.

Grandma was friendly, outgoing and unselfish. Grandpa was reserved and devoted to his family. But he didn't like giving gifts. He held the belief that if you treated your wife well throughout the year, presents weren't necessary, so he rarely bought gifts for her.

It was a typical cold winter morning in New York. As always, Grandma walked Grandpa to his chair. "I'm going to take a shower now," she said, handing him the television remote. "If you need anything, I'll be back in a little while."

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about the daily routine and unspoken bond between Grandma and Grandpa after Grandpa's stroke.

#### 任务二:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。

## 4. A typical cold winter morning, before Grandma took a shower, she told Grandpa to watch TV and wait for her back. Build-up: Grandma took care of Grandpa and they made Falling action: ? an agreement that Grandpa would not leave his chair or bed without her 3. assistance. Beginning: Background: **Ending:** ? Due to the stroke, Grandpa now suffered Prior to the 1. stroke, Grandpa was an from a badly damaged left arm, difficulty 2. walking, and slurred speech. active, strong, and healthy individual.

任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1:  After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was not in its usual place.	<ol> <li>Finding that Grandpa was gone, how did Grandma feel?         She thought Grandpa had gone outside and felt very worried about his safety.     </li> <li>What might happen to Grandpa in Grandma's mind?         Grandpa might fall to the ground and get injured or lost in the street.     </li> <li>What might Grandma do next?         Grandma might keep looking for Grandpa wherever she thought possible.     </li> </ol>
Paragraph 2:  As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner.	<ol> <li>How would Grandma react as soon as she saw Grandpa?         She scolded Grandpa for going out alone.     </li> <li>Why did Grandpa leave home alone?         Grandpa bought a present for Grandma.     </li> <li>Knowing the reason, how did Grandma feel?         Grandma was very surprised and moved.     </li> </ol>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。
注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。
After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was
not in its usual place.
As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner.

#### 【参考范文】

▶点金训练 英语 必修 第二册(配外研版)教师用书

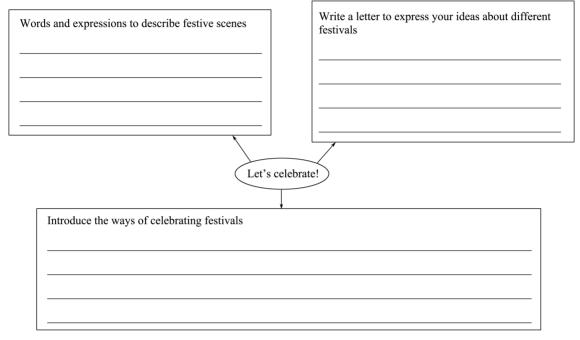
After her shower, she glanced towards the back of Grandpa's chair but noticed that his walking stick was not in its usual place. She had a horrible feeling that Grandpa was gone. So fearful was Grandma that she grabbed her coat and rushed outside. What if he fell down? What if he was hit by a car? Grandma couldn't help having these thoughts. Regardless of the freezing cold air, Grandma kept looking for Grandpa wherever she thought possible, but without success.

As she stood alone on the street desperately, Grandpa walked around the corner. Every small step was difficult for him. Quickly Grandma walked up to him and began to scold him, "What's so urgent that you couldn't wait? Do you know how worried I was?" After saying these, her eyes were moist. Grandpa just smiled and passed her a delicate box, "Now I can't treat you well throughout the year and the only thing I can do for you is to buy you a gift. Open the box to see if you like it." His slurred words warmed the cold winter morning. Tears flooded Grandma's eyes as she took Grandpa's arm and led him back home.



#### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



#### 答案: 略

#### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### WHY DO WE CELEBRATE FESTIVALS?

Festivals are celebrated all around the world. They have a wide range of origins, such as the seasons of the year, religions, famous figures, and important events. Every festival has its different customs and unique charms. However, no matter how different they may seem, all over the world, the spirit of sharing joy, gratitude, love, or peace is common in all festivals.

Of all the traditional festivals, the harvest festival can be found in almost every culture. This important agricultural festival takes place after all the crops have been gathered in. People celebrate to show that they are grateful for the year's supply of food. In ancient Egypt, the harvest festival was celebrated during the springtime—the Egyptian harvest season. It featured a parade and a great feast with music, dancing, and sports. Today, in some European countries, people decorate churches and town halls with flowers and fruit, and get together to celebrate over a meal. During the Mid-Autumn Festival in China, families gather to admire the shining moon and enjoy delicious mooncakes.

Customs play a significant role in festivals, but sometimes they can change over time. With the development of modern society and the spread of new ideas, some traditions may fade away and others may be established. One example is the typical Chinese Spring Festival custom of lighting firecrackers to drive away the evil spirits and celebrate the new year. Nowadays, many big cities have given up this custom in order to avoid air pollution. Another example is Halloween, which slowly became an exciting festival for children, in spite of its religious origins.

Festivals are becoming more and more commercial, with businesses taking advantage of the celebrations. Online shopping websites and social media apps have made it much easier for the public to spend more on gifts for their loved ones. Although some believe festivals should not be commercialised, others believe the increase in spending is good for the economy and public happiness.

Festivals are an important part of society. They reflect people's wishes, beliefs, faiths, and attitudes towards life. They are occasions that allow us to relax and enjoy life, and forget about our work for a little while. They help us understand where we came from, who we are, and what to appreciate. And if you study festivals carefully, you may be surprised to find that different cultures actually have a lot in common after all.

- 1. Why do people celebrate the harvest festival?
  - A. To be different.

- B. To show gratitude.
- C. To enjoy more food.
- D. To have a better harvest of food.
- 2. What kind of change has taken place in celebrating the Spring Festival?
  - A. More people stop lighting firecrackers.
  - B. Many Chinese have given up their traditions.
  - C. Many young people are fond of games online.
  - D. More people start to have their dinners in the restaurant.
- 3. Which might specially be an exciting festival for kids according to the text?
  - A. The Spring Festival.
- B. Christmas.

C. Halloween.

- D. The Mid-Autumn Festival.
- 4. Why do people celebrate festivals according to the text?
  - A. Because festivals let us relax and enjoy life.
  - B. Because festivals let us express wishes towards life.
  - C. Because festivals let us have a better understanding of ourselves.
  - D. All of the above.

#### 答案:1~4 BACD

## 单元测试卷(二)

(考香范围: Unit 2 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

Getty is a leading global arts organisation focused on exhibiting and understanding the world's artistic and cultural heritage. Here are some of the exhibitions that will be held.

#### Paper and Light

Artists have explored the interaction (相互作 用) of paper and light for centuries. This exhibition of drawings charts some of the creative ways in which the two media were creatively used together. Drawings by more modern artists will show the representation of light.

#### Nineteenth-Century Photography Now

The small, sepia-toned (棕褐色调的) images made in the 19th century may appear remote and unconnected to the present. However, many of the traditions established during the early rise of photographic technology are still in use today. This exhibition provides fresh views on Getty's collection of 19th-century photography through the works of contemporary artists who respond directly to its historical themes.

#### **Dutch Depictions of Extreme Weather**

Featuring drawings and paintings by Hendrick Avercamp and other Dutch artists of the early 1600s, this exhibition focuses on landscapes that highlight extremely cold winters and unusually cool summers. It tells a story of global cooling in the 17th century and shows how artists stressed the uncertainty of life and the necessity for adaptation through their descriptions of ice skating and fishing.

#### Experiments in Art and Technology (E.A.T.)

This exhibition tells the story of a mid-20th century cooperation between artists and engineers to form the group Experiments in Art and Technology (E.A.T.). The group's pioneering efforts to improve communication and cooperation pushed programmes beyond the art world.

- 1. What is the feature of the Dutch Depictions of Extreme Weather?
  - A. Interaction of paper and light.
  - B. Small and sepia-toned images.
  - C. Landscapes of cold winters and cool summers.
  - D. Exploration of photographic technology.
  - 细节理解题。根据 Dutch Depictions of Extreme Weather 部分中的"this exhibition focuses on landscapes that highlight extremely cold winters and unusually cool summers"可知, 其主要特征是展示了极端寒冷的冬季和凉爽夏季 的风景。故选C。
- 2. Which exhibition tells the story of a cooperation between artists and engineers?
  - A. Paper and Light.
  - B. Dutch Depictions of Extreme Weather.
  - C. Experiments in Art and Technology (E.A.T.).
  - D. Nineteenth-Century Photography Now.
  - C 细节理解题。根据 Experiments in Art and Technology (E. A. T.) 部分中的"This exhibition tells the story of a mid-20th century cooperation between artists and engineers to form the group Experiments in Art and Technology (E.A.T.)." 可知, Experiments in Art and Technology (E.A. T.)展示了艺术家和工程师之间的合作。故选 C。
- **3.** What is the purpose of the text?
  - A. To comment on Getty.
  - B. To discuss photography.
  - C. To stress artistic cooperation.
  - D. To introduce some exhibitions.
  - D 写作意图题。根据第一段中的"Here are some of the exhibitions that will be held."可知,本文的 目的是介绍即将举行的一些展览。故选D。

When my daughter was diagnosed with a rare disease in 2015, I lost myself in the endless pursuit to save her. I began to dive into different communities to find anything and everything I could to help her. I spent most of my time researching and making phone calls. We would end up travelling to

Philly every year, sometimes many times a year.

We were not prepared for everything that was to come in the following years. At 2 years old, Jordyn took her first step. She had her first disease attack, but it didn't seem to affect her development. But in the summer of 2018, Jordyn had a horrible attack. She hasn't been the same since. She gradually lost her ability to crawl, walk and even sit up on her own. She now struggles to hold her head up and her energy level has dropped too low.

I've gotten really good at dealing with my emotion. Looking back, I guess I've always been that way. It takes a lot of energy for a mother to know that only a miracle will keep her daughter. The truth is, though, sometimes I just want to scream. It's the lie I tell myself that I can keep moving forward.

Hug your babies tight and appreciate them for every little thing they can do. Be in the moment and try to give them space when they make a mistake. It's not a sign of weakness, but rather, a sign of bravery.

- 4. Why would the author go to Philly?
  - A. To get a new job.
  - B. To find ways to cure her daughter.
  - C. To visit different communities.
  - D. To do research on the rare disease.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的"When my daughter was diagnosed with a rare disease in 2015, I lost myself in the endless pursuit to save her."和"We would end up travelling to Philly every year, sometimes many times a year."可知,作者去费城是为了寻找治愈女儿疾病的方法。故选B。
- **5.** What can be inferred from the second paragraph?
  - A. Jordyn loved to hold her head up.
  - B. Jordyn learned to walk at an early age.
  - C. Jordyn got into a worse situation.
  - D. Jordyn was born with a rare disease.
  - C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"But in the summer of 2018, Jordyn had a horrible attack. She hasn't been the same since. She gradually lost her ability to crawl, walk and even sit up on her own. She now struggles to hold her head up and her energy level has dropped too low."可知, Jordyn 陷入了更糟糕的境地。故选 C。

- **6.** How does the author keep on moving?
  - A. By making phone calls.
  - B. By lying to herself.
  - C. By controlling her emotion.
  - D. By looking back on memories.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"It's the lie I tell myself that I can keep moving forward."可知,作者靠欺骗自己继续前进。故选 B。
- 7. What is the author's suggestion?
  - A. Giving love to children.
  - B. Giving space to children.
  - C. Showing bravery to children.
  - D. Showing weakness to children.
  - B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"Be in the moment and try to give them space when they make a mistake."可知,作者建议给孩子足够的空间。故选B。

#### C

Trainers and parents saw children play sports at a young age and then saw them become professional. Many correlated the training with success. Competitive sports are good for young children because they teach children life skills, provide health benefits, and offer special opportunities.

To begin with, sports teach children life skills. A formal athlete stated, "I played soccer in high school and college and found team sports weren't just about winning, but also about developing a solid ethic (行为准则), and learning why that's important." In short, playing highly competitive sports teaches kids many life skills like teamwork. People will have to use teamwork for the rest of their life, and sports can help them improve that skill. Taking part in sports can help develop a positive attitude towards life, which will help in the long run.

Sports are also good for kids because they provide health benefits. It is healthier for a kid to play a sport competitively than to waste time playing video games all day. Furthermore, a research group of the University of California said, "96 percent of the participants (参与者) said they enjoy their sports. They're all loving life." That is to say, kids playing highly competitive sports tend to enjoy life instead of doing something else like watching TV.

On the other hand, some people might argue

that competitive sports are bad for young children because they are so time-consuming. However, the time spent is not "robbing" kids of their childhood, but offers unique opportunities. Athletes can get success to live their dream life by playing sports. Even though sports are time-consuming, they offer distinctive opportunities.

In conclusion, competitive sports are good for children because they can provide wholesome benefits, create new experiences, and build skills that will last a lifetime.

- 8. Why is the formal athlete mentioned in Paragraph
  - A. To show a reason.
  - B. To give an example.
  - C. To list a background.
  - D. To draw out a new point.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第二段第一句"To begin with, sports teach children life skills."可知,运动 能教会孩子生活技能。紧接着,文中提到"A formal athlete stated, 'I played soccer in high school and college and found team sports weren't just about winning, but also about developing a solid ethic (行为准则), and learning why that's important.'",此处引用职业运动员的话,是为了举 例说明运动是如何教会孩子生活技能的,所以这是 一个具体的例子。故选 B。
- **9.** What is most participants' attitude to sports?
  - B. Uncertain. A. Supportive.
  - C. Uncaring. D. Doubtful.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Furthermore, a research group of the University of California said, ... kids playing highly competitive sports tend to enjoy life instead of doing something else like watching TV."可知,大多数参与者对运动是 持支持态度的,他们喜欢运动并热爱生活。故选 A.
- 10. What does the underlined word "distinctive" in Paragraph 4 mean?
  - A. Common. B. Unreasonable.
  - D. Frequent. C. Unique.
  - C 词义猜测题。根据画线单词上文"However, the time spent is not 'robbing' kids of their childhood, but offers unique opportunities. Athletes can get success to live their dream life by playing sports. Even though sports are time-

consuming..."可知,虽然有人认为运动耗时,但文 中认为这并没有剥夺孩子的童年,反而提供了机 会。再结合"unique opportunities"可知,此处想 表达的是运动提供了"独特"的机会。因此, "distinctive"在此处的意思和"独特的"相近。故 选 C。

- 11. What does the text mainly talk about?
  - A. The ways to play sports.
  - B. The reasons for playing sports.
  - C. The problems of kids' playing sports.
  - D. The benefits of kids' playing sports.
  - D 主旨大意题。根据第一段第三句和最后一段 的内容以及全文内容可知,文章主要讨论的是孩 子做运动的好处。故选 D。

#### D

The world's elderly population is increasing fast. The number of older people—those who are 60 years of age or older—is expected to double by 2050 across the world. This comes with an increasing need for caregivers that are able to provide 24-hour care, not only at hospitals or nursing homes, but also at private homes.

Robotic assistants (助手) are expected to become increasingly popular and reach 450,000 by 2045 because the expected caregivers are not enough in the United States. "Unluckily, the hard outside structure of caregiving robots nowadays prevents them from communicating with humans safely and easily," said Ramses Martinez, a professor in the School of Industrial Engineering. "After all, would you leave the old people with health problems in the hands of a robot?"

However, recent progress in material science has made it possible to produce robots with the ability to reshape when touched. They are called soft robots. However, the design, production, and control of soft robots now stop this technology being put into use. Recently, Martinez and other Purdue University researchers have developed a new design method that can make the design and production of the soft robots easy by using a 3D printer.

The soft robots can move like humans. "They can complete some movements easily, such as holding things, spreading or drawing back arms and legs and kneeling down. This invention moves a big forward towards the development step

lightweight soft robots," Martinez said. The researchers are now looking for partners to test their technology and put it into practice.

- **12.** What will be the result of the increasing elderly population according to the text?
  - A. More nursing services will be needed.
  - B. More hospitals will be built in the future.
  - C. More people will choose to be nursed at home.
  - D. More nursing work will be carried out by robots.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,随着 老年人口的增加,对护理服务的需求也会增加。 故选 A。

- 13. What does Ramses Martinez mean in Paragraph 2?
  - A. People doubt the ability of robotic assistants.
  - B. More types of robotic assistants need to be developed.
  - C. The robotic assistants nowadays aren't perfect for nursing.
  - D. The robotic assistants can't understand the elderly correctly.
  - C 推理判断题。根据第二段第二句可知,目前 护理机器人的坚硬外部结构使它们无法安全、轻 松地与人类交流。这意味着如今的护理机器人并 不完美,故选 C。
- **14.** What makes the new type of robot be able to change shapes?
  - A. A special material.
  - B. The production method.
  - C. The 3D printing technology.
  - D. A newly developed design method.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第三段第一、二句可知,是一种特殊的材料使得新型机器人能够改变形状,故选 A。
- 15. Which is the best title for the text?
  - A. The Development of Robots Is Rapid
  - B. The 3D Printer Can Create Soft Robots
  - C. The Increasing Elderly Population Is a Problem
  - D. Robots Created with 3D Printers Will Nurse the Elderly
  - D 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容、第二段第一句和第三段最后一句可知,文章主要介绍了随着老年人口的增加,对护理的需求增加,而目前的护理机器人存在不足。但材料科学的进步使得可以用特殊材料生产出新型软机器人,且普渡大学

的研究人员开发了一种新的设计方法,利用 3D 打印机使软机器人的设计和生产变得容易,这种机器人有望用于护理老年人。所以 D 项"用 3D 打印机制造的机器人将护理老年人"最适合作为标题。故选 D。

# Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Volunteering is a great way to help your community. It is something that people should be doing more often, because it is a great way to help out those less fortunate. Another reason that you should volunteer is that it has a lot of health benefits, which people don't seem to really know about. 16.

## **Reduce Depression**

Volunteering is a great way to decrease depression, especially if you are someone who doesn't have a great support system at home.

<u>17</u>. When you are volunteering, you are around other people often talking and laughing, which helps reduce depression.

#### 18

A lot of volunteering involves packing boxes or moving things, and that is very good for your heart. You can actually walk the dogs and clean cages at a local animal shelter, which are all ways to stay active. If you are volunteering to do something you love, you may not even notice that it takes a great deal of physical energy, so it's much better than just working out because you enjoy it.

# Make You Feel Satisfied

When you do voluntary work, you feel this satisfaction out of what you are doing, because you know you are helping other people. When you feel this satisfaction, your mental and physical health improves, and you just feel better overall (全面的).

<u>19</u>. And this is something that volunteering provides.

## **Reduce Anxiety**

<u>20</u>. When you start volunteering, you find new ways to communicate with other people. It helps reduce your anxiety levels. It can help you find ways to interact with others and can help you build confidence around others.

- A. Help You Stay Active
- B. The results are as follows
- C. Build up Your Mental Strength
- D. Here are four health benefits you can get through volunteering
- E. If you always feel embarrassed at new social occasions, then volunteer
- F. A lot of people become depressed because they don't have friends or families
- G. In order to stay healthy, you have to keep a balance between your mind and body

## 答案:16~20 DFAGE

## Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分15 分)

I was walking home from school one day and it happened to be a particularly cold and windy day. It was 21 and I was crazy enough to forget my hat and scarf. You can imagine my cheeks were rosy 22 and my hands were as numb(麻木的)as they could be.

All of a sudden, an old lady 23 up beside me and asked if I would like a ride 24 . At first, I said it was OK and her 25 smile melted (融化) away the thought that I should never talk to 26 ! We had an amazing chat and she was just 27 a good woman. She told me her 28 and she dropped me off.

I didn't see her or talk to her for about a month and one night as I 29 her kind gesture, I decided to return the favour. So, I made a lot of 30 and walked down to her house with my friend. At first I was a bit 31 she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies but luckily, I was 32 wrong. She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me and seemed so 33 that someone would do something like that!

When I got home my mum told me that she 34 and told my mum on the phone that she 35 because she was so touched. She said she would never forget the kindness that was given to her!

- 21. A. blowing
- B. freezing
- C. flowing
- D. flying

B 根据上文的"a particularly cold and windy day"可知,天气非常寒冷(freezing)。故选 B。

- **22.** A. red
- B. pure
- C. white
- D. pale

A 根据上文的"forget my hat and scarf"可知, 在这么冷的天气里没有戴帽子和围巾,"我"的脸 被冻得通红(red)。故选 A。

- 23. A. picked
- B. turned
- C. drove
- D. took

C 根据下文的"asked if I would like a ride"可 知,一位老妇人开车(drove)到"我"身旁,问"我" 是否需要搭车。故选C。

- 24. A. hospital
- B. family
- C. school
- D. home

D 根据上文的"I was walking home from school..."可知,"我"是在放学回家(home)的路 上。故选 D。

- 25. A. warm
- B. easy
- C. simple
- D. strange

A 根据下文的"melted (融化) away the thought"可知,这位老妇人温暖的(warm)笑容打 消了"我"原有的想法。故选 A。

- **26.** A. women
- B. drivers
- C. strangers
- D. neighbours

C 根据上文内容可知,"我"与这位老妇人素不 相识,此处是说她温暖的笑容打消了"我"不应该 与陌生人(strangers)说话的想法。故选 C。

- **27**. A. so
- B. such
- C. that
- D. as

B 通过聊天"我"发现她是如此好的一个人。 "such+a(n)+形容词+单数名词"为固定结构, 表示"如此……的一个……"。故选 B。

- 28. A. numbers
- C. family
- D. address
- D 根据下文的"walked down to her house with mv friend"可知,这位老妇人告诉了"我"她的地 址(address)。故选 D。
- 29. A. remembered
- B. forgot
- C. repeated
- D. regretted

A 根据下文的"I decided to return the favour" 可知,一个月后的一个晚上,"我"想起了 (remembered)这位老妇人的善行,"我"决定为她 做一点事情。故选A。

- **30.** A. bread
- B. salad
- C. cookies
- D. sweets

C 根据下文的"think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies"可知,"我"为她做了很多饼干 (cookies)。故选 C。

31. A. nervous

B. disappointed

C. confused

D. worried

D 根据下文的"she wouldn't remember me or think that I was a bad man who poisoned cookies"可知,"我"担心(worried)她不记得"我"或把"我"当成坏人。故选 D。

**32.** A. generally

B. completely

C. hardly

D. usually

B 根据下文的"She was so happy, and she hugged me and kissed me..."可知,事实证明"我"的想法完全(completely)错误,她看到"我"很高兴并热情地拥抱、亲吻了"我"。故选 B。

33. A. puzzled

B. surprised

C. satisfied

D. fearful

B 根据下文的"that someone would do something like that"可知,"我"的做法让她感到很惊讶(surprised)。故选B。

34. A. visited

B. came

C. drove

D. called

D 根据下文的"told my mum on the phone"可知,这位老妇人打电话(called)给"我"妈妈。故选D。

**35.** A. cried

B. slept

C. left

D. laughed

A 根据下文的"because she was so touched"可知,她感动得哭了(cried)。故选 A。

# Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分15 分)

In China, the twelfth month of the lunar year is called "Layue", and the 36. eighth (eight) day of the twelfth lunar month is "Laba Festival", 37. which is a traditional Chinese holiday to worship the ancestors and deities and pray for harvest and good fortune. The most popular tradition on the festival is 38. making (make) and eating Laba porridge, which serves 39. as a symbol of good fortune, long life, and fruitful harvest.

The festival is also a day 40. when people put garlic in vinegar to pickle for more than 20 days before the Chinese New Year. The Laba garlic will 41. be eaten (eat) on Chinese New Year's Day as a

special festival dish. There are many other 42. <a href="mailto:custom">custom</a> on Laba Festival. For example, people in Yi County, East China's Anhui Province, eat Laba tofu on that day. In Xining City, Northwest China's Qinghai Province, locals eat wheat kernel rice 43. <a href="mailto:boiled">boiled</a> (boil) with beef and mutton. In northern Shaanxi Province, people 44. <a href="mailto:usually">usually</a> (usual) eat Laba noodle soup. In some areas, a custom of eating ice is preserved. Apart from preparing the dining table, families throughout the country undertake a thorough house clean on this day, 45. <a href="mailto:sweeping">sweeping</a> (sweep) out the old in preparation for the New Year.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

元宵节期间,你将带你的英国朋友 Tom 去街上看花灯,并向他介绍该节日的一些相关知识。请根据以下要点介绍元宵节:

元宵节是中国的传统节日,每年正月十五人们都要举办许多活动,比如吃汤圆、赏花灯、猜灯谜、踩高跷、舞狮等。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇: 猜灯谜 guess riddles; 踩高跷 walk on stilts;舞狮 do lion dancing

## 【参考范文】

The Lantern Festival is a traditional festival in China. It falls on the fifteenth day of the first month of the Chinese lunar calendar. As every Chinese person knows, families get together on the day of the festival and eat tangyuan. In the evening, people go out to view the bright and colourful lanterns, which is relaxing and pleasant. In some parts of China, people take part in activities, such as guessing riddles, walking on stilts and doing lion dancing.

On the whole, the Lantern Festival is an important festival in China, marking the end of the Spring Festival.

#### 第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两 段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, many years ago, I pulled a family out of a burning car somewhere in the middle of Wyoming. Last week I received a telephone call from a woman who could not stop crying as she told me that one of my stories had saved her son from negative thoughts. In the end she called me a hero.

That got me thinking about what a hero really is. Was I a hero because I pulled a family from a burning car? If so, how could I be a hero just because I wrote a story that saved someone's heart?

Today I decided to look up the word "hero" in the dictionary to see what it exactly meant. It read "a person who does something brave". As I read on, it also said "a person who is good and noble".

That statement impressed me more than the part about being brave.

It got me thinking about something very important. Say I was walking into the local supermarket and I happened to open, and hold the door for someone out of politeness. As they passed by me, I said, "How are you today?" Most of the time that would be no big deal, but this time let's say it was for someone who is deeply depressed and near the end of the rope. That may well be the only kindness or politeness shown to them in a very long time.

Having been near "the end of my rope", after my marriage of twenty years ended, I was in such a condition. I was within hours of trying to get up enough nerve to end the pain and misery. When I returned home, someone had sent me a card in the mail which told me how much they appreciated me as a friend. That wonderful card probably saved my life. That person, without even knowing it, saved a life and became a hero.

I went on to write many stories which last week saved the life of a teenage boy. In turn that makes the person who sent me the card a double hero.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

I st	appose that is v	why I figh	t so hard to l	nelp the
children	now living in	orphanage	es (孤儿院).	
We	ll, who would	have ever	thought that	anyone
could be	ecome a hero?			

# 【参考范文】

I suppose that is why I fight so hard to help the children now living in orphanages. As is known to us all, most teenage boys come out from there with a very hard and offensive attitude against the world. It is true love and kindness that they are lacking in. Luckily, the gifts we send them let them know that they have not been forgotten. They will change for the better seeing someone appreciate them in the world. Hopefully, most of them will never hurt anyone because of the kindness shown to them by those of us who care. Similarly, if it works, we will also become "heroes".

Well, who would have ever thought that anyone could become a hero? What exactly is a hero? Now we have made it clear that being a hero is no big deal. Anyone possibly saves a life, just by being kind and polite to others. If so, our politeness or kindness shown must be felt by people. All in all, what is the best of all is that opportunities to become a hero are accessible to whoever wishes to wear such an honour.

U	n	it	3

# On the move

┌ 单元概览	0-	l
--------	----	---

# ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is sports and a healthy lifestyle. This unit includes a variety of sports and changes that sports bring to people. The content of this unit can enrich your cognition of different sports, guide you to pay attention to modern and traditional sports, think about the impact of sports on the body and mind, and learn how to tell your own stories about sports. You can look into different types of sports and choose one to make preparations for team sport events. Make a recommendation by listing its rules, reasons and plan a team sport event. Also, you need to reconstruct the mind map of sports and fitness, and broaden your horizons by reading the provided extensive reading materials.

# ◇ 学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
		词汇	了解词汇的词根、词缀,学习词性变化的规律,并用于理解和表达有关"体育运动"主题的信息和观点。
	语言知识	语法	能了解动词不定式作定语和结果状语的用法,并在真实情景中加以运用。
	70 01	海流 语篇	初步了解柱状图的特点和功能,学习利用图表收集和整合信息。
语言能力		语用	能根据具体交际情境,正确理解他人的态度、情感和观点。
		听	听有关太极拳的对话,了解太极拳的相关知识。
后古肥力	能刀 语言 技能	说	能借助教材中提供的话题情景和实用表达,组织一段新的对话,对话内容为采访一位龙舟队的成员。
		读	<ol> <li>1. 找出并理解足球这项运动风靡世界的三个原因,并基于课文内容,思考哪些运动与足球一样在中国盛行,并分析其原因;</li> <li>2. 关注每个跑步者的故事背后所传达的价值观。</li> </ol>
		写	能写一篇关于自己的体育运动的故事。

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	<ol> <li>能通过了解不同的关于体育运动的词汇及句型,描述自己喜欢的体育运动;</li> <li>能多渠道获取英语学习资源;</li> <li>能选择恰当的策略与方法,监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。</li> </ol>
文化意识	1. 能通过了解其他国家流行的体育运动,加深对不同文化的认识与理解; 2. 能通过了解不同的体育运动,并将它们与中国传统的体育运动(如太极拳)进行对比,增强对中华优秀传统文化的认同感。
思维品质	<ol> <li>能辨析不同的体育运动给人们带来的影响;能在深入理解文章的同时联系自身实际,实现知识与思维能力的迁移;</li> <li>能通过叙写关于自己的体育运动的故事,思考体育运动对人们身心的影响。</li> </ol>

# ◇ 必备知识

必背单词	surfing, represent, goal, basis, equipment, content, factor, death, adjustable, balance, bar, upper, bone, master, response, data, power, tension, disappear, sweaty, ache, inspire, persuade, champion
重点表达	given that, go back, to one's heart's content, take for example, put down, a matter of life and death, around the corner, social network, in turn, raise money, die out, as well as
重点知识	1. "be+adj.+to do"结构 2. before 引导时间状语从句
单元语法	不定式作定语和结果状语
单元 写作	关于运动的故事



# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

# 学习任务目标

- 1. Get the main idea and guess the writing purpose.
- 2. Read for locating related information quickly.
- 3. Find the three reasons for football's popularity in the text.
- 4. Love sports and promote sportsmanship.

# ○ 自主式预习 ○

# 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

## (一)核心词汇

- 1. goal n. 球门
- 2. represent v. 代表,表示
- 3. basis n. 基础;根据
- **4.** content *n*. 满意,满足
- 5. defend v. (在比赛中)防守,防卫
- 6. equipment n. 装备,设备,用具
- 7. death n. 死,死亡
- 8. given that 考虑到;鉴于;假定

# 9. go back 追溯到

- 10. take... for example 以 ······ 为例
- 11. put down 放下;写下

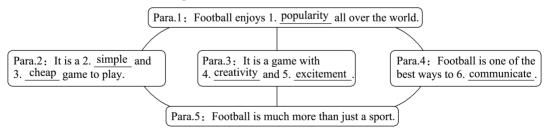
# (二)阅读词汇

- **1.** surfing *n*. 冲浪(运动)
- 2. factor n. 因素,要素
- 3. soldier n. 士兵,军人
- **4.** conflict *n*. 武装冲突,战斗,战争
- 5. to one's heart's content 尽情地;心满意足地

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



# ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Which country did today's football start in?
  - A. Ancient China.
- B. Great Britain.
- C. Germany.
- D. America.
- 2. Soldiers from which two countries played football

together on Christmas Day 1914?

- A. Britain and Germany.
- B. Britain and France.
- C. Germany and France.
- D. Germany and Russia.
- 3. What does the author mainly talk about?
  - A. Football is popular because it is simple to play.

- B. Football can bring us excitement.
- C. Football can help people to communicate.
- D. Football enjoys its popularity all over the world.

# 答案:1~3 BAD

# ○语言知识运用

# Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. Football as we know it today started in Great Britain, where the game was given new rules. [句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句, Football started in Great Britain 是句子主干, as we know it today 是状语从句。where 引导非限制性定语从 句,修饰 Great Britain。

[尝试翻译]我们今天所知道的现代足球始于英 国,在那里这项运动被赋予了新的规则。

2. That football is such a simple game to play is perhaps the basis of its popularity.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句, That football is such a simple game to play 是主语从句。to play 是不定式作定语修饰 game, is perhaps the basis... 构成系表结构。

[尝试翻译]足球是一项如此简单的运动,这也许 是它受欢迎的基础。

# ○思维品质培养

# Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- 1. What benefits can you get from doing sports?
- 2. Which is the most popular sport in China? What makes it so popular?

# Unit 3 课后素养评价(九)

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

## Ⅰ. 阅读理解

# Seven Fitness Exercises You Can Do at Home

#### Walking

An effective walking workout at home will help to strengthen your legs, while getting some low impact aerobic exercise (有氧运动) as well. If you don't have any stairs available, just walk around the house a few times—it may not be very exciting, but it will do the job!

## Jumping jacks

These are always fun, as they bring back memories of being a kid! Who hasn't done jumping jacks for fun as a child? Well, surprise—they are also great cardio exercises, and good for warming up, too.

# **Push-ups**

These are probably not the most favourite exercise of many people, but while they can be hard to do, you can find easier ways to do them. You don't need to pretend you're "Rocky", and do them with one hand, just do what works for you. Do them on your knees, instead of keeping your legs straight. Or, do them by standing up against a wall. You will build up arm strength and work out muscles in your chest area.

#### Leg lifts

These are great for building up strength and muscles in your legs. If you find it hard to do the exercises with your legs straight, try bending them slightly.

#### Crunches

It's the best exercise for building up and strengthening belly muscles. When you're just getting started, don't worry about getting your head all the way up. So long as you're going up until you feel the stretching of the muscles, you will see some benefit.

## Jogging in place

Jogging is a great exercise for your heart. You can jog in place at home while watching TV or listening to music. The only equipment you will require is a good pair of shoes, which will eliminate (消除) any stress to your legs.

#### **Dancing**

Dancing is a wonderful exercise, which is great for your heart. Not only that, but it can lift your spirits as well, and give your overall feeling a boost.

- 1. Which column does this text belong to in a magazine?
  - A. Travel.
  - B. Entertainment.

- C. Health.
- D. Advertisement.
- C 推理判断题。根据文章标题 Seven Fitness Exercises You Can Do at Home 可知,这篇文章主要介绍的是健身运动,由此可知,这篇文章在报纸上属于健康栏目。故选 C。
- 2. If Tom wants to strengthen his chest muscle, which exercise is most suitable for him?
  - A. Push-ups.
  - B. Walking.
  - C. Jumping jacks.
  - D. Dancing.
  - A 推理判断题。根据 Push-ups 段落下的最后一句"You will build up arm strength and work out muscles in your chest area."可知, 俯卧撑运动可以锻炼胸部肌肉,由此可知,如果 Tom 想锻炼胸肌,俯卧撑最适合他。故选 A。
- **3.** What exercises are best for our heart according to the text?
  - A. Walking and push-ups.
  - B. Dancing and jogging in place.
  - C. Leg lifts and dancing.
  - D. Leg lifts and crunches.
  - B 细节理解题。根据 Jogging in place 段落下的第一句 "Jogging is a great exercise for your heart."及 Dancing 段落下的第一句"Dancing is a wonderful exercise, which is great for your heart."可知,原地慢跑和跳舞这两项运动对心脏有益。故选 B。

#### Ⅱ. 七选五

Swimming is an excellent form of exercise for beginners because it is gentle on the body. It does not shake your bones or damage your joints, which is effective for weight loss. Swimming improves your cardiovascular (心血管的) fitness and

flexibility. 1

If you do not know how to swim, adult lessons are often available at gyms. 2 You can learn how to more effectively work out in the pool with just a few lessons. Swimming styles include freestyle, backstroke, breaststroke and butterfly.

\_\_\_\_\_3 \_\_\_ It is important that you stick to the posted guidelines, which are meant to keep the swimming pools running properly. There are different rules for different pools. But the majority request that you shower before you enter the pool.

4

You will find that there are also posted rules about using the lanes (泳道) of the pool. This simply means that the pool is divided up so multiple people can use it at the same time. At times, you may share a lane with one or more other swimmers.

- A. Stay in the slow lane if you're new.
- B. However, it can be dangerous at times.
- C. Besides, the water helps strengthen your muscles.
- D. When this happens, think of it as driving on the highway.
- E. If using a pool at a gym, you need to follow certain pool rules.
- F. This rule helps keep the pool water clean by removing body oils and sweat.
- G. Even if you learned to swim as a child, you may want to consider signing up for a class.

#### 答案:1~5 CGEFD

# Section | Starting out & Understanding ideas Language points

# 学习任务目标

- 1. Try to master the important words and expressions.
- 2. Remember the important language points and use them correctly.
- 3. Finish the exercises by cooperating with other students.
- 4. Cultivate your self-learning ability by using language points.

# 自主式预习 。

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Plastic is a material that is produced from oil by a chemical process.
- 2. Your goal as a parent is to help your child become an independent adult.
- 3. Physical activity is an important factor in maintaining fitness.
- 4. A soldier is a member of an army, especially a person who is not an officer.
- **5.** Conflict is fighting between countries or groups of people. 冲突

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
	surf v. 冲浪;网上冲浪
surfing n. 冲浪(运动)	surfer <i>n</i> . 冲浪者; 网上冲 浪者
a de la lacelaca	basic adj. 基本的;基础 的
basis n. 基础;根据	base v. 以为根据 n. 基部;基地;基础
defend v. (在比赛中) 防守,防卫	defence n. 防御,防卫
equipment n. 装备,设备,用具	equip v. 配备;装备
death n. 死,死亡	die v. 死亡
death n. 96,96 L	dead adj. 死的
represent v. 代表,表	representative $n$ . 代表; 代表性人物 $adj$ . 典型 的;有代表性的
示	representation n. 代理, 代表;描绘;表现

# Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. go back 追溯到:回去,返回
- 2. take... for example 以 ······· 为例
- 3. given that 考虑到;鉴于;假定
- 4. to one's heart's content 尽情地;心满意足地
- 5. put down 放下;写下
- 6. break out 爆发;突然发生
- 7. more than 多于;不仅仅;非常

## Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词短语作后置定语 It was then known as cuju (kick ball), a game

using a ball of animal skins with hair inside. 当时这项运动被称为蹴鞠(意为"以脚踢球"),使用的 球是由动物皮革填充毛发制成的。

- 2. 句型公式:as 引导方式状语从句 Football as we know it today started in Great Britain, where the game was given new rules. 我们今天所知道的现代足球始于英国,在那里这 项运动被赋予了新的规则。
- 3. 句型公式:be+adj.+to do It is also a game that is very cheap to play. 它也是一项花费很少的运动。
- 4. 句型公式:see+宾语+宾语补足语 All over the world you can see kids playing to their hearts' content with a ball made of plastic bags; just like Pelé did when he was a boy. 在世界各地,你都可以看到孩子们尽情地踢着用塑料 袋团成的球——就像贝利小时候那样。

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

# 1. represent v. 代表,表示;象征;描绘,描述;正式提出(意见等)

[教材原文] Talk about what you think these things **represent** in a football game.

谈谈你认为这些东西在足球比赛中代表着什么。

# [归纳拓展]

(1) represent sb./sth. as... 把某人/某物描述为……

represent sth. to sb. 向某人说明/传达某事

(2) representative n. 代表;代表性人物 adj. 典型的;有代表性的

be representative of (= be typical of) 是**……**的代表

(3)representation *n*. 代理,代表;描绘;表现「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①It took the monitor fifteen minutes to represent the key points of the meeting to his classmates.
- ② It is reported that a high fever is the representative (represent) symptom of the flu. (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之祝贺信)你的作品在比赛中脱颖 而出,**在**所有作品**中很具有代表性**。

Your work stands out in the competition, which is quite representative of all the works.

②(应用文写作之申请表)我被选中代表我的学校参加比赛,在比赛中我可以展示我的语言技能。

I am chosen to represent my school to take part in the competition in which I can show my language skills.

## 2. basis n. 基础;根据

[教材原文] That football is such a simple game to play is perhaps the **basis** of its popularity. 足球是一项如此简单的运动,这也许是它受欢迎的

基础。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1) on the basis of 根据;在……的基础上 on a daily/weekly basis 每天/每周一次 (2) base v. 以……为根据 n. 基部;基地;基础 base... on/upon... 以……为……的基础 be based on/upon 以……为基础/依据 at the base of 在……的底部 (3) basic adj. 基本的;基础的

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①You'd better learn some <u>basic</u> (base) Chinese before you study for a degree in Chinese culture.
- ②One should always base his opinion on/upon facts.
- 3 She was chosen for the job on the basis of her qualifications.
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之推荐信)这部电影**是根据一个真实的故事改编的**,非常值得一看。
- ①The film is based on/upon a real story and it is well worth watching.
- ② Based on/upon a real story, the film is well worth watching.
- (3) The film, which is based on/upon a real story, is well worth watching.

## 3. equipment n. 装备,设备,用具

[教材原文] You don't need expensive **equipment**; even the ball doesn't have to cost much money. 你不需要昂贵的装备,即使是球也不需要花很多钱。

# 「归纳拓展」

- (1)a piece of equipment 一件装备 office/computer equipment 办公/计算机设备
- (2)equip v. 配备;装备

equip... with... 用······装备······

be equipped with 配备着 ······

equip... for sth./to do sth. 为了(做)某事而装备……

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Your training will equip you for your future job.
- ② Our school is equipped with much advanced equipment bought from abroad. (equip)
- 3 They are going to equip the workshop with new machines in order to increase output.
- ④ His work experience equipped him to deal (deal) with all kinds of people.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)(因为)**知识渊博,教学方法有趣**,我的英语老师在我们学生当中很受欢迎。

Equipped with rich knowledge and interesting teaching methods, my English teacher is very popular among us students.(过去分词短语作状 语)

# 4. "be+adj.+to do"结构

「教材原文 Tit is also a game that is very cheap to play.

它也是一项花费很少的运动。

[句式分析]本句中运用了"be+adj.+不定式"结 构。

## 「归纳拓展」

- (1)"be+adi.+to do"结构中的形容词多为表示主 语的性质、特征的词,如 easy, hard, difficult, interesting, heavy, pleasant, good 等。
- (2)其中的不定式和句子主语是逻辑上的动宾关 系,但用主动形式表示被动意义。
- (3)在这种结构中, 当不定式与句子的主语有逻辑 上的动宾关系且是不及物动词时,应该在该不及物 动词后加上适当的介词。

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Standing on the top of the mountain, he found the air was fresh to breathe (breathe).
- 2 In my opinion, the plan designed by the manager is hard to carry (carry) out.
- 3 The TV programme is for to understand (understand).
- (4) In my view, the new flat we spent so much

money buying is very comfortable for us to live in. (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍)我最尊敬的人是我的英 语老师,他在学习上对我们很严格,但在生活中很 容易相处。

The person I respect most is my English teacher, who is strict with us in study but easy to get along/on with in life.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. goal: A. n. 球门 B. n. 进球 C. n. 目标
  - 1) The only goal was scored by Mike early in the second half.
  - 2) You need to set yourself some long-term goals.
  - 3 Now the US team is controlling the ball and attacking the opponent's goal.
- 2. content: A. n. 目录 B. n. 内容 C. v. 使满足 D. adj. 满意的;满足的 E. n. 含量
  - 1) They reduced their products' sugar content. E
  - 2 Having skimmed the play, they began to discuss the content of it. В
  - 3) There is a table of contents in the front of the dictionary.
  - ① I am very content with his response to my
  - (5) He wisely **contented** himself with his family and his love of nature. С

# Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

# Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

# Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. He was content to gather (gather) his strength patiently, waiting for the opportunity to achieve his goal.
- 2. On the basis of her qualifications and experience, she was the best person to do the job.
- 3. Equipped (equip) with a great collection of books on various subjects, the library becomes a valuable resource for both students researchers.
- 4. We must defend these rare animals from being hunted (hunt).
- 5. The peace talks broke down with no agreement reached.
- 6. If it is a matter of life and death, we should spare no effort to solve it.
- 7. He is old enough to take (take) care of himself now
- 8. I can assure you of my full support for your plan.
- 9. She saw Ellie looking (look) up, eyes wide with admiration.

**10.** Paper-cutting is easy to learn (learn) once you master the methods.

#### Ⅱ. 短语填空

go back; given that; break out; put down; to sb.'s heart's content

- 1. Every five minutes, he <u>puts down</u> his pen and looks at the clock.
- 2. A fierce fight <u>broke out</u> between the two brothers just because of a small thing.
- 3. With the final exam finished, the boys played basketball to their hearts' content on the playground.
- **4.** It is said that the history of the old library in this town goes back as far as 1875.
- 5. Given that there's little time left, you'd better take a taxi to go there.

#### Ⅲ. 补全句子

- 1. 如果有机会,我想向这些学生提供捐助。(虚拟语气)
  - If I had the chance, I would make donations to these students.
- 2. 随着我们的生活改善,我们更注重均衡饮食。(as 引导时间状语从句)

As our life improves, we pay more attention to a balanced diet.

- 3. 工作完成了,他们出去庆祝。(with 复合结构)
  With the work finished, they went out to celebrate.
- **4.** 汤姆是一个很随和的人,而他的弟弟却很难相处。  $(be+adj. + \pi c \vec{z})$

Tom is an easy-going person while his brother is hard to get along with.

5. 公园里有很多人在阳光下玩得很开心。(现在分词 作定语)

In the park there are lots of people enjoying themselves in the sunshine.

#### Ⅳ. 完形填空

It's my dream. I'm nine years old now, but have been <u>1</u> competitively since I was six. I love it, because it makes me feel good. I have a lot of <u>2</u> to use up and I can do it by just moving my legs.

One recent Sunday morning, my mum drove me to a 5-km race in Minnesota.

The starting line was 3 because there was also a 10 km race. That morning, I was running confidently and feeling 4. At one point, I came to a 5 in the course. A woman who was directing us 6 the route I thought I was meant to take and told me to go the other way. I was confused, but I had to follow her 7.

After a while I saw route directions for a 10 km race. I was worried, thinking I was 8, but had to keep going. My body started to get 9. I said to myself, "You're almost there. Just keep 10."

11. I saw the finish line. I couldn't believe it. I didn't even know I was running a 10 km and I had 12 it. I didn't do this on purpose. It was a 13. I felt happy and proud. It was my first time running such a(n) 14.

It has made me want to do more 10-km races. I hope my story 15 other people to run, too.

- 1. A. hiking
- B. swimming
  - C. driving
- D. running

D 根据下文的"That morning, I was running confidently..."中的"running"可知,作者从六岁开始参加长跑比赛。故选 D。

- **2.** A. time
- B. resources
- C. energy
- D. patience
- 3. A. separated
- B. crowded
- C. prepared
- D. limited

B 根据下文"there was also a 10-km race"可推知,人很多,起跑线上挤满(crowded)了人。故选B。

- 4. A. shallow
- B. strong
- C. strange
- D. sensitive

B 根据上文的"running confidently"及连词"and" 可知,作者应该是感觉自己很强壮(strong)。故选B。

- 5. A. fork
- B. barrier
- C. station
- D. bridge

- A 根据下文的"A woman who was directing us..."可推知,应该是在岔路口(fork),才会有人引 路。故选A。
- **6.** A. blocked off B. pulled off
  - C. tidied up D. gave up
  - A 根据下文的"told me to go the other way"可 知,那个女人让作者走另一条路,挡住(blocked off)了作者原以为自己要走的那条。故选 A。
- 7. A. example B. heart D. feeling C. direction
  - C 根据上文的"A woman who was directing us 6 the route I thought I was meant to take and told me to go the other way."可知,女人在给作者 指方向,所以虽然作者很困惑,但是还是按照她指 示的方向(direction)去跑。故选 C。
- 8. A. stuck B. lost C. deserted D. involved
  - B 根据上文的"worried"可知,作者担心自己迷路 (lost)了。故选 B。
- 9. A. fuelled B. adapted C. tired D. relaxed
  - C 根据下文的"I said to myself, 'You're almost there. Just keep 10 . "可知,作者给自己加油 打气。其原因应该是自己累了(tired)。故选 C。
- 10. A. waiting B. shaking

C. watching

D 根据常识可知, 跑步的时候, 应该调整呼吸,

D. breathing

保持呼吸(breathing)平稳。故选 D。

- 11. A. Initially B. Actually
  - C. Obviously D. Eventually
  - D 根据上文可知,作者之前感觉身体疲倦,一直 给自己打气,所以到了终点后,应用 eventually (终于)表达自己的欣喜之情。故选 D。
- **12.** A. won B. quit C. changed D. expected
  - A 根据上文的" 11 I saw the finish line. I couldn't believe it."以及下文"I didn't do this on purpose."可知,作者竟然赢得(won)了比赛。故
- 13. A. dream B. mistake C. balance D. lesson
  - B 根据上文可知,作者本是参加5千米跑步,但 是却赢了10千米的比赛。所以这是一个错误 (mistake)。故选 B。
- **14.** A. test B. risk
  - C. adventure D. distance
  - D 根据常识可知,10 千米是一段很长的距离 (distance)。故选 D。
- 15. A. allows B. enables C. inspires D. presses
  - C 根据上文的"It has made me want to do more 10-km races."可知,作者希望自己的经历也可以 鼓励(inspires)他人去跑步。inspire sb. to do sth. 意为"鼓励某人做某事"。故选 C。

# Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the usage of to-infinitive as attributive and adverbial of result.
- 2. Apply to-infinitive as attributive and adverbial of result in the real context.
- 3. Learn vocabulary and expressions about different sports and their benefits.

# ○ 自主式预习 ○

# Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

 Since you have a strong desire to learn Chinese culture, I think Beijing Language and Culture University is an ideal place for you.

理想的,最合适的

- The screen itself can also be referred to as the display.

  显示器
- 3. The patient's blood pressure was **monitored** regularly by the nurse. 监测
- **4.** One doctor has **charted** a dramatic rise in local childhood asthma(哮喘) since the road was built.

记录

- 5. His upper lip was flat, but the lower one sagged (下垂的).上面的
- 6. She was a master of the English language.

大师,能手

# Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
adjustable adj. 可调整	adjust v. 适应;习惯;调 整,调节
的,可调节的	adjustment n. 调整;适应
balance n. 平衡	balanced adj. 平衡的
·	involved adj. 参与的;卷 入的;有关联的
involve v. 包含,需要	involvement n. 参与;卷 入;牵连

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
response n. 回答,答复	respond v. 回答;响应; 作出反应
<u>available</u> adj. 可用的, 可获得的	availability n. 有效;有 用;有益;可得到的人(或 物);可用性

# Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. fit into (使)适合,适应;符合
- 2. keep track of 跟踪
- 3. work out 解决,解答;计算出;锻炼身体;制订出
- 4. due to 由于,因为
- 5. find out 弄清,查明

# Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:so that 引导结果状语从句

It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully adjustable so that it is comfortable to wear. 它还有一个语音控制设置,使您可以解放您的双手,同时它的防水带是完全可调节的,这样的话戴着它是很舒适的。

句型公式: keep+宾语+宾语补足语
 You have to keep your body very still.
 你必须保持你的身体静止不动。

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

# 1. adjustable adj. 可调整的,可调节的

[教材原文]It also has a voice control setting that enables you to stay hands-free, while its waterproof band is fully adjustable so that it is comfortable to wear.

它还有一个语音控制设置,使您可以解放您的双 手,同时它的防水带是完全可调节的,这样的话戴 着它是很舒适的。

# 「归纳拓展」

(1)adjust v. 适应;习惯;调整,调节 adjust oneself to sth. 使自己适应某事 adjust to (doing) sth. 适应(做)某事 adjust... (to sth.) (根据某事物)对 ······进行调节/调整 (2)adjustment n. [C,U]调整;适应 make adjustment(s) (to...)(对······)进行调整;做 出调整(以适应 ……)

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1) They should adjust their websites to the needs of younger users.
- 2 The height of the bicycle seat is adjustable (adjust) so you can adjust it to suit the needs of your children.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之日记)我作为交换生来到这个学 校已经一个星期了,我已经适应了新的环境。

It has been a week since I came to this school as an exchange student and I have adjusted to the new environment.

②(应用文写作之道歉信)由于我没有及时调整相 关的信息,给您带来极大的不便,我写信向您道歉。 I am writing to apologise to you for my not making adjustments to/adjusting the relevant information in time, causing great inconvenience to you.

# 2. balance n. 平衡 v. 使(在某物上)保持平衡;比较;权 衡重要性

[教材原文] Using only a rope, you can develop your footwork and balance.

只用一根绳子,你就可以精进你的步法和平衡感。

# 「归纳拓展」

(1)keep a/one's balance 保持平衡 keep a balance between A and B 保持 A 与 B 之间 的平衡

keep the balance of nature 维持生态平衡 lose one's balance 失去平衡

- (2)balance A against B 权衡 A 和 B
- (3) balanced adj. 平衡的

keep a balanced diet 保持均衡的饮食

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- Defore making the final decision, you'd better balance the advantages against the disadvantages.
- ②Keeping a balanced (balance) diet is of great importance, especially for teens who are growing up.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)对我们来说,维持生态平 衡、保护环境是多么重要和必要啊!

How important and necessary it is for us to keep the balance of nature and protect the environment!

# 3. response n. 回答,答复

[教材原文] During the interview, listen carefully to each question and try to understand the main ideas within the interviewee's responses.

在(听)采访(材料的)过程中,仔细听每个问题,试 着理解被采访者所回答的主要观点。

## 「归纳拓展」

(1) make a response to 回答/响应;对……作出反

in response to 对……作出反应

(2)respond v. 回答;响应;作出反应 respond to sth. 对某事作出回答/反应

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Scientists say the results suggest that the heart is able to influence how the brain responds to a fearful event.
- 2 The famous film star made no response (respond) to the questions asked by the reporters.
- ③(2024 · 浙江 1 月卷) A similar process is at work in our response to information.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之活动报道)从观众的反应看来,这 次演出相当成功。

Judging from the response of the audience, the performance was quite a success.

②(应用文写作之求助信)你能提出一些建议来提高我的听力吗? 我期待着**你早日回复**。

Would you put forward some proposals to improve my listening? I'm looking forward to your earliest response.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. I wonder if she is available this afternoon.
  - A. adj. 可获得的

B. adi. 有空的

C. adj. 可利用的

- 2. She kept **skipping** from one topic of the conversation to another.
  - A. υ. 迅速转换(话题) B. υ. 跳绳

C. v. 跳过

- That is the only French phrase I mastered, and it's a shame I don't have much use for it.
  - A. υ. 掌握
  - B. v. 控制
  - C. n. 主人

# 语法研习课

В

# 不定式作定语和结果状语

# 语法感知

- ① That football is such a simple game **to play** is perhaps the basis of its popularity.
- ②It is fun enough to attract millions of people.
- (3) What's more, football has become one of the best ways for people to communicate.
- ① This might sound funny, but one only has to think about the Earth to realise that our planet is shaped like a football.
- 1. 句①和句③中的动词不定式作定语。
- 2. 句②和句④中的动词不定式作结果状语。

# 。语法精讲

# 一、概念理解

# 不定式的时态、语态及意义

时态	主动语态	被动语态	意义
一般式	to do	to be done	不定式的动作与句 中谓语动词的动作 同时发生或在其后 发生
进行式	to be doing	_	不定式的动作与句 中谓语动词的动作 同时发生
完成式	to have done	to have been done	不定式的动作发生 在句中谓语动词的 动作之前

Thousands of young people are learning to ski.

成千上万的年轻人在学习滑雪。(同时进行)

He asked me to help him with the task.

他让我帮他做这个任务。(不定式的动作发生在谓语 动词的动作之后)

He is said to be writing a preface to the book.

据说他正在为这本书写前言。(同时进行)

The girl was reported to have been lost for a month.

据报道那个女孩已经失踪一个月了。(不定式的动作 发生在谓语动词的动作之前)

# 名师点拨■■■■■

一般而言,不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的执行者时,不定式用主动形式; 不定式的逻辑主语是构成不定式的动词所表示动作的承受者时,不定式用被动形式。

The doctor recommended him to air the room.

医生建议他给房间透透气。

The doctor recommended the room to be aired. 医生建议给房间透透气。

# 二、语法规则

- 1. 不定式作定语
  - (1)不定式作定语常表示将来的动作。

The question **to be discussed** at the meeting is very important.

将在会议上讨论的那个问题非常重要。

(2)不定式常放在某些名词或代词后作定语。如果作 定语的不定式是不及物动词,或者不定式所修饰的名 词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等,不定式后需 要加相应的介词。

He has no pen to write with.

他没有用来写字的钢笔。

(3)不定式用来修饰被序数词、最高级或 no, all, any 等限定的中心词,且与中心词之间为逻辑上的 主动关系。

He is always the first to arrive at the school and the last to leave the school.

他总是第一个到校,最后一个离校。

(4)被修饰词是抽象名词时,常用不定式作定语。 常见的该类名词有 ability, chance, idea, hope, wish, excuse, promise, attempt, way 等。

His wish to buy a car came true. 他想买辆车的愿望实现了。

# 2. 不定式作结果状语

(1)不定式作结果状语表示出乎意料的或不好的 结果,表示的动作发生在谓语动词的动作之后时, 通常用一般式。

Few days later he came back to find that the troops had left.

几天之后他回来了,却发现部队已经离开了。

(2)不定式前常有 only 或 just,而且不定式前可加 上其自身的逻辑主语(for...)。

He tried his best to prepare for the contest, only to be told it was cancelled.

他全力以赴地为这次竞赛做准备,结果却被告知 竞赛取消了。

He earned a lot of money only for his son to squander it.

他赚了很多钱,却被儿子挥霍一空。

(3)不定式作结果状语,常用在"... enough to do" "too... to do" "so... as to do" "such... as to do"结 构中。

# 

现在分词和不定式作结果状语的区别:

现在分词作结果状语多表示结果在意料之中,其作用 相当于一个非限制性定语从句;而不定式作结果状语 通常表示结果在意料之外。

He dropped the glass, breaking it into pieces. 他把杯子掉在地上,结果摔成了碎片。

I hurried to his house, only to find him out. 我匆忙赶到他家,结果却发现他不在家。

# ◦语法冲关

#### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. John said he had an important meeting to attend (attend) so he couldn't come to visit me.
- 2. He hurried to the train station, only to find (find) the train had left.
- 3. To save (save) energy, we turn off the lights for Earth Hour on the last Saturday in March.
- 4. When he left, he said to me, "I'm sorry to have troubled (trouble) you so much."
- 5. The airport to be completed (complete) next year will help promote tourism in this area.
- **6.** He is wealthy enough to afford (afford) such a big house.

#### Ⅱ. 完成句子

- 1. I hurried to the post office, only to find it closed. 我匆忙赶到邮局,结果却发现邮局关门了。
- 2. His eyesight is too poor to see such small letters clearly.

他的视力太差,看不清楚这么小的字母。

3. She was the first woman to win the gold medal in the Olympic Games.

她是第一位在奥林匹克运动会上获得金牌的女

**4.** Will you please bring me a chair to sit on? 请给我拿把能坐的椅子好吗?

# Unit 3 课后素养评价(十一)

# Section **II** Using language

# Ⅰ. 词语填空

fit into; work out; due to; available; adjustable; balance; involve; master; response; keep track of

- 1. If you want to have a happy school life, you'd better keep a balance between study and relaxation.
- 2. Students should involve themselves in community activities where they can gain experience for growth.
- 3. To stay in shape, Kathy takes exercise three times a week and keeps track of the latest information on health.

- 4. The chair has an adjustable height, so you can adjust it to fit your needs.
- 5. The audience's response to the comedian's jokes was overwhelmingly positive.
- 6. The coast road is closed due to bad weather.
- 7. I'll change my timetable to fit into with yours.
- 8. Amazingly, they worked out how to do this successfully.
- 9. It's reported that not enough information is available to scientists.
- 10. I've completely mastered the use of all the words I've learned.

# Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. We need someone to help (help) with the work.
- 2. Please tell me the subjects to be discussed (discuss) at the next session.
- 3. In his speech, he expressed their determination to achieve (achieve) their goals.
- **4.** I think we are all grown-ups and we have the ability to manage (manage) our own affairs.
- 5. I'm going to Xi'an next week. Do you have anything to be taken (take) to your parents?

#### Ⅲ. 完成句子

- 1. China has become the first country to land a probe on the far side of the moon.
  - 中国已成为首个在月球背面着陆探测器的国家。
- 2. We came home after our holiday to find our garden neat and tidy.

我们度假后回到家,发现我们的花园既干净又整洁。

- **3.** I feel greatly honoured to have the chance to deliver a speech here.
  - 有机会在这里发表演讲,我感到万分荣幸。
- **4.** No words are strong enough to express how grateful I am.
  - 没有什么语言能够表达我的感激之情。
- **5.** Every time I prepare for an important interview, I will be too anxious to fall asleep.

每次我准备重要面试时,我都会过于焦虑以至于 睡不着。

# Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Beach volleyball is one of those sports that can be an exciting game to play and watch. It's really easy, and all you need is sand, a net and a group of people, of any age or fitness level, who want to have fun.

Beach volleyball can be played with as few as two people in each team, making a total of four people. However, if you are less skilled and experienced in the game, it will be easier to play with a larger team. The more players you have, the less ground each person will be responsible for covering and the more time they will have to recover between shots. If you only have a few players, each of you will get a lot of running for the ball after each volley. If you are looking for a relaxing, fun and low-key experience, choose larger teams.

Beach volleyball is similar to regular volleyball in its rules. However, even experienced volleyball players do not realise how much more difficult it is to run and jump on sand. Since it is harder to move quickly on sand than a hard surface, play will be much slower than regular volleyball on a court. When an athlete trains for beach volleyball, he/she will focus on building lower body strength as well as upper body strength. Strengthening his/her legs is

extremely important. This improves the player's ability to move quickly and accurately on sand despite the resistance. The ability to jump high and land without injury is necessary for beach volleyball players.

Whether you are in it for the competition, or just to have a great time with your friends, beach volleyball can be very exciting and fun. You may start out with friends and may soon fall in love with the sport.

- 1. When playing beach volleyball, in which situation will you feel most relaxed?
  - A. Playing in a 2-person team.
  - B. Playing in a 4-person team.
  - C. Playing in a 6-person team.
  - D. Playing in an 11-person team.
  - D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"If you are looking for a relaxing, fun and low-key experience, choose larger teams."可知,参加沙滩排球的人数越多,你会感到越轻松。故选 D。
- 2. What can we infer from Paragraph 3?
  - A. Experienced volleyball players know clearly it is hard to run and jump on sand.
  - B. Lower body strength is more important than upper body strength.
  - C. A person must have strong legs if he/she wants to run and jump quickly on sand.
  - D. The rules of beach volleyball are the same as those of regular volleyball.
  - C 推理判断题。第三段介绍了沙滩排球和常规排球的区别。根据本段中的"he/she will focus on building lower body strength as well as upper body strength"可知,要想跳得高,运动员的下肢必须要强壮,所以C项正确。故选C。
- **3.** Why is playing beach volleyball much slower than playing regular volleyball?
  - A. Because it is not easy to move on sand.
  - B. Because beach volleyball has a larger court.
  - C. Because the teams of beach volleyball are larger.
  - D. Because beach volleyball players are not experienced.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Since it is harder to move quickly on sand than a hard surface..."可知,在沙滩上快速运动比在坚硬的地面上困难,因此沙滩排球的进度要慢于普通排球。故选 A.
- **4.** What does the author think of beach volleyball?
  - A. It's a difficult sport.
  - B. It's an exciting and interesting sport.
  - C. It's a sport which only a few people love.
  - D. It's a sport which needs few skills.
  - B 推理判断题。根据文章首段以及最后一段的内容可知,沙滩排球是一项让人兴奋且充满乐趣的体育活动。故选 B。

# **Section** IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Know some information about marathons.
- 2. Read and analyse why the four people started running and what benefits they got from running.
- 3. Think and share other running events in China.

# 自主式预习。

# 」. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. We've been collecting data from all over the country to know the situation of the epidemic (传染病).
- 2. Tension is a feeling of worry and anxiety which makes it difficult for you to relax.
- 3. A label is a piece of paper or plastic that is attached to an object in order to give information about it.
- 4. My leg is giving me much less pain but still aches when (持续而隐隐地)作痛 I sit down.
- 5. A champion is someone who has won first prize in a competition, contest, or fight.

# Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
	interpretation n. 理解,解释;演绎
interpret v. 理解,了解, 解释	interpretative adj. 理解的, 解释的
	interpreter n. 口译者
	powerful adj. 强有力的
power n. 力量	powerless <i>adj</i> . 无影响力 的
	disappearance n. 消失
disappear v. 消失,不见	appear v. 出现
7.0	appearance n. 外观;外 貌;出现
sweaty adj. 满是汗的,被汗水湿透的	sweat n. 汗,汗水 v. 出 汗,流汗

续表

	-7.7-
教材词汇	拓展词汇
	inspired adj. 受到鼓舞 的
inspire v. 鼓舞,激励	inspiring adj. 令人鼓舞 的,振奋人心的
	inspiration n. 灵感;鼓舞
23 HZ 24 HZ	persuasion n. 说服,劝服
persuade υ. 说服,劝服	persuasive <i>adj</i> . 有说服 力的
ultimate adj. (目标等)最终的	ultimately adv. 最终,最后

# Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. in turn 依次,轮流;反过来
- 2. by the end of 到……为止
- 3. take part in 参加,参与
- **4.** die out 消失,绝迹,灭绝
- 5. at times 有时

# Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: before 引导时间状语从句 But before I knew it, I was taking part in local races.

但是我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。

2. 句型公式:as 引导时间状语从句

As my fitness and my running improved, I started running in national competitions.

随着身体素质的提升和跑步能力的提高,我开始 参加全国跑步比赛。

- 3. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语
  It can be quite stressful at times, though, which in turn makes me feel anxious.
  然而,有时候工作的压力是非常大的,这也相应地
- 4. 句型公式: whether... or... 引导让步状语从句 Whether I'm at the gym or on the road, my nervous energy pushes me through mile one.
- 无论我是在健身房还是在路上,跑第一英里的时候我还能感受到神经的紧张。
- 5. 句型公式:as well as

I had a great day out in London, <u>as well as</u> helping to save gorillas!

我在伦敦度过了愉快的一天,同时也为拯救大猩 猩出了力!

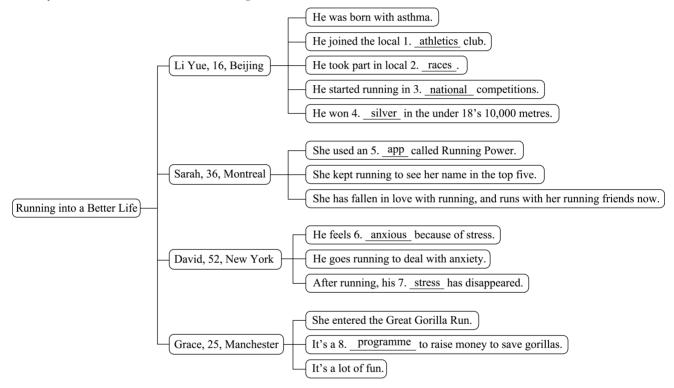
# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

# Part 1 课文理解

# ○文本整体理解

会让我感到焦虑。

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



## ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What's the main idea of the text?
  - A. Running is the best sport all over the world.
  - B. This global site is very popular all over the world.
  - C. Reasons for starting running and benefits gained from running.
  - D. Running can cure your disease and make you better and better.
- 2. Why does Li Yue start running?
  - A. He loves running since childhood.
  - B. He was born with asthma and has to start running.

- C. Running can improve his lung function and help treat his asthma.
- D. He wants to win gold in national competitions.
- **3.** Who kept running for the purpose of winning the top five?
  - A. David.
- B. Li Yue.
- C. Grace.
- D. Sarah.
- **4.** In the course of running, which of the following is true about the computer engineer?
  - A. He removed his tension from work.
  - B. He recovered from his illness.
  - C. He came across other runners.
  - D. He helped to save gorillas.

# 答案:1~4 CCDA

# ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. It can be quite stressful at times, though, which in turn makes me feel anxious.

「句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 which 引导非限制性定语从句,在从句中 feel anxious 为省 略 to 的不定式,作宾语补足语,在主句中情态动词 can 表 推测。

「尝试翻译〕然而,有时候工作的压力是非常大的, 这也相应地会让我感到焦虑。

2. The funniest moment was when someone watching the race offered me a banana—a real treat for a running gorilla!

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。when 引导 表语从句,在从句中 watching the race 是现在分 词短语作后置定语,破折号后的内容是对 banana 的补充说明。

[尝试翻译] 最有趣的时刻就是有些看比赛的人 会给我一根香蕉——这对于奔跑的"大猩猩"来 说真是一顿美餐!

# ○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions,

- 1. How did Grace feel by helping to save gorillas? Tired but happy.
- 2. Do you know of any running events in China?

#### 语言梳理 Part 2

# 1. power *n*. 力量;权力;能力

「教材原文] Then I discovered an app called Running Power.

后来我发现了一款名为"奔跑的力量"的应用程序。 「归纳拓展」

(1)come to/into power 掌权;上台(表动作) be in power 掌权(表状态)

have the power of 有 ...... 的能力

beyond/out of one's power 超出某人的能力 in/within one's power to do sth. 有权力/能力做某 事

(2)powerful adj. 强有力的 powerless adj. 无影响力的

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① It seems obvious that these have made humankind the most powerful (power) animal on earth.
- 2 Though he has been in power for two years, he hasn't found an effective solution to the country's economic problems.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之感谢信)每当我遇到麻烦并求助于 你时,你都会尽你所能帮助我。

Every time I get into trouble and turn to you, you will do everything in/within your power to help me out.

# 2. inspire v. 鼓舞,激励

[教材原文] End by saying why he/she inspires

you.

最后说说他或她为什么会激励你。

# 「归纳拓展」

(1)inspire sb. to do sth. 激励/鼓励某人做某事 inspire sb. with sth. = inspire sth. in sb. 激起某人 的……(某种情感)

be inspired by 受到……的启发;由……得到灵感

- (2)inspiration n. 灵感;鼓舞
- (3)inspired adj. 受到鼓舞的
- (4)inspiring adj. 令人鼓舞的,振奋人心的

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① What I learned was the true meaning of growing up and from then on I was inspired to work (work) harder.
- ② I recalled that my foreign friends often comforted me with inspiring (inspire) words when I was homesick.
- 3 For Western designers, China and its rich culture have long been an inspiration (inspire) for Western creatives.
- (2)写作微练

(2024·新课标 [ 卷应用文写作之活动记录) 我被 这美妙的景色所启发,决定画一幅公园池塘的水彩 画。

- ① I was inspired by the fantastic scenery, so I decided to create a watercolour painting of the pond in the park.
- 2 Inspired by the fantastic scenery, I decided to

create a watercolour painting of the pond in the park.

# 3. persuade v. 说服,劝服

[教材原文] He then **persuaded** me to try ice hockey.

然后他说服我去打冰球。

# 「归纳拓展」

- (1) persuade sb. to do sth. persuade sb. into doing sth.
- (2) persuade sb. not to do sth. persuade sb. out of doing sth. 说服某人
- (3) try to persuade sb. to do sth. advise sb. to do sth. 试图说服某人 做某事(但未必 说服成功)
- (4)persuade sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① I managed to persuade him to support (support) my plan to sell popcorn from door to door.
- ②Get a coffee machine for your home or office, or persuade your company into buying (buy) one.
- ③In a debate you need to persuade the listeners of the soundness of your argument.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之细节描写)我发现大卫正坐在路边, 头低着,因此我决定去**劝他参加比赛**。
- I found David sitting on the roadside with his head down, so I decided to persuade him to take part in the race/persuade him into taking part in the race.
- ②(读后续写之细节描写)我试图**说服他不要和那个家伙联系**,但是白费功夫。

I tried to persuade him not to keep/out of keeping in touch with that guy, but in vain.

# 4. before 引导时间状语从句

[教材原文]But **before** I knew it, I was taking part in local races.

但是我开始参加本地的比赛之后才知道这一点。 [句式分析]句中 before 用作连词,常用来表示从句动作发生之前的时间,译法灵活。

# 「归纳拓展」

(1)强调从句动作发生在主句之前, before 意为"还

没来得及……就……"。

- (2)强调动作发生的时间长, before 意为"过了(多久)才……"。
- (3)在"It+be+时间段+before 从句"中, before 意为"……之后才……"。
- (4)在"It+be+not+long+before 从句"中, before 意为"……不久就……"。
- (5) "It + be + 一段时间 + since 从句"表示"自从……(到现在)有多长时间了"。

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① How time flies! Two weeks has gone by <u>before</u> we know it.
- ②John is sure that it won't be long <u>before</u> he is ready for his new job.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)坦率地说,在不同的文化中攻读学位从来都不容易。**在你来之前**,你最好学习一些基础的汉语。

To be frank, studying for a degree in a different culture is never easy. You'd better learn some basic Chinese before you come.

②(应用文写作之申请信)从 5 岁起我就接触外教,因此,我能够用英语和其他人自由交流。

I have been exposed to foreign teachers <u>since I</u> was five years old, so I can communicate freely with others in English.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. before: A. conj. 还没来得及就······
  - B. conj. 在 ······ 之前
  - C. conj. 不久就 ······
  - D. conj. ……之后才……
  - ①Did he leave a message **before** he went? B
  - ②It's a pity that it will be five years **before** we meet again.
  - ③It will not be long **before** the naughty student realises his mistakes.
  - 4 He took the bad news out of his mouth **before** I could stop him.
- 2. And finally, for people in darkness, this candle could be the **ultimate** gift.
  - A. adj. 最终的
- B. adj. 最好的
- C. adj. 基本的

# Unit 3 课后素养评价(十二)

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

## Ⅰ. 单词拼写

- 1. We are living in the modern age of big data (数 据), which has improved our working efficiency greatly.
- 2. In business, it is important to make network (人 际关系网) with as many people as possible on a face-to-face basis.
- 3. Being so famous in the world, the Olympic Games mainly show the power (力量) of the human spirit through sports.
- 4. The champion (冠军) was so excited after the race that he didn't know what to say in front of so many reporters.
- 5. After running a mile, my two legs ached (作痛), which almost forced me to give up, but later I kept up running to the finishing line.
- 6. He who cannot afford blows and setbacks cannot win the ultimate (最终的) victory.
- 7. A great deal of tension (紧张) tends to do harm to people's health mentally.
- 8. The artist interpreted (解释) the theme of the painting in a unique way.
- 9. The moment I saw my good friend, half of my worries disappeared (消失).
- 10. Unless you're really sweaty (满是汗的), wait three or four wears before washing.

## Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. Silence is often interpreted as an admission of
- 2. The new stadium being built will be twice as big as the playground.
- 3. We all need to get involved in saving energy whether it's at work, at home, or at school.
- 4. I spent several hours writing everything I had bought down, just to get (get) an idea of how I spent my money.
- 5. My mother persuaded me to live (live) at school to learn to be independent when I was ready to go to senior high.
- 6. The poet got a lot of inspiration from nature and wrote an inspiring poem which made all of us

inspired to love nature and protect it. (inspire)

#### Ⅲ 短语填空

at first; as well as; at times; save... from; die out; in turn: deal with

- 1. He was very nervous at first, but soon he calmed
- 2. The shop at the corner of the street sold books as well as newspapers.
- 3. If these animals and plants die out, we will never see them again.
- 4. The climate in our city is warm and wet, but it can be cold at times.
- 5. It is very important to teach the children how to deal with others' kindness and rudeness.
- 6. The change of the climate also makes the earth warmer. In turn, the warmth of the earth changes the climate, too.
- 7. We should take effective measures to save the endangered animals from extinction (灭绝).

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 随着期末考试的临近,我们正忙着为此做充分的 准备。(as 引导时间状语从句)

As the final exam is around the corner, we are busy making full preparations for it.

2. 听音乐总是让我感到放松和快乐。(make+宾语 +宾语补足语)

Listening to music always makes me feel relaxed and joyful.

- 3. 这次活动是为儿童筹款。(不定式短语作表语) The activity is to raise money for the children.
- 4. 除了难以适应新的学校生活之外, 她发现文化差 异对她来说是另一个挑战。(as well as)

As well as having difficulty adapting herself to the new school life, she found that the cultural difference was another challenge for her.

#### Ⅴ. 语法填空

Tai chi, also noted as taijiquan, is a traditional Chinese martial art that has evolved into a popular form of exercise and meditation. 1. Originated (originate) from China's Fujian Province, tai chi has a history of over 1,000 years and is deeply rooted in Chinese philosophy and culture. It 2. <u>features</u> (feature) slow, flowing movements that promote balance,

3. flexibility (flexible), and relaxation.

In recent years, tai chi 4. <u>has gained</u> (gain) worldwide recognition for its health benefits. Studies have shown that practising tai chi can also be helpful for people 5. <u>to reduce</u> (reduce) the risk of falls in older adults.

Tai chi is often practised in classes, 6. where students learn from a qualified instructor. There are many different styles of tai chi, each 7. having (have) its own unique set of movements and techniques. Beginners are encouraged to start with the most basic movements and 8. gradually (gradual) build up their skills and knowledge over time.

9. Whether you are looking for a low-impact exercise, a way to reduce stress, or a close connection to Chinese culture, tai chi offers something for everyone. With regular practice, you can experience the transformative power of this ancient art form and discover 10. a deeper sense of balance and harmony in your life.

# Ⅵ. 写作

# 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华。你的英国朋友 Jim 在给你的邮件中提到他计划选择一项可以长期坚持的运动并向你征询建议。请你给他回复一封英文邮件,内容包括:

- 1. 推荐的运动;
- 2. 推荐的理由。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出, 不计人总词数。

Dear Jim,

I	am	glad	to	learn	that	you	would	like	to
exerci	se to	keep	fit.						
——— B	est v	vishes	. 1						

Yours, Li Hua

# 【参考范文】

Dear Jim,

I am glad to learn that you would like to exercise to keep fit. I believe running is the best choice. My reasons are as follows.

First of all, the physical benefits from running have long been recognised as it helps increase the body's flow of blood and oxygen, which thus strengthens the immune system and reduces the risk of diseases. What's more, running can certainly become a long-term hobby, since it takes only a pair of running shoes and can easily and flexibly be added to your schedule. Last but not least, running can improve one's mood and particularly provide relief from pain or tension.

Why not give it a try? I'm sure you will get a lot out of running.

Best wishes!

Yours, Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

## **Super Lungs**

I was always a huge fan of football, and watching a game at the stadium was definitely one of the best ways to be free from work and relax. Therefore, the minute I heard the news that there would be a game of our home team against the team from Mississippi, I booked a front-row seat, excited about having a fantastic weekend.

I was satisfied when I got seated in the stadium. When the game began, however, I discovered that I was sitting directly in front of a Super Lungs. He seemed like a nice guy. But his idea of having fun at a football game was obviously nothing like mine, or most normal, well-behaved football fans'. It consisted of standing and yelling nonstop, as loud as he could. He yelled at the coaches, at the players, at the officials and at the Mississippi State fans in the next section. Always at the top of his lungs.

Super Lungs made an astonishing performance and kept it for us for the entire 45 minutes and never showed any sign of tiredness. He was so caught up in his world that he failed to notice he was ruining the

experience of hundreds of others.

I felt that my eardrums almost got broken. His mouth was only two feet away from my ears. For a while I thought of shouting back and stopping him yelling. People around were turning to look at him, and I could read their thoughts: "Is he never going to stop?" And he seemed blind to those looks.

At half-time I escaped by walking for a few minutes outside the stadium. I was thinking of seeking an empty seat in the student section across the stadium but to my disappointment, the seats were all taken. I had no choice but to go back to Super Lungs.

To make matters worse, when returning to my seat, I missed my steps and fell heavily on the stairs. As I was struggling to stand up, a pair of huge hands helped me from behind.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I looked back and saw	_
	_
	_
	_
	_
	_

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another	. 45
minutes.	

# 【参考范文】

I looked back and saw Super Lungs' smiling face and concerned eyes. "Are you all right?" he asked me, with genuine care in his voice. "Oh, thank you, I'm OK," I smiled at him. Suddenly I felt he was gentle and kind. All that yelling was only his way of enjoying a football game. It might not please me, but it certainly did not fully reflect his personality! Honestly, looking at him now, I couldn't help marvelling at how much passion he showed in a simple game. He surely was "enjoying life to the fullest".

Super Lungs kept his shouting for another 45 minutes. However, I felt it much easier to bear. The funny thing was that I found myself joining him in standing and shouting, too! It was one of the most unforgettable experiences of my life. I suppose it's important to tolerate and to love people around us. In that way we will be able to see them as real persons, rather than funny or annoying cartoons.



# 窗Part 1 应用文写作

# ——关于运动的故事

# ○写作指导

本单元的写作话题是"关于运动的故事",在体裁上属于记叙文。文章应主要叙述人物的经历或事件的发展变化过程,主要内容包含所发生事件的地点、时间、人物、事情起因、事件发生的过程和结果。写作时应首先交代事件发生的背景,然后具体描述事件的经过,最后谈谈自己的感受或得到的启示。此类文章多用一般过去时。

# ○典题示例

假如你是李华,你的朋友 Peter 上周写信告诉你,他对你的运动经历很感兴趣,请你写一封回信跟他分享你的一次运动经历。

注意:词数应为80左右。

# Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以 一般过去时为主
人称	以 第一人称为主
要点	1. 事件的背景信息,如时间、人物、环境等 2. 事件发生的经过 3. 自己的感受或得到的启示

# Step 2:要点补全

- ①I'm writing to share my sports experience with you (跟你分享我的运动经历).
- ②I <u>still remember the day</u> (仍然记得这一天) of last
- ③I went to run a marathon with my father (跟我爸

爸去跑马拉松).

- ④I got wet all through (被淋湿透了) and felt cold and tired.
- ⑤So I <u>couldn't help complaining</u> (忍不住抱怨) and wanted to give up.
- ⑥Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up (鼓励我不要放弃) and put his coat on me softly.
- ⑦We got to the finish line at last (最终到达了终点线) and enjoyed the praise that I had never heard (从没听到过).

# Step 3:句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句②③

I still remember the day of last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father.

②用分词作状语改写 Step 2 中的句④

I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired.

③用分词作状语升级 Step 2 中的句⑦

We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

# Step 4:连句成篇

# 【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

How's everything going these days? I'm writing to share my sports experience with you.

I still remember the day of last summer when I went to run a marathon with my father. We set off early in the morning. Unluckily, it began to rain halfway. I got wet all through, feeling cold and tired. So I couldn't help complaining and wanted to give up. Just at that time, my father encouraged me not to give up and put his coat on me softly. He told

me, "We won't see the beautiful scenery unless we reach the destination." His words really cheered me up. We got to the finish line at last, enjoying the praise that I had never heard.

This experience taught me that perseverance is the key to success. Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

#### ○学以致用

假定你是李华,你的英国朋友 Emily 得知你最近 在某项短跑比赛中获得冠军,来信请你介绍一下你的 运动经历。请你给她写一封回信,要点包括:

- 1. 开始运动的时间;
- 2. 运动中遇到的困难;
- 3. 希望实现的运动目标。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:领奖台 podium

# 【参考范文】

Dear Emily,

I am so delighted to hear from you. I was so excited when I stood on the podium again this year.

I won a place in the national team when I was 15 years old and won several championships after that. Hurting my waist again last year, I had to take time off to recover from the injury. It was a long time before my doctor told me that I could return to the game. With my coach's help, I started training again to regain my previous capabilities. To our happiness, I won the gold medal in the first competition of this year. And who knows, maybe I can break a world record one day!

> Yours, Li Hua

#### 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

It was the day of the big cross-country run. Students from seven different primary schools in and around the small town were warming up and walking the route (路线) through thick evergreen forest.

I looked around and finally spotted David, who was standing by himself off to the side by a fence. He was small for ten years old. His usual big toothy smile was absent today. I walked over and asked him why he wasn't with the other children. He hesitated and then said he had decided not to run.

What was wrong? He had worked so hard for this event!

I quickly searched the crowd for the school's coach and asked him what had happened. "I was afraid that kids from other schools would laugh at him," he explained uncomfortably. "I gave him the choice to run or not, and let him decide."

I bit back my frustration (懊恼). I knew the coach meant well—he thought he was doing the right thing. After making sure that David could run if he wanted, I turned to find him coming towards me, his small body rocking from side to side as he swung his feet forward.

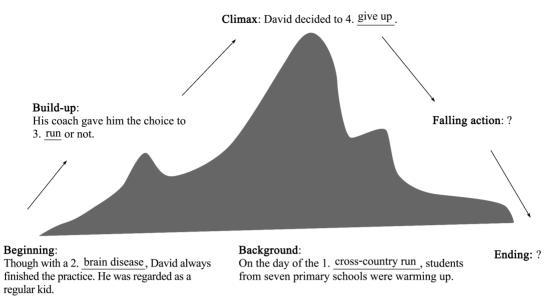
David had a brain disease which prevented him from walking or running like other children, but at school his classmates thought of him as a regular kid. He always participated to the best of his ability in whatever they were doing. That was why none of the children thought it unusual that David had decided to join the cross-country team. It just took him longer—that's all. David had not missed a single practice, and although he always finished his run long after the other children, he did always finish. As a special education teacher at the school, I was familiar with the challenges David faced and was proud of his strong determination.

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about David's determination to participate in a cross-country run despite facing physical challenges.

任务二:梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1:  We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me.	<ol> <li>How did David feel at this moment?         David was filled with sadness, worried that he could not make it.     </li> <li>Faced with the situation, how did I do and say?         I would encourage David to go ahead and believe in himself.     </li> <li>After hearing my words, how did David feel?         He was delighted and decided to give it a try.     </li> </ol>
Paragraph 2:  I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners.	<ol> <li>How did David cope with the challenge?         Though he ran slower than the others, he kept on running and running.     </li> <li>Seeing David's determination to make it to the finish line, what did the audience do?         All present cheered him on and admired his courage and strong will.     </li> <li>What was the result of the run?         He overcame the challenge and finished the cross-country run.     </li> </ol>

	Unit 3 On the move ◀
任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的注意:续写词数应为150左右。	短文。
We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me	
I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners.	

# 【参考范文】

We sat down next to each other, but David wouldn't look at me. I tapped him gently on the shoulder and asked why he decided not to run. Having hesitated for a moment, he replied in a low voice, "You know, my brain disease prevents me running like other children and I am afraid that students from other schools would laugh at me." I looked him straight in the eye, saying, "David, you have worked so hard for this event. There is no need to worry about someone laughing at you. If you really want, just run!" David was lost in thought and kept silent for quite a moment. Then he raised his head with his usual big toothy smile back on his face. "I am going to run," he said firmly. Then the running was about to start.

I watched as David moved up to the starting line with the other runners. The match began with a bang from the starter's gun. While David couldn't run like the other students, he dragged his small body forward, rocking from side to side. I began shouting words of encouragement. Classmates all appeared on the racing track, cheering him on. "Come on! You can make it! We are proud of you!" they shouted enthusiastically. When he finally reached the finish line, all the people present applauded for him. It was David's strong determination and perseverance that made him overcome the challenge and finish the cross-country run.

## 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。

Words and expressions to introduce various types of sports	Write your own sports story to explore the benefits of sports and exercises
On th	e move
Write a short text to illustrate the significance of team spi	rit and encourage more people to participate in sports events

# 答案:略

# 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

# Part 1

Paul and I were on our school basketball team, The Lions. We loved basketball and were both huge fans of the NBA. When we weren't playing on the court which was next to our building, we were watching a game on TV. My favourite player was LeBron James. Paul's favourite player was Tyrone Bogues, a guy who played for the Charlotte Hornets, although we actually agree that they are both champions.

Bogues was only 1.6 metres tall, which had made him the shortest player ever in the NBA. Guess what? Paul was only 1.6 metres tall, too! Paul knew that being shorter than other players meant that he had to practise more. During all those hours of doing jump shots on his own, he used Bogues as his inspiration. Paul once said, "If Bogues could make it, why not me?"

Our coach was not so sure. Paul had to try out many times just for making the team. He was still usually on the bench, being just a replacement, which was really tough on him. Everyone knew Paul had real skills, and was someone who worked really hard and had a strong desire to play for the team. However, Paul didn't get a chance.

This week, The Lions were playing our main competitors, The Bears, a team whose record this season had been perfect. They hadn't lost a single game. It would be a tough one. Paul didn't know he'd soon get the chance that he'd been waiting for.

# Part 2

Suddenly, a player and I crashed into each other. Pain raced through my body. My knee hurt badly. The

team gathered around, looking worried. The last quarter was about to begin, and my team was behind by 10 points.

- "I don't think I can play anymore, coach," I said quietly as the doctor put an ice pack on my knee.
- "No way," the coach replied sharply. "We've got no more players!"
- "What about Paul?" someone suggested.
- "Paul?" said the coach. "He can't play!"
- "Give him a shot, coach!" I said. "What have we got to lose?"
- "That's right," another player said. "We're losing anyway. Let Paul play!"
- "Let me try, coach! I won't let you down!" Paul said.
- "OK, OK!" the coach finally agreed. "Don't let us down, Paul. It's your time to shine."

Paul jumped up and rushed onto the court. And clearly, all the extra hours that he'd spent practising alone paid off. The other team just couldn't keep up with his energy and speed. He made shot after shot, and the crowd couldn't stop clapping and cheering.

When the game ended, our team had won by two points.

"Well," said the coach as he hit Paul on the shoulder, "you've just earned your place on the team, big guy!"

- 1. What is the main reason why Paul didn't get a chance to make the team?
  - A. His coach was not confident about his height.
  - B. He didn't have the skills to play for the team.
  - C. He didn't have a desire to play for the team.
  - D. He didn't practise as hard as his teammates.
- 2. What can be inferred from the last two paragraphs?
  - A. The teammates doubted Paul's ability.
  - B. Paul won the coach's approval.
  - C. The Bears was unable to beat The Lions.
  - D. Paul was happy to be a replacement of The Lions.
- 3. What is the right order of the events in Part 2?
  - a. One player got hurt and could not play.
  - b. Paul jumped and rushed onto the court.
  - c. "Give him a shot, coach!"
  - d. The team had won by 2 points.
  - e. "Let me try, coach! I won't let you down!"
  - A. abedc
- B. acebd
- C. bcebd
- D. bebcd

- **4.** What is the main idea of the passage?
  - A. A great athlete won't let anybody down.
  - B. The shorter a player is, the better he plays.
  - C. How Paul earned his place on the team by practising hard.
  - D. An unexpected basketball game.

# 答案:1~4 ABBC

# 单元测试卷(三)

(考查范围: Unit 3 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

#### A

If you are planning a trip and have no idea where to go and what to do, we shall present a list of the top 4 places to visit in China.

# The Terracotta Army

The Terracotta Army has stayed underground for over 2,000 years. It was in 1974 that some farmers who were digging a well discovered one of the best archeological sites on this planet. Along with the Great Wall, it became the World Cultural Heritage in 1987.

## The Forbidden City

The Forbidden City used to be a place where no ordinary people were granted entry. It is an extravagant (奢侈的) example of ancient Chinese architecture, which has more than 8,000 rooms with golden roofs that are painted yellow and red and beautifully designed. The Forbidden City was also the imperial (皇帝的) palace of the Ming and Qing dynasties. 24 emperors lived there. Now it is known as the Palace Museum and is the World Cultural Heritage.

## Jiuzhai Valley

Located in southwest China in the mountains of Sichuan Province, Jiuzhai Valley is a beautiful place with waterfalls, villages, trails, and clear icy lakes in colours of green and blue. While off-the-trail exploring and hiking are allowed to some extent, many people choose to take the park's hop-on hop-off bus which stops in the main scenic (风景优美的) areas and allows the travellers to decide which direction they want to explore by walking.

# The Great Wall

The Great Wall of China is a place that everyone must have heard of. It is an admirable achievement of ancient defensive architecture. The wall stretches over 13,000 miles and is easily accessible to any travellers in Beijing.

- 1. Who first discovered the Terracotta Army?
  - A. Travellers.
- B. Scientists.
- C. Archeologists.
- D. Farmers.
- D 细节理解题。根据 The Terracotta Army 中的 "It was in 1974 that some farmers who were digging a well discovered one of the best archeological sites on this planet."可知,首先发现兵马俑的是农民。故选 D。
- 2. What's special about Jiuzhai Valley?
  - A. One can explore and hike where they want.
  - B. No ordinary visitors were granted entry.
  - C. It's the only destination of the four for a natural landscape.
  - D. The park's hop-on hop-off buses are free for the travellers.
  - C 细节理解题。根据 Jiuzhai Valley 中的 "Located in southwest China in the mountains of Sichuan Province, Jiuzhai Valley is a beautiful place with waterfalls, villages, trails, and clear icy lakes in colours of green and blue."可知,九寨沟是四大旅游胜地中唯一的自然景观。故选 C。
- **3.** How many World Cultural Heritages are mentioned in the passage?

A. One.

B. Three.

C. Two.

D. Four.

B 推理判断题。根据 The Terracotta Army 中的 "Along with the Great Wall, it became the World Cultural Heritage in 1987."可知,长城和兵马俑被列为世界文化遗产;根据 The Forbidden City 中的"The Forbidden City was also the imperial (皇帝的) palace of the Ming and Qing dynasties. 24 emperors lived there. Now it is known as the Palace Museum and is the World Cultural Heritage."可知,故宫也被列为世界文化遗产。综上可知,文中提到了三处世界文化遗产。故选B。

В

When Thomas Panek lost his eyesight more than 25 years ago, the anxious runner doubted he would ever pursue his lifelong passion again. "It was too scared to run," he said.

Indeed, although Panek had been running since high school, the idea of running blind seemed altogether too difficult. But he did manage to keep his dream alive—with the help from human guides who assisted him on each run.

Even so, he lost the real joy of the run—the thrill of independence that comes from completing a course on his own. "When you're tied to another person, it's no longer your own race," the 48-yearold said. "The independence isn't quite there."

But Panek found a friend-indeed, man's best friend—who would help him regain that sense of purpose. Not only did Panek rediscover his love for running, but, along the way, he founded Guiding Eyes for the Blind, an organisation dedicated to providing service dogs for the visually damaged.

On March 16, Gus glided across the finish line with his human at the New York City Half Marathon. At that moment, they were both recorded into the history books. Panek, who finished the course in a little more than two hours and 20 minutes, became the first blind runner to complete the race led by dogs.

Panek pointed out that it wasn't just Gus who provided the wind beneath his running shoes. In all, three guide dogs helped him see his way to the finish line. Siblings Westley and Waffle picked up the early parts of the course, each running between five and eight kilometres of the 21-kilometre race. Along the way, the whole team got plenty of support from event host New York Road Runners.

With retirement approaching, it would be the faithful yellow labrador's last race. But for Panek, the road ahead remains long and bright-not only for him, but for anyone with a disability who still hopes to run down a dream.

- 4. What happened to Panek 25 years ago?
  - A. He gave up his dream.
  - B. He became blind.
  - C. He found running blind easy.
  - D. He won the first prize.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"When Thomas Panek lost his eyesight more than 25 years ago..." 可知,25年前,Panek失明了。故选B。
- 5. What can we know from the passage?

- A. Gus is an instructor of Panek.
- B. Gus is a good marathon competitor.
- C. Gus is a dog for the visually damaged.
- D. Gus is an organiser of the running event.
- 细节理解题。根据第五段的内容可知,当他们 冲向终点时,Panek 成为第一个在狗狗引导下完成 该比赛的盲人选手,由此可知,Gus是一只导盲犬。 故选C。
- 6. Which of the following can best describe Panek?
  - A. Firm and positive.
  - B. Kind and confident.
  - C. Calm and faithful.
  - D. Honest and ambitious.

A 推理判断题。根据文章主要讲述了 Panek 在 失明后利用各种方法重拾自己对跑步的热爱,并在 导盲犬的帮助下坚持跑步的故事,尤其是根据第二 段中的"But he did manage to keep his dream alive-with the help from human guides who assisted him on each run."及第四段中的"Not only did Panek rediscover his love for running, but, along the way, he founded Guiding Eyes for the Blind, an organisation dedicated to providing service dogs for the visually damaged."可推知, Panek 是一个坚定且积极的人。故选 A。

- 7. What does the passage mainly tell us?
  - A. Failure is the mother of success.
  - B. Where there is a will, there is a way.
  - C. All things are difficult before they are easy.
  - D. We can make a difference by helping others.
  - B 主旨大意题。文章讲述了 Panek 失明后,在导 盲犬的帮助下依然坚持跑步,最终以2小时20多 分钟的时间跑完了纽约半程马拉松,成为第一位由 导盲犬带领完成这一比赛的盲人赛跑者。是他的 坚持不懈,给他带来了成功。由此可知,本文主要 告诉了我们一个道理:有志者,事竟成。故选 B。

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

People do physical exercise as part of their healthy lifestyle to get stronger and healthier.

There are three basic modes of physical exercise: flexibility exercise helps the human body in general or its parts in particular to be able to reach farther and bend better; aerobic exercise helps the body work hard for a long time; anaerobic exercise makes the arms and legs stronger.

It has long been known that exercise is not only good for your body, but also for your mind. According to researchers, gymnasts are more likely to be emotionally stable, football players the most outgoing and swimmers the happiest.

The psychological study, which was carried out by experts, also revealed that sports can also offer clues to a person's attitude to charity, reading habits and even their voting intentions. Boxers, for example, are most likely to focus on material possessions in life. Meanwhile, runners tend to be outgoing people who love being the centre of attention. Walkers, a group that includes those who enjoy wandering and cross-country races, are least concerned about other people and like doing things by themselves without interruption from others. Those who play chess are confident when they face challenges and trouble. Those who swim tend to be tidy and charitable. However, according to Mind Lab, 61 percent of adults are fond of helping others regardless of their choice of sports.

The results from this study also show that no matter what kind of person you are, there is the right kind of exercise for you.

- **8.** Which of the following sports belongs to flexibility exercise?
  - A. Running.
- B. Swimming.
- C. Football.
- D. Gymnastics.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"flexibility exercise helps the human body in general or its parts in particular to be able to reach farther and bend better"可知,柔韧性运动是一种拉伸类运动,体操属于该运动。故选 D。
- 9. What can we learn from the text?
  - A. Walkers enjoy loneliness in their lives.
  - B. Boxers tend to ignore wealth in life.
  - C. Runners have great power of concentration.
  - D. Chess players like challenging other people.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第四段第四句可知,步行的 人不关心别人,喜欢在生活中享受孤独。故选 A。
- **10.** Why does the author mention Mind Lab in Paragraph 4?
  - A. To make a contrast.
  - B. To draw a comparison.
  - C. To place an emphasis.
  - D. To give an example.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"However, according to Mind Lab, 61 percent of adults are

- fond of helping others regardless of their choice of sports."可知,作者提到 Mind Lab 的调查是为了与上文的结论形成对比。故选 A。
- 11. Which is the best title for the text?
  - A. How Can You Choose Suitable Sports?
  - B. What Kind of Sports Can Benefit You Most?
  - C. How Can Sports Keep You Mentally Healthy?
  - D. What Does Your Choice of Sports Tell About You?
  - D 标题归纳题。根据第三段第二句、第四段第一句和最后一段的内容可知,文章主要介绍了运动的选择和个人特点之间的联系。所以 D 项最适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

#### D

For people suffering from depression, there's an all-natural treatment they should use—getting more exercise. It could help fight depression, even if people have a genetic risk, new research shows.

For the study, researchers collected information from nearly 8,000 people and found those with related genes (基因) were more likely to have depression over the next two years after examining them. But that was less likely for people who were more active at the study's start, even if they had a family history of depression. Higher levels of physical activity helped protect even those with the highest genetic risk of depression.

Both high-intensity (高强度) exercise and low-intensity activities were associated with a reduced risk of depression. Adding four hours of exercise a week could lower the risk of a new episode (一段经历) of depression by 17%, according to the study. "Our findings strongly suggest that, when it comes to depression, being physically active has the potential to remove the added risk of future episodes in individuals who are genetically risky," said lead author Karmel Choi. "On average, about 35 additional minutes of physical activity each day may help people to reduce their risk and protect against future depression episodes."

Depression is a common mental illness globally, with more than 264 million people affected. "Depression is so <u>ubiquitous</u>, and that underlines the need for effective approaches that can impact as many people as possible," Choi said. And mental health and primary care providers can use the

findings to advise patients that there's something meaningful they can do to lower their risk of depression.

- 12. How did the researchers reach their conclusion?
  - A. By analysing a mass of data.
  - B. By conducting genetic research.
  - C. By comparing various levels of activity.
  - D. By tracking the subjects for many years.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第二段第一句可知,研究 人员收集和研究了近8000人的信息,由此可推 知,他们是通过分析大量资料得出结论的。故选 A.
- 13. What does the study show about depression?
  - A. Physical activity betters medical treatment.
  - B. Exercise may decrease and prevent it.
  - C. Different levels of exercise intensity matter the same.
  - D. Exercising 35 minutes daily is the most effective treatment.
  - В 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"Our findings strongly suggest that, when it comes to depression, being physically active has the potential to remove the added risk of future episodes in individuals who are genetically risky..."和"On average, about 35 additional minutes of physical activity each day may help people to reduce their risk and protect against future depression episodes."可知,研究表明体育 锻炼可以帮助人们降低患抑郁症的风险并防止未 来抑郁症的发作。故选B。
- 14. What does the underlined word "ubiquitous" in Paragraph 4 mean?
  - A. Simple.
  - B. Complex.
  - C. Unusual.
  - D. Common.
  - D 词义猜测题。根据上文的"Depression is a common mental illness globally, with more than 264 million people affected."和下文的"and that underlines the need for effective approaches that can impact as many people as possible..."可知, 抑郁症是一种常见的心理疾病,需要采取有效的 方法解决。由此可推测画线词的意思是"常见的; 普遍的",和 common 意思相近。故选 D。
- 15. What is the purpose of the text?
  - A. To discuss a disease.

- B. To introduce a scientific study.
- C. To analyse a genetic risk.
- D. To explain a phenomenon.
- B 推理判断题。纵观全文,尤其是第一段中的 "It could help fight depression, even if people have a genetic risk, new research shows."可知, 文章主要介绍了一项关于锻炼有助于减轻和预防 抑郁症的研究。由此可知,文章的写作目的是介 绍一项科学研究。故选 B。

### Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

For some people, choosing which sports to play throughout high school is hard because they have never really played an organised sport before and aren't sure what they'll enjoy most. 16

17 If you're great at basketball but would rather play football because you think it's more fun, then give it a go (just make sure it's cool with Mum and Dad).

Sports are meant to be fun. 18 What's the worst that can happen? If you get cut, you can always try another sport. And sports like track don't typically cut participants from the team. You can still participate even if you're not in the team for the competition.

Some sports, like baseball or basketball, require every person on the field to be working well together. 19 Sports like tennis, track and field, swimming, gymnastics, and wrestling are all sports where individual performances are tallied (计算) into team scores. \_\_20 However, for the most part it's possible to win a solo event in these sports and still have your team lose, and vice versa (反之 亦然).

No one knows you better than you do. Maybe you enjoy the spotlight. Maybe you get annoyed by the way teammates act. Luckily, there are many individualised sports to choose from.

- A. Many people are attracted to team sports.
- B. Besides swimming, try fishing, sailing, skiing and surfing.
- C. Of course there are exceptions, like relays in track and swimming.
- D. For others it's tough because their friends don't like to play the same sports.
- E. No matter what your problem is, you have to make the decision that is best for you.

- F. If there is a sport you really enjoy but you aren't sure if you can make the team, try out anyway.
- G. Sure, certain people perform much better than others, but superstars don't necessarily make a good team.

### 答案:16~20 DEFGC

### Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Mae ran into Jon before he could run away. Jon fell and Mae piled on top of him. It was a perfect tackle (阻截) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game. I 21 .

While they were in the <u>22</u> for the rugby ball, another player attacked Mae and she fell. The cheer was stuck in my throat. After a few moments, Mae got up and <u>23</u> the game and the game went well. I felt a sense of <u>24</u>.

When Mae, my 13-year-old daughter, first asked if she could play rugby, I was terrified. \_\_25\_\_, I did not like the sport because the game was violent (激烈的) and it had the most \_\_26\_\_ of all school sports.

However, Mae wanted to play rugby so much that she kept asking for my permission whenever I said no. Mae was \_\_27\_\_ and full of confidence. She was strong and \_\_28\_\_ for her age at 170 cm. If she were to \_\_29\_\_ till she turned fifteen, the boys would \_\_30\_\_ over her and be stronger than her. She argued that it might be the only \_\_31\_\_ for her to do well in this sport.

Touched by her determination, I 32 finally. I watched all her matches. I hoped that my 33 at her games would encourage her. I was 34 of her for not giving up the sport.

She loved the sport \_\_35\_\_ there were so many challenges.

- 21. A. whispered
- B. cheered
- C. complained
- D. regretted

B 根据上文的"It was a perfect tackle (阻截) for a rugby (英式橄榄球) game."可知,作者看到后欢呼。故选 B。

- **22.** A. group
- B. name
- C. charge
- D. struggle

D 根据下文的"another player attacked Mae and she fell"可知,当他们在争夺橄榄球时,另一个球员袭击了 Mae,她摔倒了。故选 D。

- **23**. A. began
- B. finished
- C. continued
- D. paused

C 根据上文的"Mae got up"和下文的"the game went well"可知, Mae 站起来继续比赛, 比赛进行得很顺利。故选 C。

- **24.** A. relief
- B. humour
- C. responsibility
- D. failure

A 根据上文的"the game went well"可知,比赛进行得很顺利,所以作者感到如释重负。故选 A。

- 25. A. Additionally
- B. Personally
- C. Luckily
- D. Sadly

B 根据下文的"I did not like the sport"可知,作者个人不喜欢这项运动,空格处意为"就我个人而言"。故选 B。

- 26. A. failures
- B. growth
- C. successes
- D. injuries

D 根据上文的"the game was violent (激烈的)" 可知,比赛很激烈,而且在所有学校运动中受伤人数最多。故选 D。

- 27. A. amazed
- B. determined
- C. excited
- D. confused

B 根据下文的"full of confidence"可知, Mae 很坚定,充满信心。故选 B。

- **28.** A. clever
- B. suitable

C. tall

D. unique

C 根据下文的"at 170 cm"可知,她很高。故选C。

- **29.** A. wait
- B. organise
- C. injure
- D. change

A 根据下文的"till she turned fifteen"可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高。故选 A。

- **30.** A. turn
- B. watch

C. get

D. tower

D 根据下文的"over her and be stronger than her"可知,如果等到十五岁,男孩子们就会比她高,比她强壮。故选 D。

- 31. A. chance
- B. advice
- C. balance
- D. space

A 根据下文的"for her to do well in this sport" 可知,她认为这可能是她在这项运动中取得好成绩的唯一机会。故选 A。

- **32.** A. gave up
- B. gave out
- C. gave in
- D. gave away

C 根据下文的"I watched all her matches."可知,被她的决心所感动,作者最终屈服了。故选C。

- 33. A. absence
- B. patience
- C. presence
- D. confidence

C 根据上文的"I watched all her matches."可 知,作者希望自己去看她的比赛能鼓励她,空格处 意为"出席"。故选 C。

**34.** A. proud

B. ashamed

C. afraid

D. tired

A 根据下文的"for not giving up the sport"可 知,作者为她没有放弃这项运动而感到骄傲。故 选A。

35. A. unless

B. although

C. if

D. when

B 上下文为转折关系,应用 although 引导让步 状语从句。故选 B。

Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

When it comes to exercise, less is not more but it's certainly better than none. Physical inactivity makes up nearly 23 percent of all 36. deaths (death) from major chronic (慢性的) diseases, yet almost one of every three Americans spend a lot of time sitting down. They usually say they have no free time 37. for physical activity at all.

Light activity can improve physical and mental well-being. While light activity is good, moderate (适度的) activity is even 38. better (good). And you don't have to head to a gym. As recent studies have suggested, "lifestyle" activities, such as walking, house cleaning and gardening, are as 39. effective (effect) as a structured exercise programme in improving heart function (功能), lowering blood pressure 40. and keeping or losing weight.

In one study, overweight, sedentary (久坐的) middle-aged men and women, 41. who learned behavioural skills to make them more physically active, such as 42. walking (walk) around airports or train stations while waiting for a departure, reduced their body fat percentage and improved their blood pressure and heart function as much as individuals (个人) working out at a 43. fitness (fit) centre.

There are different types of activities in a centre, 44. where people do aerobic and muscle exercise to build up their health. But actually multiple short periods of exercise during the day 45. are (be) nearly as beneficial as one long session. V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假定你是校排球队队长李华,请你写一封英文邮

件,告知你的队友 Chris 球队近期将参加比赛,内容 包括:

- 1. 比赛信息;
- 2. 赛前准备;
- 3. 表达期待。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Chris,

I'm writing to inform you of the upcoming volleyball game that you are supposed to prepare

The game is scheduled to be held in the newly built stadium of our school next Friday afternoon. As a member of the team, you should be well prepared for it. Firstly, please come up with a workout schedule and stick to it so that you can get in shape soon. Secondly, you should attend the team training sessions and meetings with the teammates to make progress together.

Since our school attaches great importance to this game, I hope we can devote ourselves to becoming a stronger team and beat our opponent.

> Yours. Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两 段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I've lived in the new house for a few weeks. While the weather's warm, I take my coffee out to the backyard. It wasn't easy separating from my husband and uprooting the kids from the only home they ever knew. I moved to suburbia, but luckily it wasn't the natural wilderness. There are trails (小 路) in these woods, maintained by the homeowners' association. Everything seemed to be fine, but I wasn't sure if I picked a good place to be our new home until a wander (漫步) in the woods.

One afternoon, curious to know what was in my woods, I put on long pants and boots and announced that I would wander in the woods and find the trail. I would look for signs of life in my woods. My daughter wanted in. My son was busy

showing all his toys to his grandfather, who had come to visit us.

My daughter and I went out. Without much trouble, we found the trail and one of the most amazing trees on the earth. It was like a banyan tree with many trunks shooting out from the ground. My daughter immediately climbed it and declared, "This is the fairy tree!" She threw her arms in the air, and I shot a picture. She was in rain boots and wore a sports suit, looking perfect among the woods. Soon, she found an open space with some fallen trees and declared it the "play area". She climbed the fallen tree trunks and jumped off them, sending up a puff of dust.

We kept going. Unexpectedly, we heard the sound of some children. My daughter practically felt excited at the sound of children's play. We followed the path and found three boys were happily building a wooden house. "Hi!" my daughter shouted. "I'm new here!"

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

	Hearing	a	girl's	voice	, 1	the	three	boys	felt
sur	prised at f	irs	t						
	When w	e ł	nappily	got l	non	ie a	t dusk	, my	dad
and	l son were	w	aiting	for us	wo	rrie	dly.		

# 【参考范文】

Hearing a girl's voice, the three boys felt surprised at first. One of the boys looked my daughter up and down for a few seconds. Then with a bright smile on his face, he asked, "Are you interested in joining us?" My daughter's eyes glittered with delight on hearing this. Together, they collected branches, sticks and leaves and busied themselves building a wooden house. Obviously, they were enjoying themselves. Watching them, I couldn't help thinking woods and kids just belonged together. Time passed quickly. It was almost dark before we finally came back.

When we happily got home at dusk, my dad and son were waiting for us worriedly. I apologised for our coming back so late, but my daughter looked excited. "I have so much fun in our woods today and there are so many secret play areas!" she told her brother proudly. Her brother was so jealous of her that we promised to take him adventuring the next morning. Sensing children's happiness, my uncertainty about moving to the new house finally gave way to a feeling of satisfaction. Anyway, we are in our new home, with our new woods to explore.

# 阶段测试卷

(考查范围: Unit 1—Unit 3 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

### Four Popular Festivals in Liuzhou

If you are a party animal in Liuzhou, join us to explore some of the popular festivals in this area.

### Temple Fair Day

It is believed to be the oldest and largest temple fair day celebrated in Fengshan, Liuzhou. It is an event known to easily attract more than 30,000 people to take part in the parades (游行). It is a day for enjoying temple wishes, dancing to non-stop ethnic (民族的) songs, and tasting lots of local

dishes.

Time: February or March Price: Free

### March 3rd Festival

This is an annual event that takes place every March in Sanjiang County. The festival features a lot of ethnic minority homemade food. You can also expect to enjoy live ethnic music and dances performed by famous local dancers.

Time: March 3rd Price: 3 yuan

# Liuzhou Marathon Festival

This event started years ago. Currently, it is an attractive weekend that sees attendance exceed

12,000 people. During the festival, participants take part in exciting activities, with the major ones like the funny marathon, and food sales.

Time: April Price: 12 yuan

#### **Dragon Boat Show**

Longtan Park is usually the place of Dragon Boat Show—a festival for boating lovers that occurs in May. It is the largest dragon boat show in Liuzhou. A great number of people will be there at that time. Welcome to join the show.

Time: May Price: 5 yuan

- 1. What is special about Temple Fair Day?
  - A. It is for boating lovers.
  - B. It lasts two months.
  - C. It's free of charge.
  - D. It started 10 years ago.
  - 细节理解题。根据 Temple Fair Day 中的 "Price: Free"可知, 庙会日可以免费参加。故选  $C_{\circ}$
- 2. What can tourists do at March 3rd Festival?
  - A. Buy some books.
  - B. Taste homemade food.
  - C. Watch boat shows.
  - D. Join a parade.
  - B 细节理解题。根据 March 3rd Festival 中的 "The festival features a lot of ethnic minority homemade food."可知,在三月三那天,游客可以品 尝家庭自制食物。故选B。
- 3. Which of the following festivals takes place in April?
  - A. Liuzhou Marathon Festival.
  - B. March 3rd Festival.
  - C. Dragon Boat Show.
  - D. Temple Fair Day.
  - A 细节理解题。根据 Liuzhou Marathon Festival 中的"Time: April"可知,柳州马拉松节在4月举 办。故选A。

R

Climate change is a big problem humans are facing. How can we deal with it? Reducing carbon emissions (碳排放) is important. But what if we could capture carbon dioxide (CO2) from the air and use it to do other things?

Recently, SpaceX founder Elon Musk said that his company is working on a new programme. It's going to take CO2 out of the air and turn it into rocket fuel.

"It will not only be good for Earth, but will also be important for Mars," Musk said. The air on Mars is made up of 95 percent CO<sub>2</sub>. If we could turn CO<sub>2</sub> into fuel, we could travel the long journey from Mars back to Earth in the future.

The idea may sound strange but it's not totally crazy. There are already some technologies that might help with this. According to Di-Jia Liu, a chemist at the Argonne National Laboratory in the US, the carbon atoms (原子) in CO2 and the hydrogen (氢) atoms in water can be combined to make methane (甲烷) or ethanol (乙醇). They could be used as fuel. If we do this on Mars, energy from the sun might be used as a catalyst (催化剂).

The idea will also make space travel more ecofriendly. "If the CO2-based fuel could be used in a rocket launch, we could prevent 715 tons of CO<sub>2</sub> from being emitted into the air," said Stafford Sheehan from Air Company, a US company that focuses on CO<sub>2</sub> capture technologies.

- **4.** What is SpaceX working on?
  - A. Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.
  - B. Building a new rocket.
  - C. Turning CO2 into fuel.
  - D. Travelling long distances on Mars.
  - C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,SpaceX 正在研究的是将二氧化碳转化为燃料。故选C。
- 5. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?
  - A. How CO2 can be turned into fuel.
  - B. Where CO<sub>2</sub> can be taken.
  - C. Why the programme should be done on Mars.
  - D. How the energy from the sun can be used.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"the carbon atoms(原子) in CO2 and the hydrogen (氢) atoms in water can be combined to make methane (甲 烷) or ethanol (乙醇). They could be used as fuel. If we do this on Mars, energy from the sun might be used as a catalyst (催化剂)"可知,本段 讲述了把二氧化碳转化为燃料的相关化学原理。

故选A。

- **6.** What can we learn from what Stafford Sheehan said?
  - A. Scientists use 715 tons of CO<sub>2</sub> to launch a rocket.
  - B. Rocket launching is an environment-friendly activity.
  - C. There will be no CO<sub>2</sub> emissions anymore.
  - D. SpaceX's idea would be good for the environment.
  - D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"The idea will also make space travel more eco-friendly."可知,这个想法使太空旅行更加环保。所以 SpaceX 将二氧化碳转化为燃料的想法对环境有好处。故选 D。
- 7. Which is the best title for the text?
  - A. Visit Space with CO<sub>2</sub>
  - B. Climate Change We Face
  - C. Space Travel in the Future
  - D. A New Programme on Mars

A 标题归纳题。根据全文内容,尤其是第二、三段的内容可知,文章主要介绍了 SpaceX 正在研究如何将空气中的二氧化碳转化为火箭燃料,如果能成功,该燃料将用于火星到地球的旅行。所以 A 项"使用二氧化碳参观太空"适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

C

The first day of high school felt like a big adventure, but also a bit terrible. I didn't know how important studying would be, and I didn't have any plans for what I wanted to do later in life.

My friend, Alex, saw that I wasn't really into school. One day, after a boring science class, he talked to me. "You can do better," he said seriously. "You just need to put in some effort." His words made me think.

I started to focus more in class, trying to really understand what the teachers were saying. Alex and I would study together, and he would help me with the difficult parts. Gradually, things that I didn't make sense before started to click.

One day, while we were working on a science problem, I had a moment of understanding. I

realised that learning is not just about getting good marks; it's about exploring new ideas and enjoying the challenge of solving problems. It felt great to make things out.

As time went by, my grades got better, and so did my attitude towards school. I started to think about what I wanted to do when I grew up and made plans for college. I understood that high school was a chance to get ready for my dreams.

Now, I'm thankful for that moment when I realised how important learning is and for Alex's help. It showed me that school is a place to discover what you love and to work towards your goals. I look forward to each day, knowing that every bit of learning brings me closer to becoming the person I want to be.

- **8.** What do we know about the author from Paragraph 1?
  - A. He was excited and ready.
  - B. He made no plans for the future.
  - C. He played an adventurous game.
  - D. He wanted to challenge himself.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"I didn't have any plans for what I wanted to do later in life"可知,作者在高中第一天没有为将来做计划。故选B。
- 9. What did Alex do to help the author?
  - A. He gave the author extra homework.
  - B. He made science classes more interesting.
  - C. He encouraged the author to work harder.
  - D. He made efforts to change the author's interest.
  - C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"One day, after a boring science class, he talked to me. 'You can do better,' he said seriously. 'You just need to put in some effort.' His words made me think." 可知, Alex 注意到了作者对学习缺乏兴趣,激励他更加努力,这使得作者的态度发生了转变。故选 C。
- 10. What made the author see the value of learning?
  - A. Getting good marks.
  - B. A talk with a teacher.
  - C. Visiting an ideal college.

- D. Solving a science problem.
- D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"One day, while we were working on a science problem, I had a moment of understanding."可知,当作者与 Alex 一起解决一个科学问题时,他的观点发生了 变化——他意识到了学习的价值。故选 D。
- 11. Which would be the best title for the text?
  - A. The Journey to Loving Learning
  - B. The Importance of Studying Hard
  - C. Discovering My Future Work
  - D. My Best Friend in High School

A 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容以及最后一 段中的"Now, I'm thankful for that moment when I realised how important learning is and for Alex's help."可知,本文讲述了作者在刚上高 中时对学习缺乏重视,同时也没有对未来的规划, 但在好友 Alex 的鼓励和帮助下,他逐渐认识到学 习的重要性,开始享受探索新知的过程,并为自己 的未来积极规划。所以"爱上学习之旅"适合作为 本文的标题。故选A。

Travel is one of the most exciting experiences that a person can have. Imagine how Italian traveller Marco Polo must have felt when he found himself on Chinese soil, seeing a way of life quite different from anything he'd seen before.

And how unbelievable must it have been to listen to Zhang Qian when he returned to China from his journey through Central Asia and West Asia? His brain must have been packed with everything he'd seen and heard, leading to the founding of the Silk Road.

Some people have travelled all over the world, and travel is a way of life to them. They perhaps know what to expect before they travel. That's why the best travel is when it's for the first time. Imagine a person who has always wanted to travel to the United States. Of course, they've probably seen the White House a thousand times on TV, and all the other famous sights. But none of that would compare to the thrill of looking out of the cabin window as the plane lands, watching the cities and streets of the real America come into view.

Although travel is often just for recreation, it's also educational. We may not know that we are getting education, but we still are.

We're learning every day: new words in a new language, new people, and new ways of life. But this learning takes place in the school of the world, not in the classroom. One of the lessons we learn is undoubtedly a moral one. As we get to know foreign places, we come to understand that there are many different ways to live, and that the way we live isn't necessarily the best way.

- 12. Why does the author use Marco Polo and Zhang Qian as examples?
  - A. To explain how the Silk Road was founded.
  - B. To describe important cultural exchanges in history.
  - C. To show how the way people travel has changed.
  - D. To present travel as an amazing experience.
  - D 推理判断题。根据第一、二段的内容可知,作 者先提到旅行是最令人兴奋的经历之一,然后将 马可·波罗和张骞的旅行经历作为例子,想象他 们踏上异国土地的美妙感受。由此推知,作者提 到两人是为了表明旅行是一种奇妙的体验。故选  $D_{\circ}$
- 13. By saying "the best travel is when it's for the first time", what does the author mean?
  - A. One's first trip is usually the most challenging.
  - B. People are eager to satisfy their curiosity.
  - C. There is always much to learn on one's first trip.
  - D. People make better preparations for their first
  - B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,当旅 行变成一种生活方式时,人们可能对旅行中发生 的事早已有预期,但初次旅行会让人的好奇得以 满足,使人兴奋。由此可知,作者说这句话是指初 次旅行时人们渴望满足自己的好奇心。故选B。
- 14. What does the underlined word "recreation" in Paragraph 4 probably mean?
  - A. Learning. B. Knowledge.
  - C. Fun. D. Risk.

C 词义猜测题。根据前面表示让步关系的 "Although"和 画 线 词 的 下 文 "it's also educational. We may not know that we are getting education, but we still are"可知,此处指 旅行不仅仅是为了娱乐,画线部分意为"娱乐;消 遣",与 fun 意思相近。故选 C。

- **15.** According to the last two paragraphs, what does the author believe?
  - A. A foreign journey may raise people's cultural understanding.
  - B. Travelling improves people's confidence in their lifestyle.
  - C. Travelling should be included in formal education.
  - D. There is more to learn from adventures than in classrooms.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的"it's also educational"和最后一段中的"One of the lessons we learn is undoubtedly a moral one. As we get to know foreign places, we come to understand that there are many different ways to live, and that the way we live isn't necessarily the best way."可知,作者认为出国旅行可以提升人们对文化的理解,以更加开放的心态对待不同的文化。故选 A。

### Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Music is a major part of our lives. We meet music almost everywhere, from car rides and homes, to fierce workouts in the gym, or even the movies and TV shows we watch. Most people enjoy listening to music and often state that they can't live without it. But why is that? 16.

It improves sleep quality. <u>17</u>. Low and soft music works just as well as sleeping pills. Research has found that listening to music at various times promotes better sleep patterns for people and even creates more restful sleep.

\_\_\_\_\_18\_\_\_. Have you ever wondered why there is always music playing in the gym or why people can't go on runs without their headphones? Simply put, music serves as the motivation for working out harder. It's also shown that listening to music can increase endurance.

It decreases stress and anxiety. Are you ever worried or anxious about something and don't know what to do? \_\_\_\_\_, even during highly stressful or painful events.

It may help with memory. When studying or doing the homework, do you ever find yourself moving your head to some music? Research shows that music enjoyment helps with learning and memory.

It improves your mood. <u>20</u>. Studies show that music helps put people in a better mood and helps them keep in touch with their feelings.

Whether you've realised it or not, listening to your favourite songs provides your mind and body with more than just the enjoyment of the songs. So keep on listening!

- A. It helps with exercising
- B. Music is a necessary part of human life
- C. Listening to music can calm people down
- D. If you're feeling down, music may be the perfect cure
- E. It provides several health benefits that many are unaware of
- F. It brings general pleasure to our lives in several different aspects
- G. Listening to music has been shown to treat constant wakefulness, especially for college students

### 答案:16~20 EGACD

# Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Whenever our teachers or parents asked about our hobbies in our childhood, my friends and I would always express our love for reading. However, with the development of high technology, our lives are gradually \_\_21\_ with electronic screens of all sizes. They attract our attention like magnets (磁铁) and gradually \_\_22\_ us from the world of books.

There was a time when I felt like my life went downhill, and with increased <u>23</u> from school, physical tiredness and emotional burdens (负担), I had to watch short <u>24</u> to distract (分散) myself from those troubles.

This situation changed when one day I <u>25</u> a

book called The Grapes of Wrath by a US writer. When I opened the cover and started reading, I felt like being hit 26 on my head. The wonderful story and beautiful writing attracted me. Although the characters in the book face 27 survival challenges, they still try to live in hard times and struggle for their dreams. This 28 spirit deeply inspired me, allowing me to gradually 29 my confidence in the future.

Now I carry this book either at the dining table or during school breaks. As a student who has a(n) 30 of making films, this book also gave me creative 31 . The historical scenes described in the book and the deep human nature 32 within opened a door to the hall of art for me, allowing me to understand that reading can not only 33 the spirit, but also cause creativity.

Why should we choose to ignore such 34 like this book? Finally, I would like to appeal to my peers to protect our eyes and minds, and make 35 choices between books and screens.

- 21. A. described
- B. filled
- C. limited
- D. examined

B 根据下文的"with electronic screens of all sizes"可知,此处表达的意思是生活中充斥着电子 屏幕,即被它们占据。故选B。

- 22. A. protect
- B. delight
- C. distance
- D. free

C 根据上文的"They attract our attention like magnets (磁铁)..."和下文的"us from the world of books"可知,电子屏幕吸引了人们的注意力, 由此可推断出这导致人们与书籍世界之间的距离 变大,即远离书籍。故选 C。

- 23. A. honour
- B. danger
- C. sorrow
- D. pressure

D 根据下文的"physical tiredness and emotional burdens"以及"from school"可知,这里指的是来 自学校的学业压力。故选 D。

- **24.** A. videos
- B. notices
- C. emails
- D. plans

A 根据上文的"I had to watch short"可知,通过 观看东西来分散注意力,结合常识,在电子设备上 最可能观看的是视频。故选A。

- 25. A. put away
- B. came across
- C. handed out
- D. complained about

B 根据下文的"a book called The Grapes of Wrath by a US writer"可知,这里是说作者偶然 遇到了这本书,改变了之前的状态。故选 B。

- 26. A. hard
- B. still
- C. ever
- D. early

A 根据上文的"I felt like being hit"和下文的 "on my head"可知,这本书给作者的冲击很大,感 觉像是被重重地击中了头部,应用 hard 形容这种 强烈的感受。故选A。

- 27. A. acceptable
- B. strange
- C. severe
- D. ordinary

C 根据下文的"survival challenges"可知,他们 面对的挑战是严峻的。故选C。

- **28.** A. false
- B. disappointing
- C. romantic
- D. positive

D 根据上文的"Although the characters in the book face 27 survival challenges, they still try to live in hard times and struggle for their dreams."可知,这是一种积极向上的精神。故选  $D_{\circ}$ 

- 29. A. repeat
- B. reset
- C. regain
- D. review

C 根据上文的"spirit deeply inspired me"和下 文的"my confidence in the future"可知,作者受 到激励且生活状态发生改变,由此可以推断出这 里是指作者重新获得了对未来的信心。故选C。

- 30. A. request
- B. instruction
- C. fortune
- D. dream
- D 根据下文的"making films"可知,这是作者的 一个梦想或目标。故选 D。
- **31.** A. inspiration
- B. identity
- C. attention
- D. invitation

A 根据上文的"this book also gave me creative" 可知,这本书给予了作者创作方面的灵感。故选 A.

- 32. A. refused
- B. shown
- C. questioned
- D. damaged

B 根据上文的"the deep human nature"和下文 的"within opened a door to the hall of art for me"可知,这里是指书中展示或体现了深刻的人 性。故选B。

**33.** A. replace

B. comfort

C. end

D. gather

B 根据上文的"reading can not only"和下文的 "the spirit"可知,阅读能够滋养或安慰人的心灵。 故选 B。

34. A. lessons

B. pains

C. promises

D. treasures

D 根据下文的"like this book"可知,作者从这本书中收获颇多,这里将这本书比喻为宝藏。故选D。

**35.** A. wise

B. informal

C. casual

D. slow

A 根据下文的"choices between books and screens"可知,作者鼓励大家多读书,少受屏幕干扰,这是一种明智的选择。故选 A。

### Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Visiting the Xi'an City Wall is a must-do experience for anyone exploring Xi'an. As the ancient capital of China, it is home to one of the most well-protected city 36. walls (wall) in the world. Whether you choose to walk, cycle, or take a guided tour, the Xi'an City Wall offers 37. an unforgettable journey through ancient China's military and architectural history.

Xi'an was a walled city in the beginning, and even today the wall 38. is considered (consider) a landmark (地标) dividing the city into the inner part and the outer part. The city wall is massive—tall, long and thick. The South Gate and North Gate are the two main entrances to the inner city. The city 39. itself (it) is neatly arranged along the city wall.

The wall, **40.** which was built in 1370 under Emperor Hongwu of the Ming Dynasty, was designed **41.** to protect (protect) Xi'an. The design is both practical and defensive, **42.** with a river surrounding the wall.

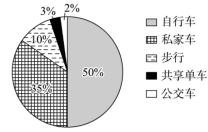
The best time to visit Xi'an City Wall 43. depends (depend) on the season. The spring months of March to May and autumn months of September to November are good 44. because/since the weather is perfect for walking or cycling. Summer can be hot, so bring water and sunscreen if

you plan to visit during the hotter months. Winter, on the other hand, can be cold, but it's much quieter, **45**. offering (offer) a peaceful and less crowded experience.

Ⅴ. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你校英文报正在开展以"Green Travel"为题的讨论。请根据图表中的调查结果写一篇英语短文投稿,内容包括:



学生出行常用交通工具统计图

- 1. 对学生出行常用交通工具的现状描述;
- 2. 对调查结果的评论;
- 3. 你的建议。

注意:词数应为80左右。

#### **Green Travel**

There are many ways	we	can	choose	from	to
travel to and from school.					

# 【参考范文】

# Green Travel

There are many ways we can choose from to travel to and from school. As is shown in the pie chart, the most popular transportation among students is cycling, accounting for 50%. Private cars come in second place with 35%, while walking only makes up 10%. Only a small percentage of students choose shared bicycles or public transportation.

While it's great to see a high percentage of students using bicycles, we should also consider the impact of private cars on the environment. Cars give out harmful gases that contribute to air pollution and climate change.

From my point of view, we should try to reduce

our dependence on cars and encourage the use of more environment-friendly transportation methods. Small changes in our daily lives can make a big difference.

### 第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两 段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

"What am I doing wrong?" Jasmine Wilson thought to herself as she heavily breathed. Her breathing could be heard from nearby but was drowned out by the firm steps of several pairs of feet hitting the ground, each desperately pushing forward to get to the finishing line before the other. It was her first track meet, and she had almost given up midway through the race.

She didn't know why she had decided to choose track and field as an after-school activity. As she tried to think of a reason why she had chosen to do a sport that requires a lot of hard training instead of something easier, she assumed that she had simply wanted to try it out.

Track practice was much harder than she had expected and very exhausting. At least, that's what it felt like to her. When she observed her teammates, they seemed to run effortlessly. She wanted to be like them, but it was difficult.

"Ms Wilson, do you have a goal in mind?" Betty Jones, the coach of the track team, asked Jasmine one day after practice. "I just want you to think about that. What are you running for? Who are you running for? What will you get out of this experience, and how will that help your overall goal? These are questions that you really need to consider, Ms Wilson." The older woman placed a hand on Jasmine's shoulder with a firm look. "You don't have to answer me right now, but I look forward to hearing your answers."

At the race, small beads of sweat ran down the sides of Jasmine's flushed face and dripped onto the faded letters of the high school track team's uniform, which was close to her skin. Jasmine could barely focus on the present moment because her heart was pounding too loud in her ears.

Then she heard someone ask, "Wilson! Ms Wilson, are you all right?" The familiar voice brought her back to her senses.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

	When she loo	kec	d up,	it was	the	coach	of	their
tear	m, Betty Jones.							
	Jasmine took	a	deep	breath	and	sudde	enly	felt
full	of energy.							

# 【参考范文】

When she looked up, it was the coach of their team, Betty Jones. It was then that Jasmine twitched her mouth with tears and sweat on her face and told her that, she couldn't move an inch. No sooner had she uttered the last syllable than Betty gently stroked her head. "Do you still remember the questions that I asked you the other day?" Betty encouraged her, adding, "Confronted with tiredness, you are supposed to beat yourself with determination as well as persistence, which should be your ultimate goal of running." With her words echoing in her ears, Jasmine plucked up courage to give it a try, determined and motivated!

Jasmine took a deep breath and suddenly felt full of energy. Puffing and panting, she dragged her legs with all her strength, moving towards the finishing line. With her heart thumping furiously and pulse racing, she dashed as swiftly as she could in the last 50 metres. Instantly she reached the finishing line, and thunderous applause erupted. Betty embraced her in a big hug. It was then that Jasmine shed tears of joy mingled with appreciation. Had it not been for the case, she wouldn't have realised the goal that she was running for-beating herself with steely will and determination.

Unit 4

# Stage and screen

$\vdash$	单元概览	<b>О</b>	l																		

# ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is stage and screen. The unit will present multi-modal texts such as stories and film reviews. This unit starts with introducing different kinds of stage performance forms and TV programmes, then you will read a story "When HAMLET meets PEKING OPERA" to raise awareness of the charm of traditional Chinese art. Then you will have the chance to listen to the cultural activities about the Music Festival. Next you will learn to write a movie review by reading the text "Good Book, Bad Movie?". In the end, you are expected to create a great living theatre about life to form the views on cultural activities. Through this unit, you are expected to figure out the differences and integration of Chinese and foreign cultures, to appreciate Chinese and foreign cultural activities by recognising cultural diversity.

# ◇ 学习目标

核心素养	具体要求							
		词汇	能正确使用与"舞台艺术"主题相关的单词和词组。					
		语法	能恰当使用现在分词作状语表达观看表演和参观的感受。					
	语言	语篇	能围绕"舞台艺术"的主题语境内容,基于单元提供的多模态语篇,综合运用各种					
	知识	后	语言技能,读懂语篇内容,深入理解中外文化活动。					
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论中外文化活动,恰当使用现在分词作状语,能书面表达自					
		石刀	己对某文娱表演活动的观点。					
语言能力		听	听关于"音乐节"的对话,了解音乐节的相关事宜,思考在不同文化背景和情景下					
10 日配刀		//	应如何对待音乐节。					
		说	能谈论与舞台有关的话题,且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用现在分词作状					
	语言	<i>ν</i> ι	语,使表达更加准确、自然。					
	技能		1. 阅读个人故事,了解京剧的鲜明特点,体会中华传统艺术的魅力;					
		读	2. 阅读影评,深入思考文学作品和影视改编的关系,初步学习影评的文体特点和					
			写作手法。					
		写	能正确运用现在分词作状语,并在真实语境中加以运用。					

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过阅读,从文章中提取事实和细节,并基于这些信息推导出合理的结论。
文化意识	了解中外文化的差异与融合,体会文化多样性,理解中外文化活动的特点。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

# ○ 必备知识

必背单词	opera, movement, aspect, female, technique, transform, energetic, clap, poetry, extremely, ballet, romantic, documentary, absolutely, appealing, definitely, transport, arrangement, brief, turkey, escape, extent, original, awkward, normal, responsibility, absence
重点表达	be full of confidence, get across, transform into, on the edge of one's seat, tick all the right boxes, base on, all too often, result in, put on, live up to, stand out, to some extent, in one's own right, turn to
重点知识	1. so that 引导结果状语从句 2. find+宾语+宾语补足语
单元语法	现在分词作状语
单元 写作	影评

# 探・究・构・建

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

### 学习任务目标

- 1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
- 2. Learn about differences and similarities between opera and Peking Opera.
- 3. Develop reading comprehension abilities by discussing and collaborating with others.

# ○ 自主式预习 ○

### 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

# (一)核心词汇

- 1. technique n. 技巧,手法
- 2. aspect n. 方面
- 3. incredible adj. 难以置信的
- 4. emotion n. 强烈的情感
- 5. combine v. (使)结合,(使)组合
- 6. explosive adj. 爆炸(式)的,爆发的
- 7. movement n. 运动,动作
- 8. female adj. 女(性)的
- 9. energetic adj. 精力充沛的,充满活力的
- **10**. poetry n. 诗,诗歌
- 11. anger n. 愤怒,怒火
- 12. get across 解释清楚,传达

- 13. be familiar with 熟悉
- 14. date back to 追溯到

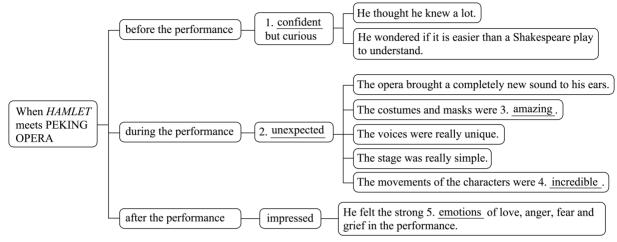
### (二)阅读词汇

- 1. opera n. 歌剧
- 2. version n. 版本
- 3. universe n. 宇宙,天地,万物
- 4. clap v. 拍(手),鼓(掌)
- **5.** string n. (乐器的)弦
- **6.** grief n. 悲痛
- 7. at first 最初;首先
- 8. transform... into... 把······转变成······
- 9. on the edge of one's seat 极为激动
- 10. tick all the right boxes 事情发展如人所愿, 一切顺利

# 任务型课堂

# ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What do we know from the first paragraph?
  - A. The author majored in English literature at university.
  - B. Shakespeare's *Hamlet* is the most popular play in the world.
  - C. The author had seen the Peking Opera before.
  - D. The author thought he knew a great deal about
- 2. What made the author amazed when watching the Peking Opera?
  - A. The traditional Chinese instruments.
  - B. An instrument with two strings called jinghu.
  - C. The costumes and masks of the actors.
  - D. The exaggerated movements and mime.
- 3. What did the author like best about the play?
  - A. The unique voices of the actresses.
  - B. The movements of the performers.
  - C. The music made by Chinese instruments.
  - D. The screen with Chinese characters.
- 4. What does the phrase "on the edge of my seat" probably mean?
  - A. Very anxious.
- B. Really puzzled.
- C. Quite bored.
- D. Very excited.

### 答案:1~4 DCBD

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. At first, I thought what I heard was a violin, but

later I learnt that it was an instrument with two strings called jinghu.

「句子分析]本句是一个由 but 连接的并列复合句。 what 引导宾语从句作 thought 的宾语,其中 what 在从句中又作 heard 的宾语; that 引导的宾语从句 作 learnt 的宾语; called jinghu 作定语修饰 instrument.

[尝试翻译]起初,我以为我听到的是小提琴的声 音,但后来我了解到那是一种有两根弦的乐器,叫 作京胡。

2. Easily my favourite part of the show was how the characters moved on stage.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 how 引 导表语从句。

[尝试翻译]很显然,演出中我最喜欢的部分是角 色在舞台上的动作。

#### ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

1. Why does the author think he knows a lot about Hamlet?

Because one of the author's major subjects is English literature.

2. How could you help a friend overseas understand Peking Opera?

I can introduce some knowledge about Peking Opera such as the orchestra, costumes and masks, stage sets, performers' movements and recommend some excellent Peking Opera works to them.

# Unit 4 课后素养评价(十三)

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Music is not just a set of sounds and rhythms. Its influence on the brain is much deeper than any other human experience. Keep on reading to know all the amazing power of music.

A recent study suggested that preterm (早产的) babies appeared to experience less pain and feed more when listening to music. Experts led by Dr Manoj Kumar of the University of Alberta, Canada, found that music had a beneficial effect on reducing the pain of preterm babies when experiencing painful medical tests. It also appeared to benefit full-term babies during operations.

Many people experiencing brain damage often have speech- and movement-related problems. Music can help them recover from brain injuries. As a different and effective treatment, doctors often advise such patients to listen to good music to improve the parts of the brain responsible for these two functions. When people with neurological (神经系统的) disorders hear a musical beat, it helps them regain a balanced walk.

Though music cannot make deafness disappear, it really can stave off the loss of hearing. There was an experiment involving 163 people, 74 of whom were musicians. Participants were asked to do some listening tests. Musicians heard the sounds better than non-musicians, and this difference got clearer with age. This means that a 70-year-old musician hears better than a 50-year-old non-musician, even in a noisy environment.

Besides, music can mend a broken heart. It is not about a thrown-away love, but about a heart attack. The matter is that music can help people recover from a heart attack or a heart operation by reducing blood pressure, slowing down the heartbeat rate and reducing anxiety. Listening to quality music produces positive emotions, improves the movement of blood and expands blood vessels, thus promoting quick recovery of the whole cardiovascular system.

- 1. How does music affect preterm babies?
  - A. It helps reduce their pain.
  - B. It helps develop their potential in music.
  - C. It helps improve their hearing system.
  - D. It helps repair their neurological system.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"A recent study suggested that preterm (早产的) babies appeared to experience less pain and feed more when listening to music."可知,早产儿在听音乐时,似乎经历的痛苦更少,吃得更多。即音乐可以帮助早产儿减少痛苦。故选 A。
- 2. What does the underlined phrase "stave off" in Paragraph 4 probably mean?
  - A. Lead to.
- B. Increase.
- C. Prevent.
- D. Break into.
- C 词义猜测题。画线短语所在句的句意为"虽然音乐不能使耳聋消失,但它确实可以延缓听力的丧失"。由此可知, stave off 意为"延缓",四个选项中选项 C 意为"阻止;防止",意思最接近。故选 C。
- 3. Why can music mend a broken heart?
  - A. Because it has a positive effect on human body system's work.
  - B. Because it can help people prevent diseases caused by anxiety.
  - C. Because it helps make a person feel optimistic about life.
  - D. Because it can help patients recover in a slow way.
  - A 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后两句可知,音 乐通过对人体系统的工作产生积极的影响来修复 受损的心脏。故选 A。
- 4. Which may be the best title for the text?
  - A. Who Can Benefit from Music

- B. The Best Time to Listen to Music
- C. The Way to Choose Quality Music
- D. How Music Affects Our Mind and Body
- D 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,本文主要介绍了 音乐对人的大脑和身体产生的影响。D项最适合 作本文的标题。故选 D。

# Ⅱ. 七选五

#### **Painting**

The art of creating pictures using colours, shapes and lines is called painting. Museums and galleries show the paintings of professional artists. But painting is also a popular form of entertainment and creative expression.

1 Experienced painters usually use a brush to apply oil paints to a canvas cloth surface. Young painters usually use watercolours on pieces of paper. Very young children may use finger paints to create paintings.

Painters can use their art to tell a story, to express feelings and ideas, or simply to present a pleasing picture. Some common paintings have been famous legends and events in history, as well as scenes from daily life. Artists also paint portraits or pictures of people. 2 All of these types of paintings show the human figure in some way.

Some kinds of paintings do not focus on people.

In landscape painting the focus is on scenes from nature. Artists also paint still objects such as fruit and vegetables. 3 Some artists communicate their ideas through pictures that do not represent any object.

4 Paintings dating back around 15,000 years have been found on the walls of caves in France and Spain. 5 Samples of painted pottery (陶器) from at least 5,000 years ago have been found in China and Iran. The ancient Egyptians decorated their temples with beautiful paintings. People in ancient Greece painted decorative objects such as vases in addition to the walls of temples.

- A. These works are called still-life paintings.
- B. These works can communicate a special feeling.
- C. Humans have been making paintings for thousands of years.
- D. People of all ages create pictures using a variety of materials.
- E. Cave paintings generally show animals that early humans hunted.
- F. The design of a painting is the plan of its lines, shapes and colours.
- G. Sometimes artists make portraits of themselves, which are called self-portraits.

#### 答案:1~5 DGACE

# Section Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

# 学习任务目标

- 1. Learn to use new vocabulary and expressions about Peking Opera.
- 2. Expand vocabulary by learning synonyms, antonyms, and related phrases.
- 3. Identify and understand some important sentence structures used in the text.

# ○ 自主式预习 ○

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. An **opera** is a play with music in which all the words are sung. 歌剧
- 2. Climate and weather affect every **aspect** of our lives. 方面
- 3. The new **version** of this dictionary is not in use yet. 版本
- 4. He went off to change a guitar string.
- 5. All the **female** workers in this factory got a present on March 8th. 女(性)的
- **6.** When you **clap**, you hit your hands together to express appreciation or attract attention.

拍(手),鼓(掌)

- 7. Don't put that glass so near the **edge** of the table. 边缘
- 8. The **poetry** Thoughts in a Tranquil Night (《静夜思》) by Li Bai is popular with people from home and abroad. 诗,诗歌

### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
movement n. 运动, 动作	move v. 移动,搬动;搬家,搬迁;迁移;使感动 n. 行动,举措;移动movable adj. 活动的;可移动的
transform v. 使改观, 使变形,使转化	transformation n. (彻底的)变化,转变;改革
universe n. 宇宙,天 地,万物	universal <i>adj</i> . 宇宙的;全世 界的;共同的;普遍的

**绿表** 

<b>突衣</b>
拓展词汇
energy n. 能量;精力
emotional adj. 情感(上)的;情绪(上)的
angry adj. 生气的, 愤怒 的
technology n. 科技;工艺, 技术,技艺
technical adj. 技术(上)的;技巧的
technician n. 技师;技术人员;巧匠
combination n. 结合;联合; 组合;联合体;结合物
explode v. 爆炸
explosion n. 爆炸;爆发; 激增

# Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. date back to 追溯到
- 2. transform... into ... 把·····转变成······
- 3. at first 最初;首先
- 4. be full of ... 充满,装满……
- 5. get across 解释清楚,传达
- **6.** in fact 实际上,事实上
- 7. combine... with ... 把······与······结合起来

# Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词的完成式作状语 Having seen quite a few productions of Hamlet and

read the play many times, I was full of confidence until the Peking Opera came to town!

我看过好几部《哈姆雷特》的影视作品,这部戏剧 我也读过很多遍了,因此我信心满满——直到城 里来了京剧表演!

2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作后置定语 Starting with an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.

戏一开场,是乐队弹奏中国传统乐器,给我这个西

方人的耳朵带来了一种全新的声音。

3. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

At first, I thought what I heard was a violin, but later I learnt that it was an instrument with two strings called jinghu.

起初,我以为我听到的是小提琴的声音,但后来我 了解到那是一种有两根弦的乐器,叫作京胡。

4. 句型公式:so... that... 引导结果状语从句

The voices themselves sounded really unique some of the female voices were so high that I was sure they could break glass!

那些唱腔听起来非常独特——有的女声音调太高 了,以至于我肯定它们能震碎玻璃!

# 任务型课堂

### 1. transform v. 使改观,使变形,使转化

「教材原文]Using such techniques, the opera had transformed a small stage into the whole universe. 运用这样的技巧,京剧把一个小小的舞台变成了整 个宇宙。

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) transform... into... 把·····转变成······ be transformed from... into... 由 ······转变成 ······

(2)transformation n. (彻底的)变化,转变;改革

### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1) The way in which we work has gone through a complete transformation (transform) in the past ten years.
- 2 The movie transformed her almost overnight from an unknown schoolgirl into a star.
- (2)写作微练

(2024・全国甲卷应用文写作之发言稿)从马车到 今天的便捷交通,中国的交通发生了显著的变化。

From wagons to today's convenient transport, Chinese transport has undergone remarkable transformations.

# 2. combine v. (使)结合,(使)组合

[教材原文] So, if you want to see a show that combines music, singing, drama, poetry and costume design with explosive effect, The Revenge of Prince Zidan ticks all the right boxes!

所以,如果你想看一场融合音乐、演唱、戏剧、诗歌 以及惊艳服饰的表演,《王子复仇记》再合适不过 了!

# [归纳拓展]

- (1)combine... with/and... 把······与······结合起来 combine to do sth. 联合起来做某事
- (2) combination n. 结合;联合;组合;联合体;结合

in combination (with) (与……)联合/结合

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① The firm is working on a new product in combination with several overseas partners.
- The two old schools are to combine to form (form) one big new school.
- 3 Only when combined (combine) with goals can great efforts help people realise their full potential (潜力).
- ④(2024 · 新课标 [ 卷)It contains around 163,000 words, plus word combinations (combine) and idiomatic phrases.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信)把工作和娱乐相结合是一 种很好的生活方式,它不仅可以提高工作效率,而 且对我们也有很大的好处。

Combining work and/with play is a very good lifestyle, which can not only improve work efficiency but also be of great benefit to us.

# 3. get across 解释清楚,传达

[教材原文] The performers of course sang in Chinese, but the music, exaggerated movements and mime helped get the meanings across to the audience.

表演者当然用中文演唱,但音乐、夸张的动作和手 势都能帮助观众理解其中的含义。

# [归纳拓展]

get along with 进展;相处

get away from 摆脱;回避;离开

get away with 被放过;逃脱惩罚

get down to (doing) sth. 着手认真做某事

get in 进入

get into 进入,陷入;染上(坏习惯)

get over 克服

get through 设法联系上(尤指打通电话);(设法) 做完;通过;渡过(难关);用完,耗尽

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①As we all know, our friends lend us a helping hand when we need help and they help us get through difficult situations.
- ② If we can get <u>over</u> present difficulties, then everything should be all right.
- ③ How can I get it <u>across</u> to you how important this is?
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之情节发展)做完实验后,他开始着手准备下周的演讲。

Having finished the experiment, he got down to preparing for the next week's speech.

②(应用文写作之建议信)听说你和同学相处有困难,我想给你一些建议。

Learning you have difficulty getting along with your classmates, I'd like to offer you some advice.

#### 4. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

[教材原文]... some of the female voices were so high that I was sure they could break glass!

……有的女声音调太高了,以至于我肯定它们能震碎玻璃!

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) so... that... 如此 ······以至于 ······

$$\left\{ egin{array}{l} adj./adv. \\ adj.+a(n)+可数名词 \\ 单数 \\ many/few+可数名词 \\ 复数 \\ much/little(少)+不可数 \\ 名词 \end{array} 
ight\}$$

(2) such... that... 如此……以至于……

$$\{a(n)+adj.+$$
可数  
名词单数  
 $\{adj.+$ 可数名词  
 $\{adj.+$ 不可数名词

# ---名 师 点 拨 ■■■■

so/such... that... 结构中,so/such... 置于句首时,主句用部分倒装,从句不倒装。

- So cold is it that you can't go outside.
- Such a difficult problem is it that I find it hard to solve.

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①There were so many goods bought on this day that the delivery time was long.
- ②Besides, I have <u>such</u> a good command of English that I am elected as the assistant to my English teacher.
- ③All the Chinese paintings on display are <u>so</u> vivid that I could hardly tell whether they are living or just painted.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之推荐信)我写信推荐这本书,因为 它是用如此简单的英语写的,以至于初学者很容易 理解。

I'm writing to recommend the book because it is written in such easy English that beginners can easily understand it.

②(读后续写之动作描写)那只小熊幼崽玩得太人神了,都没有察觉到有人正在靠近。

So absorbed was the bear cub in playing that it wasn't aware that someone was approaching.(so 位于句首的倒装句)

# 多义词汇 专练

In the future, the team hopes to develop a **version** of the technology that can be sprayed onto plant leaves in a one-off treatment that would last the plant's lifetime.

A. n. 改编形式,改写本

B. n. 变体;变种

C. n. (从不同角度的)说法

# Unit 4 课后素养评价(十四)

# Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. We should pay attention to combining listening with/and speaking in learning spoken English.
- 2. Although the tradition of drinking tea dates back to 3,000 BC in China, it was not until the mid-17th century in the UK that the concept of "afternoon tea" appeared.
- 3. Not having received (receive) any letter from him, I gave him a call.
- 4. Mr Green is energetic (energy) though he is in his seventies.
- 5. Loose clothing gives you greater freedom of movement (move).
- 6. He was filled with anger (angry) at the way he had been treated.
- 7. The artist combines different techniques (technique) in the same painting.
- 8. They find it important to give their children emotional (emotion) support.

### Ⅱ. 短语填空

get... across; on the edge of one's seat; date back to; transform... into; combine... with

- 1. The game had the crowd on the edge of their
- 2. It is said that Chinese dumplings date back to the Southern and Northern Dynasties.
- 3. As we all know, solar energy can be transformed into power.
- 4. My sister working in a kindergarten often uses pictures and body language to get her point across to the children.
- 5. If you can combine your ability with hard work, you should be very successful.

### Ⅲ. 补全句子

- 1. 由于受到如此严重的污染,现在这条河无法再作 为这一物种的栖息地了。(现在分词作原因状语) Having suffered such heavy pollution, now the river no longer serves as a habitat for the species.
- 2. 这项法律要到年底才生效。(not... until...) This law won't come into effect until the end of the year.
- 3. 至今没有人认领在图书馆里发现的钱。(过去分词 短语作后置定语)

- So far nobody has claimed the money discovered in the library.
- 4. 这里的风景如此漂亮以至于我无法用我有限的英 语来描述。(so... that...)
  - The scenery here is so beautiful that I cannot describe it in my limited English.
- 5. 我不知道这么多年后他是否还住在这里。(if/ whether 引导宾语从句)
  - I don't know if/whether he still lives here after so many years.

### Ⅳ. 完形填空

My head was full of digital noise that my brain was about to explode. As a writer, I was 1 to admit my love of books had been replaced by a brain that simply could not sit still. So, this year I 2 to return to books before the Internet broke my brain.

My goal was 52 books. It seemed like an impossible 3 . A 400-page book will take an average person around 8 hours to read. Finding time to read was a challenge but I 4 it anyway. I treated my mind like a misbehaving child who needed some rules laid down. Then I read for an hour or two a time without 5 each day. It was something I hadn't done in years.

In The Distracted Mind, Larry D. Rosen says that the more we 6 spending time away from our electronic devices, the 7 and more focused we become. And this was what I found. Again, I would 8 bring myself back to the page, resisting the urge to reach for that screen. I drew inspiration from a book On Quiet, in which the author 9 how she bought a safe (保险箱) to lock away her family's devices for long periods, which opened up a space to reflect.

For me, finding that quiet time 10 finding time just to read. It was a delightful moment between me and my book when I ordinarily would have reached for my 11 . I read on the tram, in bed at night and during the lunch 12 .

With my regained 13 for books, I created a space where I could press pause and find 14, knowledge and reflection. In our fast-paced world, reading for the sake of reading is not selfish but a powerful way to 15 and be ourselves.

1. A. wise

B. ashamed

C. cautious

D. numb

B 根据上文的"As a writer"和下文的"to admit my love of books had been replaced"可知,作者作为一名作家,自己对书籍的喜爱却被电子产品取代,这使作者感到惭愧。ashamed 意为"羞愧;惭愧",符合语境。故选 B。

2. A. determined

B. happened

C. seemed

D. doubted

A 根据下文的"My goal was 52 books."可知,作者为自己设定阅读目标,决定重新开始阅读。determine 意为"决定",符合语境。故选 A。

3. A. standard

B. choice

C. expectation

D. task

D 根据上文的"My goal was 52 books."和下文的 "A 400-page book will take an average person around 8 hours to read."可知,作者的目标是读完 52 本书, 而一本 400 页的书一般人需要大约 8 个小时才能读 完。由此可知,作者的这个目标看起来是一个不可 能完成的任务。task 意为"任务",符合语境。故选 D。

4. A. received

B. made

C. refused

D. got

B 根据上文的"Finding time to read was a challenge..."及"but"可知,找时间阅读是一项挑战,但是作者还是达成了自己设定的目标。make it 为固定搭配,意为"获得成功",符合语境。故选 B。

5. A. delay

B. hesitation

C. permission

D. disturbance

D 根据上文的"Then I read for an hour or two a time without..."可知,作者每天读书一到两个小时,期间不受外界干扰。 disturbance 意为"干扰",符合语境。故选 D。

6. A. avoid

B. practise

C. admit

D. imagine

B 根据上文的"I treated my mind like a misbehaving child who needed some rules laid down. Then I read for an hour or two a time without \_5 each day."可知,上文讲到作者对待自己的思想就像一个行为不端的孩子,需要制订一些规则,每天不受打扰地一次阅读一到两个小时。由此可推知,作者是在练习远离电子设备,从而回归阅读。practise 意为"练习",符合语境。故选 B。

7. A. calmer

B. stronger

C. tougher

D. luckier

A 根据下文的"more focused"可知,此处应为与 其感情色彩相近的单词,再根据上文语境并结合选 项可知,此处是指更加冷静。calm 意为"冷静的",符合语境。故选 A。

8. A. hardly

B. violently

C. easily

D. difficultly

C 根据上文的"more focused we become"和"this was what I found..."可知,作者现在又可以轻松地让自己回到书中。easily 意为"容易地,轻松地",符合语境。故选 C。

9. A. describes

B. predicts

C. classifies

D. declares

A 根据上文的"I drew inspiration from a book On Quiet, in which..."可知,此处指这本书的作者在书中描述了自己如何购买保险箱将家中的设备锁起来。describe 意为"描述",符合语境。故选A。

10. A. required

B. suggested

C. meant

D. divided

C 根据上文的"finding that quiet time"及下文的"finding time just to read..."可知,对于作者来说,寻找安静的时间意味着寻找(用来)读书的时间。mean 意为"意味着",符合语境。故选 C。

11. A. wallet

B. book

C. phone

D. pen

C 根据上文的"when I ordinarily would have reached for"可知,此处指作者以前通常会去拿手机,phone 意为"电话",结合上文语境,在此处表示"手机"符合语境。故选 C。

12. A. programme

B. menu

C. option

D. break

D 根据上文的"I read on the tram, in bed at night..."可知,作者利用零散的时间读书,此处应指作者在午休时读书。break 意为"休息",符合语境。故选 D。

13. A. value

B. affection

C. recognition

D. control

B 根据上文的"admit my love of books had been replaced by a brain that simply could not sit still"可知,此处指作者重拾对书籍的喜爱。affection意为"喜爱",符合语境。故选B。

**14.** A. instruction

B. strength

C. inspiration

D. encouragement

C 根据上文的"I drew inspiration from a book" 可知,此处指作者从书中找到灵感。inspiration 意为"灵感",符合语境,此处为原词复现。故选 C。

15. A. slow down

B. speed up

C. cheer up

D. feel down

A 此处指阅读能够使人放慢节奏做自己。slow down 意为"放慢速度",符合语境。故选 A。

# Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Identify the language phenomenon of the present participle as adverbial, and summarise its usage.
- 2. Use the present participle as adverbial in real context.

# 自主式预习 。

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. I would be very grateful if you are willing to help 感谢的,感激的
- 2. If you overcome a problem or a feeling, you successfully deal with it and control it.
- 3. There's nothing like candlelight for creating a romantic mood. 浪漫的
- **4.** A **comedy** is a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh.
- 5. He began to tell me the **plot** of the film vividly.

- 6. He was famous for writing the music for the ballet Swan Lake in 1876. 芭蕾舞剧
- 7. We were watching a documentary about the famous war. 纪录片

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇					
applaud v. (为·····) 鼓掌	applause n. 鼓掌;喝彩					
extremely adv. 极度, 极其	extreme adj. 极度的					
	absorb v. 吸收;理解;吸引,使全神贯注					
absorbed adj. 专心致 志的	absorbing <i>adj</i> . 十分吸引人的,引人入胜的					
	absorption n. 吸收;并入;专注					
absolutely adv. 完全 地,绝对地	absolute adj. 绝对的,完 全的					

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
appealing adj. 有吸引力的,有趣的	appeal v. 呼吁, 恳求; 上 诉; 有吸引力 n. 呼吁, 恳 求; 上诉; 吸引力; 感染力
rude adj. 粗鲁的,无	rudely adv. 粗鲁地,无礼 地
礼的	rudeness n. 粗鲁
definitely adv. 确切地,肯定地	definite adj. 明确的;确 定的
arrangement n. 安排, 筹划	arrange v. 安排,筹划;整理;布置;排列
transport n. 交通运输 系统,运输方式	transportation n. 交通运输系统,运输方式;运输, 运送

### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. stay up late 熬夜
- 2. thanks to 多亏;由于
- 3. more or less 或多或少
- 4. put on 表演(节目);上演
- 5. give up 放弃;屈服
- 6. take place 发生;举行

# Ⅳ. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式:what 引导感叹句 What a rude person the host was! 这个主持人真是个粗鲁的人!
- 2. 句型公式:it 作形式主语 It's a wonder they didn't walk out of the studio. 他们没走出摄影棚真是个奇迹。

3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语

<u>Dating back to the 1970s</u>, Glastonbury Festival is a music and arts festival that takes place on a large farm in Somerset in South-west England.

格拉斯顿伯里音乐艺术节可以追溯到 20 世纪 70 年代,是一个在英格兰西南部萨默塞特的一个大型农场里举行的音乐艺术节。

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

# 1. appealing adj. 有吸引力的,有趣的

[教材原文] Leopards are such **appealing** creatures and the cubs are adorable!

豹子是如此吸引人的动物,幼崽多么可爱!

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) appeal v. 呼吁,恳求;上诉;有吸引力 appeal for sth. 呼吁某事;请求给予某物 appeal to... 对……有吸引力;呼吁…… appeal to sb. for sth./to do sth. 向某人呼吁/恳求(做)某事

(2)appeal n. 呼吁,恳求;上诉;吸引力,感染力 make an appeal to sb. to do sth. 呼吁/恳求某人做某事

hold little appeal for sb. 对某人没什么吸引力「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- These books appeal to readers of all ages.
- ②I am writing to make an appeal to everyone  $\underline{to}$   $\underline{take}$  (take) an active part in building a more beautiful school.
- 3 They're appealing <u>for</u> clothes and blankets to send to the disaster area.
- $4(2024 \cdot$ 新课标 I 卷) When I got back home, suddenly riding my bike didn't seem quite as appealing (appeal).
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之倡议书)为了强身健体,我们学校**呼 吁我们**每天至少**留出**一个小时进行锻炼。
- ① Our school appeals to us to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal v.)
- ② Our school makes an appeal to us to spare at least an hour every day to take exercise to build up our health. (appeal n.)

# 2. arrangement n. 安排,筹划;布置

[教材原文] Make arrangements to attend a concert in another city.

安排去另一座城市听一场音乐会。

### [归纳拓展]

(1) make arrangements for... 为 ······做出安排

make an arrangement with sb. 与某人商定或约好 come to/arrive at an arrangement 谈妥;达成协议 (2)arrange v. 安排,筹划;整理;布置;排列

arrange (for sb./sth.) to do sth. 安排(某人/某物) 做某事

arrange with sb. about (doing) sth. 就(做)某事与某人达成协议

arrange that... 安排好;商定 ······

### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①I've arranged for a car to pick you up.
- ② Have you arranged with your team members about the coming performance?
- ③ I <u>arranged</u> (arrange) with my parents that I would borrow their car.
- ④ After discussing for a while, we came to an <u>arrangement</u> (arrange) to go hiking on Saturday and have a picnic on Sunday.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之活动安排)我想告诉你,我和我的同学们**已安排**下周六重阳节**去参观附近的敬老院**。

I'd like to tell you that my classmates and I <u>have</u> arranged to visit the nearby nursing home next Saturday for the Double Ninth Festival.

②(应用文写作之通知)我深信你们会对**我们专门为你们做的安排**满意的。预祝你们在我校参观愉快。

I strongly believe that you will be pleased with the arrangements we specially have made for you. Wish you a pleasant visit in our school.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. overcome: A. υ. 克服(困难) B. υ. 被(感情)控制
  - ① He was **overcome** with grief and his friends were disappointed with his behaviour. B
  - ② He is consciously trying to **overcome** his weaknesses.
- To make sure you get enough Vitamin D—but still protect your skin—put on sunscreen right as you head outside.
  - A. 涂抹(化妆品) B. 表演(节目)
  - C. 穿衣服

# 语法研习课

# 现在分词作状语

# 语法感知

- ① Having seen quite a few productions of Hamlet and read the play many times, I was full of confidence—until the Peking Opera came to town!
- 2 Dating back to the 18th century, Peking Opera has over two hundred years of history.
- **Starting with** an orchestra playing traditional Chinese instruments, the opera brought a completely new sound to my Western ears.
- (4) Then, seeing the main characters come on stage, I was surprised!
- **5** Using such techniques, the opera had transformed a small stage into the whole universe.
- 6 Feeling the strong emotions of love, anger, fear and grief in the performance, I could easily recognise the theme of Hamlet.
- 1. 句①中黑体部分为现在分词的完成式,表示动作发 生在谓语动词之前。句②至⑥中黑体部分为现在 分词的一般式,表示动作与谓语动词同时发生。
- 2. 句①至⑥中现在分词的逻辑主语都是句子的主语。

# ◦语法精讲

# 一、概念理解

现在分词作状语时,表示的动作是主语动作的一 部分,用来修饰谓语,常表示动作发生的时间、原因、 条件、结果、方式、伴随、让步等,并可以转换成相应的 状语从句或并列句。

臣	<b>才态</b>	语态	意义							
	一般式	主动语态 doing	与句子主语构成逻辑上 的主谓关系,与谓语动作 基本上同时发生							
	doing	被动语态 being done	与句子主语构成逻辑上 的动宾关系,且与谓语动 作基本上同时发生							
以 do 为例	完成式	主动语态 having done	与句子主语构成逻辑上 的主谓关系,先于谓语动 作发生							
	having done	被动语态 having been done	与句子主语构成逻辑上 的动宾关系,且先于谓语 动作发生							

### 二、语法规则

### (一)现在分词作状语的用法

现在分词在句中作状语用来修饰谓语动词或整个句 子,表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、方式、让 步或伴随状况。

# 1. 作时间状语

现在分词作时间状语时,常放在句首,相当于一个 时间状语从句。

Hearing the noise, I turned round.

=When I heard the noise, I turned round. 听到响声时,我转过身去。

#### 2. 作原因状语

现在分词作原因状语时,相当于一个原因状语从 旬,也可以放在旬首。

Having lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

=Because I have lived in the village for years, I know everyone quite well.

因为在这个村里住了很多年,所以我非常熟悉每 个人。

# 3. 作条件状语

现在分词作条件状语时,相当于一个 if 引导的条 件状语从句。

Working hard, you'll certainly succeed.

=If you work hard, you'll certainly succeed. 如果努力工作,你肯定会成功的。

#### 4. 作结果状语

现在分词作结果状语时,通常放在句末,中间用逗 号隔开,表示自然而然、意料之中的结果,分词前 可接 thus。

More highways have been built in China, making it much easier for people to travel from one place to another.

中国建造了更多的公路,这使人们从一个地方到 另一个地方变得容易多了。

# ---名 师 点 拨■■■■

现在分词作结果状语,是随着谓语动作的发生而 产生的自然结果,其逻辑主语往往是前面整个句 子所描述的情况,前面有时候可以加 thus。而不 定式作结果状语常表示出乎意料的结果,有时候前 面可以加 only。

# 5. 作让步、方式和伴随状语

现在分词作让步、方式和伴随状语时,说明动作发生的背景和情况。作伴随状语时,表示分词的动作和谓语动作同时发生,此时可以转换成并列句。 Mary sat by the window of the classroom, reading a book.

= Mary sat by the window of the classroom and was reading a book.

玛丽坐在教室的窗边读一本书。

### 6. 作评论性状语

有些现在分词用于句首,没有逻辑主语而独立存在,作为句子的独立成分来修饰全句,表明说话者的态度、观点等,这被称为评论性状语或评注性状语。

常见的有 generally speaking 一般说来; roughly speaking 大致说来; frankly speaking 坦率地说; judging from/by 由…… 判断; considering... 考虑到; supposing... 如果; providing... 如果; assuming... 假设。

**Generally speaking**, children are naturally curious. 一般说来,孩子天性好奇。

**Judging from** his accent, he is from Henan Province.

从其口音判断,他来自河南省。

**Considering** the budget, we decided to give up the travelling plan.

考虑到预算,我们决定放弃这项旅行计划。

#### (二)现在分词作状语的注意事项

# 1. 时态

现在分词作状语时,要注意分词的时间性,是用现在分词的一般式(doing),还是用完成式(having done)。

(1)当现在分词的动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生时,用分词的一般式。

Walking in the street, I met an old friend of mine. 我正在大街上行走时,遇到了一位老朋友。 (walking 和谓语动词 met 同时发生)

(2)当现在分词的动作先发生,而谓语动词的动作后发生时,用分词的完成式。

Having finished the letter, he went to post it. 他写完信后就把它寄了出去。(having finished 是先发生的,went to post 是后发生的)

# 2. 语态

使用现在分词的主动式还是被动式,这主要取决于现在分词和句子主语之间的关系。句子的主语 就是分词的逻辑主语。 **Having been shown** around the factory, they were very happy.

被领着参观了工厂后,他们很高兴。(现在分词的被动式)

Having finished his homework, he went to bed. 完成他的家庭作业后,他就去睡觉了。(现在分词的主动式)

### 3. 逻辑主语

现在分词作状语时,其逻辑主语必须与句子的主语一致。如果不一致,必须用独立主格结构来表示,也就是在分词前面加上它的逻辑主语。

My wife had a long talk with Sally, **explaining** why she didn't want the children to play together. 我的妻子与萨莉谈了很长时间,解释她为什么不想让孩子们在一起玩。(explaining 是句子主语my wife 做出的动作,它们之间是主动关系,即 explaining 的逻辑主语就是句子的主语 my wife) The train **having gone**, we had to wait another day.

火车已经离开,我们只好再等一天。(The train having gone 为独立主格结构, having gone 的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致)

### 4. 否定式

现在分词的否定式是在分词前面加上 not, never 等否定词。

**Not knowing** how to find the subway, I asked a policeman for help.

我不知道怎样找到地铁,就去找警察帮忙。

# 。语法冲关

### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. <u>Hearing</u> (hear) the signal, people ran out of the building.
- 2. The girl staring (stare) at him, he didn't know what to say.
- 3. <u>Having been asked</u> (ask) to work overtime that evening, I missed a wonderful film.
- **4.** <u>Having selected</u> (select) the proper present, they sent it to their respectable professor.
- 5. When <u>facing</u> (face) so many options, the lion chose to wait instead of attacking the man.
- 6. Not knowing (know) what to do, the children had to wait for their parents to come back.
- 7. <u>Judging</u> (judge) from the appearance, it is very peaceful, but in fact, a war will break out soon.

• · · · ·

8. The cooling wind swept through our bedroom windows, <u>making</u> ( make ) air conditioning unnecessary.

### Ⅱ. 完成句子

- 1. Not having finished her work in time, the boss fired her.
  - 由于没有及时完成工作,老板解雇了她。
- 2. Personally speaking, I'm satisfied with your performance.
  - 就我个人而言,我对你的表现很满意。

- There being no teacher in the classroom, the pupils began to talk freely.
   由于教室里没有老师,学生们开始自由交谈。
- **4.** Setting off earlier, you'll get to the small town at dusk.
  - 如果早点出发的话,你就会在傍晚的时候到达小镇。
- 5. <u>Having tried many times</u>, he still couldn't succeed.
  - 尽管尝试了多次,但他仍未成功。

# Unit 4 课后素养评价(十五)

# Section II Using language

### Ⅰ. 词语填空

appealing; transport; definitely; grateful; stay up late; put on; overcome; more or less

- 1. Please tell us <u>definitely</u> whether you will be coming or not.
- **2.** As long as we have a strong will, we will be able to overcome any difficulty.
- No words are strong enough to express how grateful I am to you for your help.
- **4.** We've tried to make the design more <u>appealing</u> to young people.
- **5.** With so many audience in front of us, we felt more or less nervous.
- **6.** Since the film was <u>put on</u> in 2024, it has scored the second biggest opening in the film company's history.
- 7. You shouldn't <u>stay up late</u> at night. It's bad for your health.
- 8. China's large, twin-engine unmanned <u>transport</u> aircraft made its maiden flight on August 11, 2024.

### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- Combining (combine) two or more elements in a chemical way, you will get at least one new substance.
- Kids usually finish school at 3:30 pm. However, most parents work until 6:00 pm, making (make) it hard for them to pick their kids up.
- **3.** This isn't as hard as it sounds, and it is far better than any other methods because you improve your

- vocabulary while <u>reading</u> (read) an interesting piece of literature.
- 4. <u>Facing</u> (face) tough challenges, the Chinese women's volleyball team still won the Olympic title in Rio.
- **5.** It rained heavily in the south, <u>causing</u> (cause) serious flooding in several provinces.
- **6.** <u>Translated</u> (translate) into English, the sentence has an entirely different word order.
- 7. Traditional Chinese activities, such as the dragon dance and Peking Opera, are performed as fixed programmes, adding (add) diversity to local culture.

### Ⅲ. 句型转换

- 1. I stood there and waited for her.
  - →I stood there, waiting for her.
- 2. Please answer the question and use another way.
  - →Please answer the question using another way.
- 3. If you turn to the right, you will find a path leading to his cottage.
  - → <u>Turning to the right</u>, you will find a path leading to his cottage.
- 4. Although I admit what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best.
  - → Admitting what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best.
- **5**. When they heard the news, they immediately set off for Shanghai.
  - → <u>Hearing the news</u>, they immediately set off for Shanghai.

### Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Peking Opera is considered to be a Chinese national treasure. Though it's called that name, it is not performed only in Peking.

While we were in Yunnan, we watched a community performance of Peking Opera. The leader and the teacher of this group had retired from the Peking Opera Troupe. The rest of the group consisted of local retired men and women.

Our guide gave us an example of how each of the characters would be played. The male characters include an old man, a middle-aged man, a young man, and a small boy. Each of these characters will wear different costumes. The old man will move around like he has no sense of balance. The middle-aged man will walk slowly with large steps around the stage as if he owns the world. And the young man will dance around. Everyone laughed when the young man put on artificial hair and danced around the stage as if he was ten years old.

Our guide even told us about the different roles of women. The main differences with the women's ages are how a woman walks and her water sleeves. For the older women, they are more dignified (高雅的) in the way they walk. For the younger women, it is more about being graceful (优雅的) with the water sleeves.

The costumes of both the men and women hang according to the rank of the character being played and the age of the characters. It doesn't matter what age the actors are because the make-up will either make them look younger or older.

After seeing that performance, we began to fall

in love with this great Chinese national treasure.

- 1. What do we know about the guide?
  - A. He knew very well about Peking Opera.
  - B. He taught the author to sing Peking Opera.
  - C. He was good at performing Peking Opera.
  - D. He dreamed of performing Peking Opera.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第三、四段的内容可知,导游讲了很多关于京剧的知识。由此可推知,他对京剧很了解。故选 A。
- 2. What mainly helps show the women characters' ages?
  - A. The clothes they wear.
  - B. The colour of their hair.
  - C. The colour of their face.
  - D. The way they move.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句可推知答案。 故选 D。
- 3. What does the author think of Peking Opera?
  - A. It's simple and boring.
  - B. It's well worth seeing.
  - C. It's hard to understand.
  - D. It's helpful to his career.
  - B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者认为京剧是很值得观看的。故选 B。
- **4.** What's the text mainly about?
  - A. The author's opinion about Peking Opera.
  - B. How the retired people continued their career.
  - C. The author's experience of watching Peking
    Opera
  - D. How to recognise different characters in Peking Opera.
  - C 主旨大意题。文章主要讲述了作者在云南旅游时观看一场京剧表演的经历。故选 C。

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

# 学习任务目标

- 1. Acquire the main idea of this text.
- 2. Analyse the structure of argumentative essays.
- 3. Argue why some literature failed to be changed into movies.

# 自主式预习 。

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. If you escape from a place, you succeed in getting away from it.
- 2. It is well-known to us that rainforests are disappearing to an alarming extent. 程度

### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇		
brief adj. 短暂的	briefly adv. 短暂地;简明地		
	disappoint v. 使失望,使 扫兴		
disappointed adj. 失望的,沮丧的	disappointing adj. 令人 失望的		
	disappointment n. 失望, 沮丧		
original adj. 原先的, 最初的	originally adv. 原先,最初		
	origin n. 起源;出身,血统		
fictional adj. 虚构的, 编造的,小说(中)的	fiction n. 小说		
awkward adj. 紧张	awkwardly adv. 尴尬地		
的;不舒适的	awkwardness n. 尴尬		
behave v. 表现	behaviour n. 行为,举止; 表现方式		

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇	
responsibility n. 责任	responsible adj. 有责任 的,应负责任的	
absence n. 缺乏,没有	absent adj. 不在的,缺席的	
normal adj. 正常的, 平常的	normally adv. 通常,平 常;正常地	
	abnormal <i>adj</i> . 不正常的,反常的;变态的	

### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. base... on 以……为基础
- 2. stand out 突出;显眼;杰出
- 3. turn to 转向;求助于
- 4. result in 导致;造成
- **5.** live up to 符合(标准),不负(盛名)
- 6. to some extent 在某种程度上
- 7. all too often 时常,经常是
- 8. in one's own right 凭借自身,靠自己

### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:have+宾语+宾语补足语

They say that "a picture is worth a thousand words", but the briefest look at books and the movies based on them would have anyone questioning this common saying.

人们常说"一图胜千词",但是简单对照一下书籍 和由之改编的电影,就会让人开始质疑这句俗语。

2. 句型公式:if so

If so, why has one of the earliest and greatest

works in Western storytelling, Homer's *The Odyssey*, never had an equally great movie based on it?

如果是这样,那为什么西方最早也是最优秀的叙事作品之一——荷马的《奥德赛》从未产生过同样优秀的改编电影呢?

3. 句型公式:现在分词短语作结果状语

Many people thought she didn't live up to Helen's title of "the most beautiful woman in the world", influencing opinions of the movie to some extent. 许多人认为她配不上"世上最美女人"这一对海伦的称号,这在某种程度上影响了人们对这部电影的评价。

- 4. 句型公式:find+宾语+宾语补足语
- Perhaps, one day, readers of F.Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will find themselves glued to their screens by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*. 或许有一天,F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住。
- 5. 句型公式: not... but...

Courage is <u>not the absence of fear</u>, <u>but rather the judgement</u> that something else is more important than fear.

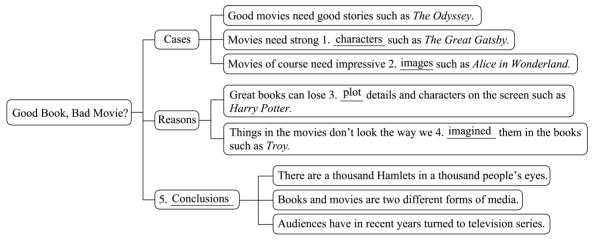
勇气不是没有恐惧,而是一种判断,认为别的东西 比恐惧更重要。

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

# Part 1 课文理解

# ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Which of the following is TRUE?
  - A. A good script is bound to make a good movie.
  - B. Good movies must have powerful characters.
  - C. A good script doesn't necessarily make a good movie.
  - D. Good movies must need impressive images.
- 2. Which is one of the reasons why great words often end up as failures in movies?
  - A. It's harder to make a good movie than to write a good book.
  - B. Good books can make a deeper impression than movies.

- C. The writers of good books are better than the directors of movies.
- D. Good books can describe more plot details and characters.
- **3.** In the author's opinion, how should we judge the quality of a movie?
  - A. Whether the movie has received high praise from people.
  - B. Whether the movie is good or not by its own rules.
  - C. Whether the movie has more details and characters.
  - D. Whether the movie has a fascinating plot.
- **4.** What's the most controversial issue of the movie *Troy*?
  - A. The actress chosen to play Helen.

- B. The mixed reviews from the audience.
- C. The beautiful images of the movie.
- D. The background music of the movie.

#### 答案:1~4 CDBA

# ○语言知识运用

# Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. One of the key reasons behind this is that while a book usually takes a few days to read, a movie typically lasts under two hours.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。其中 that 引导的 是表语从句。

[尝试翻译]这背后的一个关键原因是,读一本书 通常需要几天的时间,而看一部电影通常持续不 到两个小时。

2. This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't escape from, with fans of the books disappointed not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。that 引导的定语 从句修饰 something; with fans of the books disappointed 是 with 复合结构; not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions 是 不定式短语作原因状语。

[尝试翻译]这是连大获成功的"哈利·波特"系列 电影也无法避免的事情,有的书迷因为在电影中 看不到自己最喜欢的一些角色而大失所望。

#### ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions,

- 1. Which movie adaptation is your favourite? Why?
- 2. Have you ever read the book Dream of the Red Chamber? What is it about?

略

#### 语言梳理 Part 2

1. escape v. (从危险或糟糕的处境中)逃离,逃避, 摆脱;被忘掉,被忽视;泄漏 n. 逃走,逃脱

「教材原文 This is something that even the highly successful Harry Potter movies can't escape from, with fans of the books disappointed not to see some of their favourite characters in the movie versions.

这是连大获成功的"哈利·波特"系列电影也无法避 免的事情,有的书迷因为在电影中看不到自己最喜欢 的一些角色而大失所望。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)escape from 从……逃脱;逃避 escape (doing) sth. 逃避(做)某事 escape one's attention/notice 逃过某人的注意 sth. escape(s) sb. 某人忘记某物

(2) make one's escape 逃跑

fire escape 太平梯

a narrow escape 九死一生,死里逃生

### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1 The young man was lucky enough to escape from the burning car.
- ②No one can escape being punished (punish) if he/she breaks the law.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之场景描写)最后,我们九死一生,幸 运地逃过了被那头饥饿的北极熊伤害。

At last, we had a narrow escape, fortunately

escaping being hurt by the hungry polar bear.

②(读后续写之心理描写)昨天,我碰见了一位我以 前的同学,但是我记不起来他的名字了,这让我很 尴尬,脸上滚烫。

Yesterday, I came across one of my former classmates, but his name escaped me, which made me embarrassed, feeling my face burning.

#### 2. responsibility n. 责任

「教材原文] The movie explores the theme of responsibility in an intelligent and humorous way. 这部电影以智慧和幽默的方式探讨了责任的主题。 「归纳拓展」

(1)bear/take (the) responsibility for 承担对…… 的责任,为 …… 负责

have responsibility for (doing) sth. 有(做)某事的 责任

It's one's responsibility to do sth. 某人有做某事

a sense of responsibility 责任感

(2)responsible adj. 有责任的,应负责任的 be responsible for 应对……负责,对……有责任 be responsible to sb. 对某人负责

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①(2024 · 新课标 [[卷) Campbell's point is to wake up those responsible for AI—the technology companies and world leaders—so they are on the same page as all the experts currently developing it.

- ②It is his sense of <u>responsibility</u> (responsible) and devotion (奉献) to the medical career that makes us admire him.
- ③ (2023 新课标I卷) Taking responsibility  $\underline{\text{for}}$  mistakes is a positive step, but don't beat yourself up about them.
- (2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之申请信)我能说一口流利的英语, 毫无疑问我是**负责**这项工作**的最佳人选**。

I can speak fluent English and there is no doubt that I am the best person to be responsible for the job.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)**呼吁人们**保护我们的环境免受污染**是我们的责任**。

It is our responsibility to appeal to people to protect our environment from being polluted.

#### 3. stand out 突出;显眼;杰出

[教材原文]The characters do not **stand out**. 这些角色并不突出。

### [归纳拓展]

stand by 站在旁边;袖手旁观 stand for 代表,表示;主张,支持;容忍 stand on one's own feet 自立;不依靠他人 stand up for 支持;维护 stand (doing) sth. 忍受(做)某事

# 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- $\bigcirc$  Her bright clothes always make her stand  $\underline{\text{out}}$  in a crowd.
- ② Some parents worry about their children who are not able to stand up for themselves in life.
- ③Good Heavens! How could you stand <u>by</u> and allow such a thing to happen!
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之邀请信)你一定会**在这场**艺术人 才云集的**摄影比赛中脱颖而出**。

You are certain to stand out in the photography contest where artistic talents gather.

②(应用文写作之建议信)在中国,红色**代表美丽**、生命和幸福,所以你可以穿红色衣服去拜访一个中国家庭。

In China, red stands for beauty, life and happiness, so you can visit a Chinese family dressed in red.

### 4. absence n. 缺乏,没有;缺席,不在

[教材原文] Courage is not the absence of fear, but

rather the judgement that something else is more important than fear.

勇气不是没有恐惧,而是一种判断,认为别的东西 比恐惧更重要。

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) absence from 缺席;不在 absence of mind 心不在焉 in one's absence 某人不在时 in the absence of 在不存在……的情况下 (2) absent adj. 不在的,缺席的

# 「即学即练」

(1)单句语法填空

be absent from 不参加;缺席

- ①It is because of a long <u>absence</u> (absent) from school that I am a bit behind the other classmates.
- ② In the proper instructions' absence, I don't know how to combine what I've learnt with practice.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)事实上,**在没有母语环境的情况下**,把英语作为一门外语来学习是非常困难的。

Actually, learning English as a foreign language is very difficult in the absence of a native language environment.

②(应用文写作之道歉信)我写这封信是为了向你道歉,因为我没有参加英语俱乐部的活动。

I am writing to make an apology to you <u>for being</u> <u>absent/my absence from the activity</u> of the English club.

### 5. find十宾语十宾语补足语

[教材原文] Perhaps, one day, readers of F. Scott Fitzgerald's most admired work will **find themselves glued to their screens** by episodes of *The Great Gatsby*.

或许有一天,F. 斯科特·菲茨杰拉德最受推崇的作品的读者们会发现自己已被《了不起的盖茨比》的剧集牢牢地吸引住。

[句式分析] find oneself... 意为"发现自己处于某种境地",而且含有"在不知不觉中·····"的意思。

### 「归纳拓展」

"find+宾语+宾语补足语"的结构形式归纳:

find+宾语+ find+宾语+ find+宾语+ 形容词/副词 介词短语

# [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①It was not until I got to the office that I found my key left (leave) at home.
- 2) He hurried to the store, only to find the door
- 3 When he came to himself, he found himself lying (lie) in hospital.
- (4) With so much noise around, he found it hard to settle down to his work.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)通过听英文歌曲和看英 文电影,你会发现你的英语口语水平提高了。

By listening to English songs and watching English movies, you will find your oral English improved.

②(读后续写之动作描写)当我打开门时,我发现我 们的数学老师正被一群好奇的孩子们围着。

When I opened the door, I found our maths teacher being surrounded by a group of curious kids.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. escape: A. n. 逃脱 B. n. 泄漏 C. υ. 被忘掉 D. v. 逃离
  - 1) Bob looked back only to find an old classmate whose name escaped him for the moment. C
  - 2 The thief jumped into a car and made his Α
  - 3 They tried to stop the escape of gas from the damaged pipe (管道).
  - 4 He broke down the locked door and **escaped**. D
- 2. brief: A. adj. 短暂的 B. adj. 简洁的 C. n. 案情摘要
  - 1 The article gives a brief analysis of Western composing skills in the 1990's.
  - 2) We have a tight schedule for your brief visit. I hope you don't mind.
  - 3 Courts have rules governing the format and content of briefs. C

# Unit 4 课后素养评价(十六)

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### Ⅰ. 单词拼写

- 1. He had a brief (短暂的) visit to the city last
- 2. His latest movie is a real turkey (失败之作).
- 3. The movie was an epic (史诗般的) masterpiece, earning praise from critics and audiences alike.
- 4. He broke down the locked door and escaped (逃
- 5. The writer's room still has many of its original (最初的) features.
- 6. He tried to dance, but he was too clumsy and awkward (不舒适的).
- 7. Most parents agree that it's hard to train children to behave (表现) well at the table.
- 8. With her parents' help, Lucy is generally able to live a normal (正常的) teenage life.
- 9. She noticed the absence (缺乏) of pictures in the
- 10. Stepping into the theme park, she felt like she had entered a wonderland (仙境) of colour, excitement, and endless fun.
- Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. They gradually add more and more fictional (fiction) elements.
- 2. He looked disappointed (disappoint) when he saw that his favourite team had lost the game.
- 3. The stage is simple, but the performance (perform) will not make the audience disappointed.
- **4.** Whenever he has a bit of spare time, he uses it to memorise (memory) English words.
- 5. It is their responsibility (responsible) to ensure that the rules are enforced.

### Ⅲ. 短语填空

(be) based on; all too often; stand out; result in; take responsibility for; live up to; to some extent; turn to; in one's own right; in the absence of

- 1. Those with a vivid imagination tend to stand out in some creative work.
- 2. Research has shown that having a preference for junk food can result in obesity.
- 3. Have you ever seen the movies or TV plays based on these fictional stories?
- 4. She was full of anger and grief because he had

failed to live up to his original promise.

- 5. There is no doubt that overusing the Internet to some extent does harm to people's mental and physical health.
- **6.** Some people get awkward <u>all too often</u> because they are rude to others.
- 7. Advertising is not just propaganda (宣传). A super TV advertisement has become an art <u>in its</u> own right.
- **8.** After he left university he became a teacher, but later turned to journalism.
- 9. In the absence of teachers' instruction, I don't know how to combine what I've learnt with practice.
- 10. We are supposed to <u>take responsibility for</u> our own behaviours and try our best to protect the environment.

# Ⅳ. 补全句子

- 1. 电影的历史要短得多,尤其是与音乐、绘画等艺术 形式相比。(省略句)
  - Film has a much shorter history, especially when compared to such art forms as music and painting.
- 2. 人们喜欢旅游的主要原因是它不仅可以令人放松 而且还可以开阔视野。(The reason why... is that...)

The main reason why people like travelling is that it can not only relax people, but also broaden their horizons.

- 3. 他发现这篇课文很难理解,所以向老师求助。 (find+宾语+宾语补足语)
  - He found the text difficult to understand so he turned to his teacher for help.
- 4. 记住这一点, 你就会发现理解这个长句很容易。 (with 复合结构)
  - With this in mind, you will find it easy to understand the long sentence.
- 5. 重要的不是发生了什么,而是你如何应对它。 (not... but...)
  - It's not what happens to you, but how you react to it that matters.
- 6. 很抱歉让你在这里等这么久。(have+宾语+宾语 补足语)

I'm sorry to have you waiting here so long.

# Ⅴ. 语法填空

Shadow play has a long history and is 1. a unique kind of art form. It is performed 2. by sending shadows of puppets (木偶) on a piece of white cloth. The puppets made of leather (皮革)

3. <u>are painted</u> (paint) in very bright colours, so that the shadows they make are very 4. <u>colourful</u> (colour).

The players stand behind the cloth and move the puppets against strong light when 5. showing (show) a shadow play, and the shadows of the puppets fall on the cloth. At the same time, the players talk or sing, telling a story with 6. musicians (music) playing the drums and other instruments, such as erhu, sanxian, sheng, etc. People on the other side of the cloth can see the shadows of the puppets do all kinds of movements. It's just like the movie today.

Shadow play started in the Han Dynasty. 7. It is said that Emperor Wu of Han was sad and didn't want to do anything because one of his favourite wives died. 8. To cheer (cheer) him up, his officer made a puppet like the emperor's dead wife with leather. He moved it and made it 9. act (act) behind a piece of cloth. The emperor enjoyed it very much. After that, shadow play became 10. popularly (popular) known in China.

# Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,上周六你校组织观看了《我和我的祖国》(My People, My Country),请就此电影写一篇影评。

注意	温粉	20	+: ±
土思	• 四级	80	/ 口/口/

# 【参考范文】

My People, My Country is an outstanding film. It presents seven significant historical events in China.

Each of the seven stories in My People, My Country is a microcosm of the larger narrative of China's development and progress. It serves as a reminder of the sacrifices, efforts, and joys that have accompanied China's journey from a newlyfounded nation to a global power. In terms of acting, the actors manage to bring authenticity to their roles, making the characters feel like real people we might have met in our daily lives. Their

performances are so impressive that the audience can't help but be drawn into their joys, sorrows, and struggles.

This film is a must-watch for anyone who wants to understand the complex and beautiful relationship between the Chinese people and their motherland. 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写 两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once, when I was a teenager, my father and I were standing in line to buy tickets for the circus (马 戏). Finally, there was only one family between us and the ticket counter.

This family made a big impression on me. There were eight children, all probably under the age of twelve. You could tell they didn't have a lot of money.

Their clothes were not expensive, but they were clean. The children were well-behaved, all of them standing in line, two-by-two behind their parents, holding hands. They were excitedly talking about the clowns, elephants, and other acts they would see that night with their brothers or sisters in a low voice.

One could sense they had never been to the circus before. It promised to be a highlight of their young lives. The father and mother were at the head of the pack, standing proud as they could be. The mother was holding her husband's hand, looking up at him as if to say, "You are my knight in shining armor."

He was smiling and responding in pride, looking back at her as if to say, "You got that right." The ticket lady asked the father how many tickets he wanted. He proudly responded, "Please let me buy eight children's tickets and two adult tickets, so I can take my family to the circus."

The ticket lady gave the price. The man's wife let go of his hand. Her head dropped, and her lips began to tremble. The father leaned a little closer and asked, "How much did you say?"

The ticket lady again quoted the price. The man didn't have enough money.

How was he supposed to turn and tell his eight

children that he didn't have enough money to take them to the circus? Actually we were not wealthy in any sense. So I understood how the kids would feel. I felt sorry for them.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand
in his pocket, pulled out a 20-dollar bill and dropped
it on the ground.
That day my father and I went back to our car and
drove home without any tickets.

### 【参考范文】

Seeing what was going on, my dad put his hand in his pocket, pulled out a 20-dollar bill and dropped it on the ground. Then he picked it up and tapped the man on the shoulder and said, "Excuse me, sir, this fell out of your pocket." The man turned around and saw the money. He knew what was going on. He looked straight into my dad's eyes, took my dad's hand in both of his, squeezed tightly onto the 20-dollar bill, and with his lip shaking and eyes filled with tears, he replied, "Thank you, thank you, sir. This really means a lot to me and my family."

That day my father and I went back to our car and drove home without any tickets. We didn't go to the circus that night. When I asked Dad why he did so, Dad said, "My child, it was a desperate, heartbreaking and embarrassing situation for a father. Surely he wasn't begging for a handout, but he reminded me of my father, when I was young." He paused for a while, as if wandering in his memory. "We should appreciate what we have obtained from life and seize every opportunity to help others. We didn't go to the circus tonight, but we didn't go without anything. Now, who wants an ice cream?"



#### 应用文写作

# -影评

# ○写作指导

写影视评论时,评论者要选择评论影片的角度。 通常评论者对于评论角度的选择可以持以下原则:

第一:影片最突出的方面;

第二:影片中最具有特色的方面:

第三:影片中最具有思想价值的方面。

- 1. 主题思想。主题思想即影片的主旨,是指影片通过 人物塑造和生活场景描绘所表现出的中心思想。
- 2. 人物形象。影片中的人物通常是人们评论的重点, 人物的塑造是否具有特色,是影片能否成功的关 键。

### ○典题示例

假如你是李华,上周日你校组织观看了《长津湖》 (The Battle at Lake Changjin),请就此写一篇影评。 词数:150 左右。

参考词》	[:恶彡	片的	harsh;	繁荣	prosperity;	纬线
parallel						

# Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以 一般现在时为主
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 介绍该电影取得的成就 2. 简单介绍影片主要内容 3. 发表评论

### Step 2:要点补全

- ①Many famous actors play the leading roles in the film (主演这部电影) The Battle at Lake Changjin.
- ②The film makes many people moved (使很多人感 动) and gets a huge box office success.
- ③ One of the most impressive scenes (最令人感动 的一幕之一) is that the enemy took advantage of (利用) the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers (而我们的每一名战 士) could only be allocated one mouldy potato.
- 4 These heroes have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity (用他们的生命换来了 现在的和平和繁荣).
- ⑤Their stories deserve to be heard (值得被听到) by us and history should never be forgotten.

### Step 3:句式升级

①用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的句①②

The film The Battle at Lake Changjin, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office

②用强调句改写 Step 2 中的句④

It is these heroes who have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity.

· ·	1 1 2	_	
Step 4:连句成篇			

#### 【参考范文】

The film The Battle at Lake Changjin, in which many famous actors play the leading roles, makes many people moved and gets a huge box office success.

In the film, under the extremely cold and harsh environment, the Chinese People's Volunteer Army went to Korea to fight. One of the most impressive scenes is that the enemy took advantage of the gap between the wars to enjoy delicious food, while each of our soldiers could only be allocated one mouldy potato. Although our soldiers did not have the advanced equipment of the enemy, they moved forward bravely with strong will and faith until the victory! They guarded the 38th parallel with their own blood and flesh to stop the enemy's attack.

It is these heroes who have exchanged their lives for today's peace and prosperity. They are the most respectable and lovely people and we should remember them forever! Their stories deserve to be heard by us and the history should never be forgotten.

#### ○学以致用

假定你是李华,你校在学校礼堂放映了电影《一 条狗的回家路》。请你根据表格提示,介绍并评论这 部电影。

英文名称	A Dog's Way Home
类型	冒险
导演	查尔斯·马丁·史密斯 (Charles Martin Smith)
剧情	一只名叫贝拉(Bella)的狗,在与主人失散 后走上了一条充满未知的冒险回家路。


#### 【参考范文】

The film A Dog's Way Home is an adventure film directed by Charles Martin Smith. The film tells the story of a dog named Bella who travels four hundred miles in search of her home.

On Bella's way home, she overcomes various difficulties and even faces the risk of losing her life several times. However, Bella never gives up and finally makes her way home. The plot of the film is smooth and touching, and the character Bella's image as a dog arouses the audience's pity. Some parts are humorous while others are exciting. Besides, the friendship between Bella and other characters is heart-warming.

Animals are human's friends and should be treated kindly. May all of the lost dogs find their way home.

#### 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

I stared at myself in the mirror; blue tights, a yellow vest, a fish tail trailing behind me, and large eyes sitting atop my head. I raised my eyebrows and sighed.

"Mum, I don't think this costume is right," I said. "Maybe the makeup will add something," Mum replied hopefully.

Somehow Mum had convinced me to play the Fish Footman in Alice in Wonderland. I can't say it's been the time of my life.

"What if I forget my lines?" I hesitated.

"Oh Riley, is that what you're afraid of? I know you've been rehearsing for two months, you were the first off-book in your scene, and I couldn't be prouder of you," Mum said, kneeling down and hugging me.

The next day we pulled into the parking lot, and I stepped out of the car, wearing the questionable costume. I shrank inside myself, but Mum pulled me towards the makeup room. When the makeup was done,

I looked at myself in the mirror. My jaw dropped.

"Mum! I can't go onstage like this!" I cried. "Why not?"

"I'd be a laughing stock (笑柄)!"

"Riley, look around you! You're not the only one in an odd costume." "What if we just sneak out? No one will miss me," I whispered.

Mum's lips disappeared into a thin line, and I knew I had gone too far. "Riley, I'm going to watch you go out on that stage tonight. And that's the end of it." Then Mum disappeared into the audience. I sat there, alone and bored, as the play began and the curtain rose on.

The two boys dressed as Two of Clubs (梅花 2) near me chatted casually about this and that. Suddenly, they asked, "You're awfully quiet. Is this your first show?" I tried to respond, but my voice caught in my throat and refused to escape. I coughed and nearly yelled, "YES!"

The Ace of Diamonds (方块 A) sitting nearby laughed. "The audience will certainly hear you if you talk that loud. But you might have to clear your throat first," she chuckled. I gave them a weak smile.

"Don't worry about us," the Ace said. "We're only teasing."

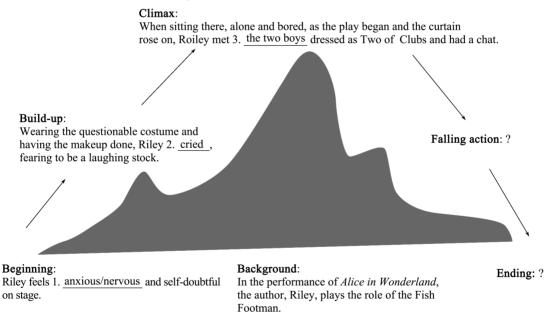
"Yeah," the Two said. "When you've done as many shows as we have, projecting will be second nature to you."

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about the author's anxious experience of overcoming stage fright and self-doubt.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1:  When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily.	Because of the bright lights and the weight of the audience's expectant gazes.  What did I react on the stage? I just recited lines which were rehearsed under the stage before.  What did the audience react to my performance? The audience seemed uninterested and just remained silent.
---	---

Paragraph 2:  Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression.	<ol> <li>What inspired me to change my performance?         Remembering the confidence of others who had also stepped onto the stage.     </li> <li>What did the audience react to my changes?         The audience warmly applauded my changed performance.     </li> <li>How did the audience's reaction affect me?         It fuelled my confidence.     </li> </ol>
任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情	育节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。
When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily.
Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression.

#### 【参考范文】

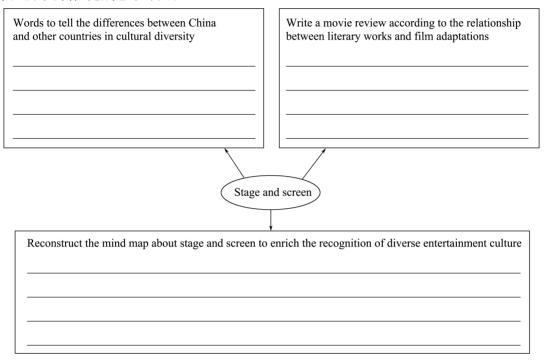
When my name was called, I stepped onto the stage uneasily. The bright lights blinded me for a moment, and I felt the weight of the audience's expectant gazes. Despite that, my muscle memory took over. We had rehearsed so many times that I was like a robot, reciting my lines in the most monotone (单调的) voice imaginable. A small part of my brain whispered that I had said these lines much better in rehearsal, but I pushed that voice away. I just wanted to get off stage as fast as possible. Soon, the end of my scene was approaching, and I grew uncomfortably aware that the audience had indeed been very quiet during it. Had I done something wrong? Didn't they like me?

Suddenly I was determined to make a lasting impression. I remembered the Two of Clubs and the Ace of Diamonds, and their easy confidence. They, too, had started somewhere, likely just as nervous and uncertain as I was now. Then I straightened my spine, cleared my throat, and yelled with all the force I could muster. Obviously, the audience heard me. As the dialogue began, I found my voice, clear and strong, resonating through the theatre. I moved with purpose, embracing the absurdity of my costume and transforming it into a character that was both comical and endearing. With each passing minute, my confidence grew, fuelled by the audience's response of laughter and applause, their enjoyment tangible proof that I had overcome my fears. As the final curtain fell, Mum found her way backstage, her eyes shining with pride. "You were amazing, Riley," she whispered. In that moment, I realised that stepping out of my comfort zone, despite the initial hesitation and fear, had led me to discover a strength within myself that I never knew existed.



#### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



#### 答案:略

#### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### From Page to Screen

by James Hope

Reading a book and watching a film are two very different experiences, but it's normal to have high expectations when a film of a favourite book is made. There are many times I have been pessimistic about or even disappointed by a film of a book I love. Although highly regarded books do not always make good films, it is safe to say that great films may be made from not particularly good books. (*The Godfather* immediately springs to mind.)

The source material for a film may be taken from classic novels, short stories, comic books and stage plays, as well as non-fiction such as biographies and autobiographies, even those written by ghost writers. All can work well, but why do many adaptations and indeed remakes fail both cinema audiences and critics? And why do some adaptations get lower ratings than others?

A key question is obviously how close to the original the film is. Since a typical film is only around two hours long, it becomes a question for screenwriters to decide what is appropriate for the screen and what to leave out. Screenwriters take creative liberty and sometimes there may be changes to the plot, additions, and even different endings to please producers, directors and test audiences. I, like many people, have often left the cinema feeling "the film is not like the book".

Another problem area is the cast. Finding actors acceptable to film audiences can mean the difference between success and failure. Readers of the book use their imaginations to visualise characters and have very definite ideas about how characters should look and sound. This is where I think many film adaptations fall

Some books are just too difficult to be adapted for technical reasons, although films like Life of Pi are changing this idea. CGI (Computer Generated Image) technology has had a huge impact on the film industry. It allowed the previously unfilmable to become a reality.

One may think that it is the book writer who is in the best position to do film adaptations. In fact, sometimes authors are very involved in the process and may even be the screenwriter. This can actually be a disadvantage because they may be too close to the material and find it difficult to adapt to a new form. At other times they are not, and there are instances where writers have been very unsatisfied with the film versions of their work; Stephen King is an example of this. Even more extreme was novelist J.D. Salinger, who made sure no film versions of his popular novel The Catcher in the Rye could ever be made. In this situation, it is clear that viewers will not be disappointed! For me, anyway, it is always a bad idea to watch a film of a book you love.

Despite the challenges, there have been some highly successful films made from popular books. For me, Jaws, Harry Potter and The Lord of the Rings all fit this category. And possibly the best proof of a successful adaptation is the James Bond series, the majority of which has been adapted from the 007 novels of Ian Fleming. Perhaps unusually, audiences seem to accept that the actors who have played James Bond have changed so often, although everyone seems to have their favourite. I know I do.

- 1. What can we know from the first paragraph?
  - A. It's abnormal to have high expectations when a film of a favourite book is made.
  - B. Highly regarded books always make good films.
  - C. Reading a book is better than watching a film.
  - D. The Godfather is a good film.
- 2. What do the underlined words "fall down" in Paragraph 4 mean?
  - A. Drop from the high place.
- B. Fail.

C. Tell a good story.

- D. Make people sad.
- **3.** Why was The Catcher in the Rye mentioned?
  - A. To show how popular the novel is.
  - B. To prove some writers are not satisfied with the film versions of their work.
  - C. To show that J.D. Salinger is a good film maker.
  - D. To show a good example of film adaptations.
- **4.** What can we know from the last paragraph?
  - A. The Lord of the Rings and the James Bond series are good examples of great adaptations.
  - B. One of the actors for James Bond series is the most popular.
  - C. It is unacceptable that the actors who have played James Bond have changed often.
  - D. The majority of audiences think that Ian Fleming is a good actor for James Bond.

#### 答案:1~4 DBBA

# 单元测试卷(四)

(考香范围: Unit 4 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

#### Venice Film Festival

The Venice Film Festival takes place every year in late August or early September on the Lido in the historic Palazzo del Cinema, in Venice, Italy. Its main award is the "Leone d'Oro" (Golden Lion). Recently, a new award has been added, the San Marco Award for the best film.

#### **Academy Awards**

The Academy Awards are the most prominent film awards in the United States. The awards are granted by the Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences. Academy Awards are nicknamed "Oscars", which is also the nickname of the statuette (小雕像). The name is said to have been born when Margaret Herrick saw the statuette on a table and said, "It looks just like my uncle Oscar!"

#### Berlin International Film Festival

The Berlin International Film Festival is one of the "A" festivals in Europe. The Berlin International Film Festival, also called the "Berlinale", is held annually in February and started in 1951 after an initiative of the American, who occupied part of the city after World War II. The jury (专家评奖团) always placed special emphasis on representing films from all over the world, from the former Eastern Bloc (集团) countries as well as from Western countries. The awards are called Golden and Silver Bears (as the bear is the symbol of Berlin).

#### **Cannes Film Festival**

The Cannes Film Festival is a famous international film festival. It has been held annually in Cannes, in the south of France, since 1946 with a few exceptions. Given massive media exposure, the

Festival is attended by many movie stars and is a popular venue for movie producers to launch their new films and attempt to sell their works to the distributors who come from all over the world. The most famous award given out at Cannes is the "Palme d'Or" (Golden Palm) for the best film; this is sometimes shared by multiple films in one year.

- 1. Which award can be shared by multiple films in one year?
  - A. Golden Lion.
  - B. Golden Palm.
  - C. Academy Award.
  - D. San Marco Award.
  - B 细节理解题。文章最后一句话提到,戛纳电影节最著名的奖项"金棕榈奖(Golden Palm)"有时可由一年中的多部影片共同获得。故选 B。
- 2. Which award has the shortest history?
  - A. Golden Lion.
  - B. Golden Palm.
  - C. Academy Award.
  - D. San Marco Award.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第一段最后一句"Recently, a new award has been added, the San Marco Award for the best film."可知选 D。
- 3. Why are the awards for the Berlin International Film Festival called "Golden and Silver Bears"?
  - A. They look like a bear.
  - B. They are made up of bear fur.
  - C. The bear is the symbol of Berlin.
  - D. The bear is rare in Berlin.
  - C 细节理解题。根据 Berlin International Film Festival 部分中的最后一句可知,柏林国际电影节的奖项名叫金熊奖和银熊奖,这是因为熊是柏林的象征。故选 C。

#### R

As a child, Rob Stewart loved the natural

world. "He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most," said his mother, Sandy Stewart.

Stewart spent his life studving photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films. Sadly, he died in 2017 at the age of 37 in a diving accident. The accident happened while Stewart was filming Sharkwater Extinction, which members of his crew completed after his death.

Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness of people about sharks' key role in nature. Stewart believed that they should be protected against humans and other enemies. He studied how illegal shark finning has led to a great fall in the shark population.

When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment. "His films," said Sandy Stewart, "showed people how beautiful the underwater creatures are. People would fall in love with them and work to protect them."

As of 2013, 55 countries had banned shark finning. Stewart lived and died a hero in the pursuit of saving sharks and the sea. He is believed to have saved one-third of the world's sharks.

Stewart's parents hope kids will continue his story by supporting shark-friendly actions. They encourage kids to buy or ask their parents to buy shark-free products.

Another thing that young people can do is learn more about sharks. A good place to start is "Shark Database", an online resource that was created by Rob Stewart's friends.

"It's your generation that we want to make sure sees the world that Rob saw and does whatever you can to protect the big fish," said Stewart's father. "One person can make a big difference."

- 4. What do we know about Rob Stewart?
  - A. He died because of a shark attack.
  - B. He was interested in sea animals.

- C. He led a research team studying the sea.
- D. He made Sharkwater Extinction in 2017.
- B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"He loved everything in the sea, but sharks the most"和第 二段中的"Stewart spent his life studying and photographing sharks and other sea creatures, and creating films."可知, Rob Stewart 对海洋里 的一切感兴趣,尤其是鲨鱼。故选 B。
- 5. What did Rob Stewart do to end illegal shark finning?
  - A. He made films showing sharks living naturally.
  - B. He encouraged people to buy shark-free products.
  - C. He wrote to the government asking for a ban on shark finning.
  - D. He collected information to show the influence of illegal shark finning.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"When Stewart found out about the finning, he tried to end it. As an experienced diver and skilled cinematographer, he was able to raise awareness of the problem by filming sharks in their natural environment."可 知,Rob Stewart 通过拍摄在自然环境下生存的鲨 鱼使人们了解鲨鱼的困境。故选 A。
- 6. How may Rob Stewart's action to save sharks be described?

A. Creative.

B. Successful.

C. Fruitless.

D. Unwelcome.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可推知, Rob Stewart 为保护鲨鱼所做的努力颇有成效。故选 В。

- 7. Which of the following is true in "the world that Rob saw"?
  - A. Little action was taken to protect sharks.
  - B. Less than 50 countries banned shark finning.
  - C. About a quarter of shark species were in
  - D. Human behaviour was the main cause of shark extinction.
  - 句意理解题。根据最后一段的内容以及第三 段中的"Knowing that about 25% of shark species were endangered and sharks might soon be extinct, Stewart worked hard to raise awareness

of people about sharks' key role in nature."可知,在 Stewart 看到的世界中,有四分之一的鲨鱼种类濒临灭绝。故选 C。

C

The robots are coming! In science fiction, this phrase often signals danger, but in reality, it's a welcome prediction. The field of robotics has made significant progress in the past year as researchers in universities and industry have applied advances in artificial intelligence (AI) to machines. The same technology that powers chatbots and systems to create images from text is now giving robots a major cognitive upgrade.

As a result, robots are becoming more capable, easier to program, and able to explain their actions. Investors are flocking to robotics startups, and even OpenAI, which had previously stepped away from robotics, is reentering the field with a new team. When AI is applied to the physical world, its potential becomes significant.

While robots can inspire fear, partly due to Hollywood's portrayal of them as uncontrollable creations, they also pose the risk of displacing decent-paying jobs in factories and warehouses. However, the latest advances in robotics offer substantial benefits. For example, new "multimodal" AI models combine language understanding and vision with data from robotic sensors, allowing robots to follow commands like "pick up the yellow fruit" by recognising objects such as a banana. These models also enable robots to explain their reasoning, making programming and debugging simpler and reducing errors because their understanding is grounded in real-world observations.

Additionally, robots are improving in their ability to learn quickly through imitation and to generalise skills from one task to another. This opens the door for robots to move out of factories and warehouses and into everyday environments. As labour markets in advanced economies tighten due to aging populations, the need for more automation

becomes critical. More capable robots could help boost productivity, assist with household chores, and provide care for the elderly and those in need.

Advanced economies will require more automation to maintain their standards of living. Countries like South Korea, Japan, and China, which lead in robot-to-worker ratios, are also aging rapidly. Without robots, more people may need to work longer and retire later. In the coming years, societal attitudes could shift from fearing the arrival of robots to eagerly expecting their presence.

- **8.** Why are investors increasingly interested in robotics?
  - A. Robotics has become more affordable.
  - B. The entertainment industry has supported robotics.
  - C. The fear of robots displacing jobs has eased.
  - D. AI advancements have advanced robot abilities.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,"人工智能的进步提升了机器人的能力"是投资者对机器人领域越来越感兴趣的原因。故选 D。
- 9. What is a key benefit of "multimodal" AI models for robots?
  - A. Understanding human emotions.
  - B. Reducing production costs.
  - C. Improving real-world interaction.
  - D. Competing with human workers.
  - C 细节理解题。根据第三段第二、三句可知,"多模态"人工智能模型对机器人的一个关键好处是改善与现实世界的交互。故选 C。
- 10. How might societal views on robots change?
  - A. From job loss concern to economic necessity.
  - B. From fear to equal partnership.
  - C. From viewing robots as a threat to seeing them as tools.
  - D. From ethical (伦理的) concerns to acceptance.
  - A 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后一句可知, 社会对机器人的看法可能会从担忧工作岗位被机 器人取代转变为使用机器人是出于经济上的必 要。故选 A。

- 11. What's the main purpose of the passage?
  - A. To compare robots' fictional dangers with their real benefits.
  - B. To explain AI's influence on robotics and future potential.
  - C. To examine robots' job displacement and labour
  - D. To predict robots' effects on daily life in the near future.
  - B 写作意图题。根据第一段第二句和第二段最 后一句可知,本文的主要目的是解释人工智能对 机器人技术的影响和未来潜力。故选 B。

D

As college sports continue to be hugely popular and the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA) brings in large amounts of money, people have restarted the debate on whether college athletes should get paid.

Supporters of the idea believe that, because college athletes are bringing in audiences, they should receive some sort of compensation (补偿). In fact, the NCAA brings in about \$1 billion income a year, but college athletes don't receive any of that money in the form of a paycheck. Additionally, people who believe college athletes should be paid state that paying college athletes will actually encourage them to remain in college longer and not turn professionals as quickly, either by giving them a way to begin earning money in college or requiring them to sign a contract (合同) saying they'll stay at the university for a certain number of years while making an agreed-upon salary.

People who argue against the idea of paying college athletes believe the practice could be disastrous for college sports. Paying athletes would turn college sports into a bidding (竞拍) war, where only the richest schools could afford top athletes, and most schools would be shut out from developing a talented team. It could also harm the camaraderie within many college teams if players become unhappy that certain teammates are making more money than they are.

Those against paying college athletes also believe that the athletes are receiving enough The top athletes benefits already. scholarships that are worth tens of thousands per year. They receive free food and textbooks, get travel bonuses and free equipment, and can use their time in college as a way to attract the attention of professional coaches. No other college students receive anywhere near as much from their schools.

While both sides have good points, it's clear that the negatives of paying college athletes far outweigh the positives. College athletes have been compensated enough. Adding a salary would result in a college athletic system where only a few athletes are paid by some schools who enter bidding wars to sign them up, while most student athletics and college athletic programmes suffer or even shut down for lack of money. Continuing to offer the present benefits to student athletes makes it possible for as many people to benefit from and enjoy college sports as possible.

- 12. What can we learn from Paragraph 2?
  - A. College athletes have earned what they are promised.
  - B. College athletes tend to serve college longer when paid.
  - C. College athletes should sign a contract to make an agreed-upon salary.
  - D. College athletes prefer to stay at university rather than turn professionals.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Additionally, people who believe college athletes should be paid state that paying college athletes will actually encourage them to remain in college longer and not turn professionals as quickly..."可 知,大学运动员被给予报酬后,可能倾向于继续为 大学效力。故选 B。
- 13. What's the meaning of the underlined word "camaraderie" in Paragraph 3?
  - A. Friendship.
  - B. Competition.
  - C. Spirit.
  - D. Communication.

A 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的"if players become unhappy that certain teammates are making more money than they are"可推知,当队友之间因为收入不同而产生不愉快时,就会影响到团队之间的团结和友谊,由此可推知"camaraderie"与"friendship"意思相近,表示"友情;同事情谊"。故选 A。

- **14.** What do people against paying college athletes think of?
  - A. Schools would be unable to afford it.
  - B. It could be harmful to college sports.
  - C. No other college students receive benefits.
  - D. Students would value payments over achievements.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第三段第一句可知,持反对意见的人们认为给大学运动员支付薪酬会对大学体育造成损害。故选 B。
- **15.** What is the author's attitude towards paying college athletes?
  - A. Uncertain. B. Satisfied.
  - C. Unsupportive. D. Expectant.
  - C 推理判断题。根据最后一段第一句可知,作者认为负面影响大于正面影响,也就是说作者不支持给大学运动员支付薪酬。故选 C。
- Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Castles (城堡) and temples wear away after hundreds of years, but the symbols and words on the stone often survive. \_\_16 \_\_E-books came from the development of science and technology, and can be read online. Many people believe that regular books will be one day replaced by e-books.

Books and e-books share lots of similarities.

They are both items created by great minds. \_\_\_\_17

You can draw lines or highlight some details on books or e-books as notes. The notes can be kept for a long time.

\_\_\_\_\_18\_\_ Firstly, books don't have to be charged, while e-books need electricity if we want to read them. Meanwhile, spending too much time reading e-books may do harm to our eyes. Moreover, e-books don't share the same weight when held in the hand as regular books, nor do they give that

sense of fulfilment that comes from finishing a thick book. However, e-book devices (设备) are easy to carry. 19

A disadvantage of e-book devices is that people tend to get distracted (%  $\mathring{\omega}$ ) when they're using one, as many devices often have apps or games on them. 20

Whichever you prefer, both books and e-books are just a way to help us gain knowledge and get to know other people's experiences. They are both necessary, so it's too early to say one will disappear.

- A. But they have differences as well.
- B. They take less space than books.
- C. Indeed our lives are formed by what books we read.
- D. This is similar to how the words in books manage to live on.
- E. They both have an index (索引) to introduce the main topic of each book.
- F. But with a regular book, your mind is always absorbed in the words.
- G. Each individual can decide which reading method is best for them based on their own needs.

#### 答案:16~20 DEABF

#### Ⅲ. 完形填空(共15小题;每小题1分,满分15分)

I live with my husband Jack in Iowa, which is far away from Florida. One day, my husband suddenly decided to play 21 in Florida.

"Why Florida?" I wanted to know. "We are so busy every day with our work. Why not someplace 22 ?"

"Because," he said, "Florida is famous for golf. It's just something I 23 of doing."

So when Jack talked about playing in <u>27</u>, it got me thinking. There were a lot of things I wanted to <u>28</u>. They were all the same things as I'd

decided to do 29 I was sixteen. But always because of some reasons, my plans 30 to be carried out.

In order to make our life without 31, I told Jack, "Now let's draw up all our life lists and have them 32 one by one together." That was how our journey to Florida 33 .

After many years, our plans were all finished. 34 I've learned that the secret is to take life 35 . If you're in too much of a hurry, you need to stop, or you will fly past all the things that are the most fun.

- 21. A. football
- B. golf
- C. basketball
- D. vollevball

B 根据下文的"Florida is famous for golf."可 知,作者的丈夫要去佛罗里达打高尔夫球。故选 B

- 22. A. farther
- B. closer
- C. larger
- D. warmer

B 根据上文的"We are so busy every day with our work."可知,作者觉得每天工作都很忙,应该 选择一个近一点的地方。故选B。

- 23. A. dream
- B. hurry
- C. refuse
- D. afford

A 根据下文的"What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page— Things I'm Going To Do. But until now I haven't done a third of them!"可知,通过翻看自 己之前的心愿清单,作者理解了丈夫的想法,因此 用 dream 呼应 Things I'm Going To Do,表示去 佛罗里达打高尔夫球是丈夫一直以来的梦想。故 选 A。

- **24.** A. In fact
- B. For example
- C. At once
- D. In case

A 根据下文的"What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page— Things I'm Going To Do. But until now I haven't done a third of them!"可知,通过翻看自 己之前的心愿清单,作者确实理解了丈夫想去佛 罗里达打高尔夫球的梦想。故选A。

- **25**. A. lent
- B. bought
- C. missed
- D. found

D 根据下文的"a diary of mine from my teenage years"可知,作者发现了自己十几岁时的一本日 记。故选D。

- 26. A. called
- B. practised
- C. made
- D. explained

C 根据上文的"the list"可知,作者制作了这份 清单。故选C。

- 27. A. Georgia
- B. Hawaii
- C. Iowa
- D. Florida

D 根据上文的"One day, my husband suddenly decided to play 21 in Florida."可知,作者的 丈夫杰克谈到去佛罗里达打高尔夫球。故选 D。

- 28. A. support
- B. learn
- C. finish
- D. prepare

C 根据上文的"What really got me about it was the list I'd 26 on the very first page— Things I'm Going To Do."可知,清单上列举着作 者想要完成的事情,此处表示作者有很多事要完 成。故选C。

- **29.** A. where
- B. when
- C. although
- D. because

B 根据下文的"I was sixteen"可知,当作者 16 岁时,作者有很多事情想做。故选 B。

- **30**. A. came
- B. rose
- C. failed
- D. happened

C 根据上文的"But always because of some reasons..."可知,作者的计划总是因为一些原因 未能执行。故选C。

- **31.** A. regret
- B. hope
- C. difficulty
- D. difference

A 根据下文的"Now let's draw up all our life lists and have them 32 one by one together." 可知,作者认为去执行一个又一个人生清单中的 事会让生活不带有遗憾。故选A。

- **32.** A. turned down
- B. taken away
- D. carried out

D 根据下文的"one by one together"可知,作者 去执行一个又一个人生清单中的事。故选D。

- 33. A. started
- B. changed
- C. appeared
- D. stopped

A 根据上文的"our journey to Florida"可知,作 者和丈夫的旅行是通过制订一个又一个的人生清 单并且去执行开始的。故选A。

34. A. Simply

B. Finally

C. Quietly

D. Sadly

B 根据上文的"After many years, our plans were all finished."可知,经过了多年时间,作者最终明白了生活的秘诀。故选 B。

**35.** A. early

B. busy

C. slow

D. fast

C 根据下文的"If you're in too much of a hurry, you need to stop, or you will fly past all the things that are the most fun."可知,作者明白了生活的秘诀是慢下来。故选 C。

#### Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分15 分)

Dream of the Red Chamber, 36. an epic masterpiece in Chinese literature, 37. will be staged (stage) as an original ballet show by the National Ballet of China (NBC) this coming Friday, according to the troupe at a media event.

Considered as one of the four great classical 38. novels (novel) of Chinese literature, *Dream of the Red Chamber*, through the perspective of Jia Baoyu, narrates a story about the fall of his large wealthy family and 39. his (he) complex relationship with Lin Daiyu and Xue Baochai. It shows the beauty of women and complicated ancient Chinese society from all angles, 40. which has a far-reaching influence and world-renowned reputation.

The ballet dance drama will present this Chinese classic novel through a romantic Westernstyle narration, 41. offering (offer) a visual feast with a carefully designed winter snow stage setting and the costumes of the characters. By integrating Chinese silk into the ballet skirts, the designer Yang Donglin committed himself to achieving a "42. combination (combine) of Eastern and Western aesthetics (美学)".

"You can imagine **43.** <u>how</u> appealing it is to see the use of Western ballet to tell a classic Chinese story," chief choreographer Tong Ruirui told *Global Times* on Thursday.

"NBC has done remarkably in adapting this wonderful classic 44. into a ballet. It'll definitely

help the story gain much 45. wider (wide) recognition around the world," commented Zhang Qingshan, expert on Dream of the Red Chamber.

Ⅴ. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

根据下列提示,用英语写一篇 80 词左右的关于 影片《百万英镑》(The Million Pound Note)的评论。

影片讲述了一个美国穷小子亨利·亚当斯 (Henry Adams)在伦敦的奇遇。伦敦的两位富翁打赌,把一张无法兑现的百万支票借给亨利,想看他在一个月内如何收场。一个月的期限到时,亨利不仅没有饿死或被捕,反倒成了富翁,并且赢得了爱情。参考词汇:奇遇 fortuitous adventure;讽刺的sarcastic

#### 【参考范文】

I am going to introduce a movie, *The Million Pound Note*, to you. It describes a fortuitous adventure of Henry Adams, a poor American lad in London. Two rich men in London had a bet on him and wanted to see what would become of him a month later if they gave him a million pound bank note which couldn't be cashed. A month later, Henry wasn't starved or arrested, but became a millionaire. What's more, he even won the love of a pretty lady.

Through humorous and sarcastic language, the movie successfully gave us the wonderful story. I think the movie is well worth watching.

第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

One weekend in July, Jane and her husband, Tom, had driven three hours to camp overnight by a lake in the forest. Unfortunately, on the way an unpleasant subject came up and they started to quarrel. By the time they reached the lake, Jane was so angry that she said to Tom, "I'm going to find a better spot for us to camp." and walked away.

With no path to follow, Jane just walked on for quite a long time. After she had climbed to a high place, she turned around, hoping to see the lake. To her surprise, she saw nothing but forest and, far beyond, a snowcapped mountain top. She suddenly realised that she was lost.

"Tom!" she cried. "Help!"

No reply. If only she had not left her mobile phone in that bag with Tom. Jane kept moving, but the farther she walked, the more confused she became. As night was beginning to fall, Jane was so tired that she had to stop for the night. Lying awake in the dark, Jane wanted very much to be with Tom and her family. She wanted to hold him and tell him how much she loved him.

Jane rose at the break of day, hungry and thirsty. She could hear water trickling (滴落) somewhere at a distance. Quickly she followed the sound to a stream. To her great joy, she also saw some berry bushes. She drank and ate a few berries. Never in her life had she tasted anything better. Feeling stronger now, Jane began to walk along the stream, hoping it would lead her to the lake.

As she picked her way carefully along the stream, Jane heard a helicopter. "Is that for me?" Unfortunately, the trees made it impossible for people to see her from above. A few minutes later, another helicopter flew overhead. Jane took off her yellow blouse, thinking that she should go to an open area and flag them if they came back again.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

	But no	more	helicop	ters	came	and	it	was	getti	ng
dark	again.									

It was daybreak when Jane woke up.

#### 【参考范文】

But no more helicopters came and it was getting dark again. Immediately, an absolute darkness ruled the forest, Jane, exhausted and scared, lay down near a stone, missing her family at a distance. All the fantastic memory crowded in on her and she couldn't help crying, "Hadn't I quarrelled with Tom, walked away and climbed to the high place, I wouldn't be trapped in this awful place, confronted with the danger of dying." She regretted with endless anxiety, and then became sleepy with shining tears in her eyes.

It was daybreak when Jane woke up. Weak as she was, she struggled to her feet, continuing searching for assistance. To her great joy, a helicopter was flying overhead again and again. Eager and excited, she flagged her yellow blouse and spared no effort to yell so as to attract others' attention. Fortunately, she was eventually noticed and brought into the helicopter. There, she saw her husband, a man staring at her, wearing an expression of relief. As tightly as possible, she hugged him and was too thrilled to say anything. Besides, they agreed never to quarrel again, determining to live the life to the fullest.

		па	h
u	•	IT	-

# On the road

# ┌ 单元概览 〜 ......

# ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is travel. This unit starts with a travel quiz, and then you will read "Blogging Australia" to learn about Lauren's story of becoming a photographing blogger. You'll also read the text "Coast to Coast" to know about Eva's family's travel experience. You will learn how to ask and give directions as well as describe locations by listening to the conversation of visiting a new place, and introduce your travel experience by writing a postcard. Through this unit, you are expected to develop a broader understanding of geographical knowledge of British and American countries, know the local customs and practices of different countries and regions, think deeply about the meaning of travelling, and learn to respect different cultures and appreciate cultural diversity.

# ◇ 学习目标

核心素养	具体要求				
		词汇	能正确使用与"旅行"主题相关的单词和词组。		
		语法	能恰当使用现在分词描述旅行中的景点的特色。		
	语言知识	语篇	能围绕"旅行"的主题语境,基于单元提供的多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,读懂语篇内容。		
		语用	能使用新学语言点谈论不同的旅行方式,恰当使用现在分词作定语谈论与旅行相关的内容,能写旅行明信片并介绍旅行经历。		
语言能力		听	听宾馆前台与游客间的一段对话,了解如何精准描述方位、问路以及指路,学习并运用旅行时问路的相关内容和用语。		
		说	能谈论与旅行有关的话题,且能根据语境和情境的需要正确使用现在分词,使表达更加准确、自然。		
	语 技能	读	1. 阅读访谈,概括文章的段落大意,理解采访话题之间的内在联系,了解摄影博主的工作内容,以及受访人对于自然和环保的看法; 2. 阅读电子邮件,简要复述 Eva 一家的旅行经历,理解并学习与旅行相关的表达,并初步了解明信片的特点和书写格式。		
		写	能正确运用现在分词作定语,并能写一张旅行明信片,介绍自己的旅游经历。		

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能学习用英语描述不同国家和地区的风土人情,激发英语学习的兴趣; 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源,巩固本单元所学语言知识,开阔眼界,提高英语运用能力; 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法,评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。
文化意识	能了解不同国家和地区的风土人情,加深对一些英语国家地理知识的了解,学会尊重文化多样性。
思维品质	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。

# ◇ 必备知识

必背单词	destination, gallery, kangaroo, quit, profession, previous, route, aboard, landscape, dramatic, volcano, chain, credit, cash, flight, remote, engage, café, soccer, continent, vehicle, deer, mass
重点表达	be determined to do, fall in love with, work full time, make an impact on, make a comment about, be used to, can't wait to do, come true, pick up, a sense of direction, cheer up, make it, fall asleep, keep in touch
重点知识	<ol> <li>when it comes to (doing) sth.</li> <li>There is no doubt that</li> <li>had done sth. when</li> </ol>
单元语法	现在分词作定语
単元写作	写明信片

# 探・究・构・建

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
- 2. Help to learn about the benefits of travelling.
- 3. Develop reading comprehension ability through discussion and cooperation.

## ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

- 1. profession n. (需要高等教育和训练的)专业,行业
- 2. previous adj. 以前的,先前的
- 3. quit v. 离开(工作岗位、学校等);离任
- 4. make an impact on 对……产生影响
- 5. be used to 习惯于
- 6. fall in love with... 爱上……
- 7. in particular 尤其,特别
- 8. be aware of 意识到

- 9. set off 出发;动身
- 10. be determined to do sth. 决心做某事

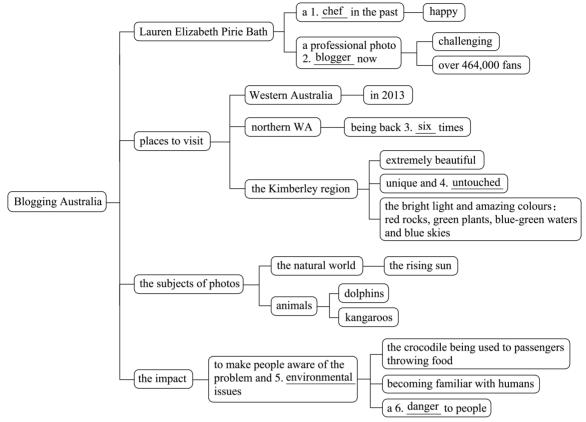
#### (二)阅读词汇

- 1. gallery n. 美术馆,画廊
- 2. kangaroo n. 袋鼠
- 3. destination n. 目的地,终点
- 4. over time 久而久之;随着时间的推移
- 5. make a comment about 对……做出评论
- 6. come true 实现
- 7. be familiar with 对……熟悉

## 任务型课堂

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What does the author mainly do now?
  - A. She protects the environment in Australia.
  - B. She takes pictures of animals in Australia.
  - C. She shares online pictures about Australia.
  - D. She does nothing but travel all over the world.
- 2. What made the author become a professional photo blogger?
  - A. Taking pictures of people.
  - B. Liking writing blogs.
  - C. Wanting to challenge herself.
  - D. Being rewarded for her pictures.
- 3. What does the author have to do to photograph the rising sun?
  - A. Be close to nature.
  - B. Get up early in the morning.
  - C. Stay outside all night.
  - D. Climb onto the top of the mountain.
- **4.** How does the author want to influence people?
  - A. By reminding people to love nature.

- B. By posting pictures with warnings on them.
- C. By commenting how people act.
- D. By giving some negative examples.

#### 答案:1~4 CDBB

#### ○语言知识运用

## Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. At that time I discovered blogging and found that I took pretty good pictures.

[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。由 and 连接 两个并列谓语动词 discovered 和 found,并且 and 后半句中包含一个 that 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]就在那时我接触了博客,而且我发现 自己拍照不错。

2. When I post the picture online, I will make a comment about how bad it is to feed wild crocodiles.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中 When 引导时间状语从句,主句中介词 about 后是以 how 开头的感叹句作宾语从句,语序为陈述语序。

[尝试翻译]当我把照片发到网上时,会附上评论, 指出投喂野生鳄鱼是非常糟糕的行为。

#### ○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following question.

Do you agree with the saying "Travel broadens the

mind"? Give some examples to support your opinion.

略

# Unit 5 课后素养评价(十七)

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### Ⅰ. 阅读理解

Are you attracted to faraway places? Do you prefer to vacation away from other tourists? Are you careful to take only memories and to leave only footprints? If you answered yes to more than one of these questions, you just might be an ecotourist.

Ecotourists are people who want to experience the real natural world and leave it that way when they return home. It started in the 1990s and ecotourism is now growing three times faster than the tourism industry at large. The Ecuador's Amazon Basin (盆地) is contributing to that development, and it gives a view of what ecotourism looks like.

At the Ecolodge, a small group of cabins (小屋) sits Kapawi Ecolodge in the middle of the Achuar people's reserve (保护区) and is only reached by air. From here, visitors can explore parts of the Amazon rainforest seen by few outsiders. Local guides explain how the forest is like their supermarket, where they find food, clothing, medicine and tools. As a result, tourists learn to appreciate the local culture as well as the natural environment.

The owners of Kapawi pay monthly rent to the Achuar people, but they also train the community to run and manage the lodge. They have agreed on a plan to turn the operation over to the Achuar completely. The owners are working to make ecotourism benefit the local people.

You probably won't start your own ecolodge, but you can be an ecotourist if you follow these guidelines: Protect the environment; Support local businesses; Respect the local customs and traditions.

The world is full of attractive places to visit. As an ecotourist, you can enjoy them yourself and make sure that they remain beautiful for future generations as well.

- 1. What do we know about ecotourists?
  - A. Their travel has little bad influence on the natural world.
  - B. They travel to the places without any public transportation.
  - C. They prefer destinations with amazing and unique adventure.
  - D. Their travel is mainly for escaping from the modern civilization.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"Ecotourists are people who want to experience the real natural world and leave it that way when they return home."可知,生态旅游者希望体验真实的自然世界,并在返回时让其保持原样,这意味着他们的旅行对自然世界的负面影响很小。故选 A。
- 2. Why are local guides talked in Paragraph 3?
  - A. To give an example of career.
  - B. To explain how to live in the rainforest.
  - C. To show the importance of natural resources.
  - D. To attract more outsiders to live a life there.
  - C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Local guides explain how the forest is like their supermarket, where they find food, clothing, medicine and tools."可知,当地导游被提及是为了展示自然资源的重要性。故选 C。
- 3. What can you do to be an ecotourist?
  - A. Respect local customs.
  - B. Buy food from other parts.
  - C. Take adventures in the faraway places.
  - D. Travel by air or on foot.
  - A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"Protect the environment; Support local businesses; Respect the local customs and traditions."可知,成为生态旅游者的准则包括保护环境、支持当地商业和尊重当地习俗与传统。选项 A 提到了尊重当地习俗。故选 A。
- **4.** On which part of the newspaper can you read this text?
  - A. Politics.

- B. Economy.
- C. Literature.
- D. Sightseeing.
- D 文章出处题。根据最后一段中的"The world is full of attractive places to visit."及其他内容可 知,整篇文章讨论了生态旅游及其对当地社区的积 极影响,这是一篇关于旅游观光的文章,所以 "Sightseeing"是最合适的报纸版块。故选 D。

#### Ⅱ. 七选五

Travelling is what makes your life complete. You may often complain that there is too much work and no time to travel. 1 There are hundreds of reasons why you should travel. Here are only four of them:

Tomorrow or an accident—you never know which will come first, so take a break now.

Be spontaneous and travel whenever you feel like leaving your daily routine. It is wrong to wait for certain time of the year so that you could spoil yourself.

Your company won't be bankrupt or disappear if you leave it for a week or two.

There are plenty of people who can substitute for you and do your job while you are away. 2 Here the point is to plan a week ahead. If you work hard, you can play hard. Always remember that the quality of your work will improve if you have a good rest and let yourself relax and recharge with energy and positive emotions.

You cannot be a good employee if you are unhappy and tense.

Your family suffers, too. When your mind is free, you can perform at 200 percent. 3 You lose your balance and harmony if you experience too much stress, perform a lot of demanding routine and constantly take responsibilities. Take care of yourself. Make sure that your well-being does not suffer.

We all want to excel in our profession. We want to be in charge even at home. We like to be appreciated by the community. Being such a person requires several important qualities. To gain the required qualities you must have a multidimensional personality. The more new activities you practise, the more chances you can have to become a better leader. 5

- A. Making excuses is much easier than acting.
- B. Finding a balance isn't easy, yet it is worth trying.
- C. Have a richer life if you want to be a better leader.
- D. Travelling is also a means of broadening your horizons.
- E. You are useless as a worker if your body does not feel great.
- F. You can do some of it in advance or you can put it on hold.
- G. Be an instructor, inspire others and do what you would like others to do.

#### 答案:1~5 BFECG

# Section Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Get the main idea of each paragraph.
- 2. Obtain the detail information about Lauren Bath and learn some expressions related to travel by careful reading.
- 3. Have a better understanding of the old saying—"Travel broadens the mind" by thinking and sharing.

# ○ 自主式预习 ○

- Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
- 1. The **destination** of someone or something is the place to which they are going or being sent.

目的地

- 2. The exhibition of Chinese painting will be held at the gallery next month. 美术馆,画廊
- **4.** It is unwise of parents to **quit** their jobs in order to provide better conditions for their children.

离开(工作岗位)

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
profession n. (需要高 等教育和训练的)专 业,行业	professional adj. 职业的, 专业的 n. 专业人员;职业 选手 professor n. 教授,(大学
	的)讲师
previous adj. 以前的, 先前的	previously adv. 以前,先 前

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. be aware of 意识到
- 2. come true 实现
- 3. make an impact on 对……产生影响
- 4. make a comment about 对……做出评论
- 5. be familiar with 对……熟悉
- 6. be determined to do sth. 决心做某事
- 7. be used to sth. 习惯于某事

8. fall in love with 爱上;喜欢上

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:find that...

At that time I discovered blogging and <u>found that</u> I took pretty good pictures.

就在那时我接触了博客,而且我发现自己拍照不错。

2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作定语

In less than 18 months, there were over 200,000 people reading my blog!

在不到 18 个月的时间里,就有 20 多万人看了我的 博客!

3. 句型公式: make... do sth.

In 2013, I was determined to <u>make my dream</u> <u>come true</u>: I would become Australia's first professional photo blogger.

在 2013 年,我决心实现自己的梦想:成为澳大利亚第一位职业摄影博主。

4. 句型公式: when it comes to (doing) sth.

I use my photography to make an impact on people, especially when it comes to environmental issues.

我通过摄影来影响人们,尤其是涉及环境问题的时候。

5. 句型公式:how 引导感叹句

When I post the picture online, I will make a comment about <u>how bad it is to feed</u> wild crocodiles.

当我把照片发到网上时,会附上评论,指出投喂野生鳄鱼是非常糟糕的行为。

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### 1. quit v. 离开(工作岗位、学校等);离任;停止;辞职

「教材原文 ] Why Lauren Bath quit her job as a chef and chose a different profession.

为什么劳伦,巴思辞去了厨师的工作,选择了一份 不同的职业。

#### 「归纳拓展」

quit doing... 停止做······:放弃做······ quit one's job 辞掉某人的工作 quit office/school/smoking 离职/退学/戒烟 quit sb. of... 使某人摆脱······ be quit of sth. 摆脱某事

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1 No matter what happens, we shouldn't quit trying (try) to achieve our dreams.
- 2 People now long to be quit of war.
- (2)写作微练

(读后续写之人物描写)她依靠严厉的爱来帮助他 戒酒。

She relied on tough love to help him quit drinking.

#### 2. come true 实现

「教材原文]In 2013,I was determined to make my dream come true...

在 2013 年,我决心实现自己的梦想……

#### 「归纳拓展」

come about 发生;产生

come across 偶遇;无意中发现

come off 脱落;分开;结果;表现

come on (表示鼓励、催促等)快,走吧;开始,发生; 进步,进展

come out 发表,出版:出现,显露:结果是 come up 走上前来;被提出;出现

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Where did you come across him?
- ②Can you tell me how the accident came about?

- 3 It is said that her new novel will come out next month
- (4) The label had come off, so there was no way of knowing what was on the disk.
- (2)写作微练

(读后续写之主旨升华)无论我们不断地认为、相信 或思考什么,它最终都会在现实中实现。因此,总 之,发现自己新的一面是我们内心成功背后的力 量。

Whatever we think and believe in or mind continuously, it will eventually come true in reality. So in a word, the discovery of a new side of oneself is the power behind the success that is within us.

#### 3. when it comes to (doing) sth.

[教材原文] I use my photography to make an impact on people, especially when it comes to environmental issues.

我通过摄影来影响人们,尤其是涉及环境问题的时 候。

#### 「归纳拓展」

when it comes to (doing) sth. 意为"一谈到; 就……而论;当谈及……时",是一个固定结构,to 是介词, to 后可跟动词-ing形式或名词。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Carol is no match for her mother when it comes to cooking.
- ②When it comes to developing (develop) healthy habits, parents influence their children more than anyone else.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之倡议书)说到海洋,我们已经意识到 我们需要解决海洋污染问题。

When it comes to the ocean, we have been aware that we need to handle with its pollution.

# Unit 5 课后素养评价(十八)

# Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. The girl had to quit <u>learning</u> (learn) painting because her parents couldn't pay the fee for her.
- **2.** Favourable policies are in effect to encourage employees' professional (profession) development.
- No matter what you may say, I am determined to do (do) what I think is right.
- **4.** It is said that regular exercise has a positive impact on both physical and mental health.
- **5.** Taking pictures of wild animals is a <u>challenging</u> (challenge) job.
- **6.** Mount Tai is <u>extremely</u> (extreme) beautiful, and it attracts millions of tourists every year.

#### Ⅱ. 短语填空

in particular; fall in love with; be aware of; be familiar with; be used to; come true; make an impact on; make a comment about

- 1. Through the activity, we will be aware of the importance of preserving (保护) traditional Chinese culture.
- 2. I am familiar with Chinese painting, for my father is a Chinese painter.
- **3.** I hope I will be an influential designer in the future and make an impact on the fashion world.
- **4.** As a Chinese who is interested in travelling <u>in</u> <u>particular</u>, I would like to introduce my favourite city—Beijing.
- 5. His wish <u>came true</u>, and the museum opened in 1759, six years after he died.
- **6.** I immediately <u>fell in love with</u> the English novel when my teacher first introduced it to me.
- 7. He made a comment about the parking problems and many people agreed with him.
- 8. She is used to dealing with all kinds of people in her job.

#### Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 我决心从现在开始更加努力地学习,以实现我的 梦想。(determined; make+宾语+宾语补足语) I <u>am determined to study harder</u> from now on to make my dream come true.

- **2.** 在院子里边跑边笑的男孩精力很充沛。(现在分词 短语作后置定语)
  - The boy <u>running</u> and <u>laughing</u> in the <u>yard</u> is very energetic.
- 3. 我以前也这样认为,但现在不这样认为了。(省略句)
  - I thought so before, but not now.
- 4. 你无法想象登上泰山之巅是多么困难! (感叹句) You can't imagine how difficult it is to climb to the top of Mount Tai!
- 5. 当提及如何保护环境时,每个人都有自己的观点。 (come)

When it comes to how to protect environment, everyone has an opinion.

#### Ⅳ. 完形填空

Have you ever travelled around by bike? This spring my older brother and I left the busy city and spent a long weekend \_\_1\_ in the countryside. Our speed was only around 14 km per hour, but we didn't \_\_2\_. We hadn't come to break any speed records, after all. All we wanted was some \_\_3\_ air and a break from schoolwork.

We really 4 ourselves while cycling along traffic-free country paths. There was plenty of sunshine, 5 it was quite cold, especially in the mornings. The good news was that soon we 6 as we rode. Our only problem was when my brakes (刹车) started making a terrible noise. But I didn't care as it gave us an 7 to visit a café while a bike mechanic (机修工) had a look at it.

Every few kilometres there was a 8 where we could talk with local people. One of the women was very 9 and showed us the way when we got lost. On Saturday night we were 10 at 2 am by some young people. They kept singing loudly in the next room, which made us 11 all night. We felt very 12 when we got up the next morning. Soon we set off. We were more cheerful on the way when the sun came out. 13 , things like that happened only once. Anyway I still like travelling around by

bike—it's 14 and it's fun. If you're looking for a short break that's active and cheap, then cycling is a great 15 !

1. A. painting B. studying

D. cycling C. teaching

D 根据下文的"cycling along traffic-free country paths"可知,"我们"是在乡下骑自行车。故选 D。

2. A. regret B. mind C. fail D. realise

B 根据该空后的"We hadn't come to break any speed records"可知,"我们"的车速只有大约14千 米每小时,但是"我们"并不"介意(mind)"。故选 B

3. A. fresh B. thin C. cool D. dry

A 从城市来到乡下应该是想呼吸一下"新鲜的 (fresh)"空气。故选 A。

4. A. hurt B. hated C. changed D. enjoyed

D 根据下文的"cycling along traffic-free country paths"可知,在没有汽车的乡间小路上,"我们"无忧无 虑地骑着自行车,十分享受。enjoy oneself 意为"过得 愉快"。故选 D。

**5.** A. but B. so C. or D. unless

A 该空前后为转折关系,故选 A。

6. A. came back B. gave up

C. warmed up D. calmed down

C 根据上文的"it was quite cold"和"The good news" 可知,"我们"骑了一会儿自行车"暖和(warm up)多 了"。故选 C。

7. A. order B. opinion D. explanation

C 根据该空后的"to visit a café while a bike mechanic (机修工) had a look at it"可知,趁着机 修工帮"我们"修自行车,"我们"就有"借口 (excuse)"去小餐馆逛一逛了。故选 C。

**8.** A. city B. lake C. school D. village

D 根据上文的"the countryside"和下文的"we could talk with local people"可知,这里是说每隔 几千米就有一个"村庄(village)"。故选 D。

9. A. friendly B. honest C. stupid D. nervous

A 根据下文的"showed us the way when we got lost"可知,这位妇女非常"友好(friendly)"。故选

**10.** A. saved B. paid C. woken D. greeted

> C 根据下文的"They kept singing loudly in the next room"可知,"我们"被隔壁的一些年轻人"吵 醒(woken)"了。故选 C。

11. A. excited B. sleepless C. speechless D. frightened

B 他们唱歌的声音让"我们"彻夜"未眠 (sleepless)"。故选 B。

**12.** A. shy B. busy C. bored D. tired

> D 一晚上没有休息好,所以我们早上起床后感 觉很"累(tired)"。故选 D。

13. A. Strangely B. Doubtfully

C. Luckily D. Naturally

C 根据该空后的"things like that happened only once"可知,像那样的事情只发生了一次,所 以非常"幸运(Luckily)"。故选 C。

**14.** A. true B. simple

> C. difficult D. dangerous

B 骑自行车游玩"简单(simple)"又有趣。故选 B

15. A. goal B. dream C. result D. choice

> D 根据全文内容可知,作者认为骑自行车游玩 是一个很好的"选择(choice)"。故选 D。

# Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Discover and understand the rules of using the present participle as attributive.
- 2. Distinguish the gerund from the present participle.

## ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

 She took out a map and indicated the quickest route to us.

- 2. A volcano is a mountain with a large opening at the top through which melting rock, steam, gases escape from time to time with violent force from inside the earth. 火山
- 3. The song always reminds me of the natural landscape of Xizang. 风景
- 4. Payments can be made by cheque or in cash. 现金
- **5.** Your **budget** is the money that is available to you. 预算
- 6. A large supermarket chain was just open. 连锁店
- 8. It is very convenient to pay by credit card.

赊购,信贷

- 9. Finally, his dream to **hike** the Appalachian
  Trail was realised.

  在……徒步旅行
- 10. The hotel is set on three floors. There's a bar and a **café** at ground level. 咖啡馆,小餐馆

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇			
dramatic adj. 激动人心的;给人印象深刻的	dramatically <i>adv</i> . 剧烈地;戏剧地;显著地			
	drama n. 戏剧,戏剧艺术			
16 t 2 16	current adj. 现在的;流 通的			
currency n. 货币,通货	currently adv. 当前;一般地			

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
flight n. 航班,班机	fly v. 飞行,飞越
engage v. 参与,参加	engaged adj. 忙碌的;已 订婚的
	engagement n. 约会;交 战;订婚
aboard prep. 在(船、飞机、火车)上	board v. 登(飞机、车、船 等);接受乘客

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. take a look at 看一看
- 2. go on a trip 去旅行
- 3. apply for 申请
- 4. at the end of 在 ······末尾
- 5. by the way 顺便问一下
- 6. check in 办理登机手续
- 7. in advance 预先,提前
- 8. put on 穿上

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:There is no doubt that...

There is no doubt that the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...

毫无疑问,伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅行者准备的……

2. 句型公式:who 引导定语从句

Are you one of those people who work around the clock?

你是那种夜以继日工作的人吗?

# ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### 1. engage v. 参与,参加

[教材原文] Adventure tourism: travellers explore unusual or remote destinations, often engaging in risky activities.

冒险旅行:旅行者们探索不寻常的或者是偏远的目 的地,通常会参与冒险活动。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)engage in 参加;从事;忙于 engage to sb. 与某人订婚
- (2)engagement n. 约会;交战;订婚
- (3)engaged adj. 忙碌的;已订婚的 be engaged in... 从事于;忙于 ·······

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1 The activity aims to encourage students to engage in making a difference in society.
- ②I can't see you on Monday because I have a previous engagement (engage).
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)尽管忙于学习,你还是应 该留出一些时间参加一些户外活动,比如远足和滑 雪。

Although engaged in your study, you should set aside some time to get involved in some outdoor activities such as hiking and skiing.

②(应用文写作之说明文)一项研究表明,参加课外 活动的学生比那些不参加的学生更快乐。

A study shows the students engaged in afterschool activities are happier than those who are

#### 2. There is no doubt that...

「教材原文 There is no doubt that the Bernina Express is a journey for travellers who want to get back to nature...

毫无疑问,伯尔尼纳快车是为想要回到大自然的旅 行者准备的 ……

[句式分析]There is no doubt that... 意为"毫无疑 问·····", that 引导同位语从句,解释说明 doubt 的 具体内容。

#### 「归纳拓展」

(1)含有 doubt 的其他常用句型及结构:

There is some doubt whether... 是否……有疑问。 I don't/never doubt that... 我不/从不怀疑…… I doubt/I have doubts... whether/if... 我怀疑……

#### 是否……

without/beyond doubt 毫无疑问

(2)that 引导同位语从句,that 只起连接作用,无实 际意义,不充当句子成分。同位语从句一般由 that, wh-类连接词引导,常放在 doubt, fact, news, idea, truth, hope, problem, information, thought 等 抽象名词之后,解释说明该名词的具体内容。

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1 There is some doubt whether we can use my credit card to pay for the ticket.
- 2 She can't resist the temptation to eat more delicious food, so she is without/beyond doubt overweight.
- 3 I don't doubt that taking part in various school activities is beneficial to us students.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)我怀疑开展这项活动是 否有益;也许我们应该考虑一种不同的方法。

I doubt whether/if it would be beneficial to carry out the activity; perhaps we should consider a different approach.

②(应用文写作之推荐信)毫无疑问,北京许多有名 的旅游景点,包括颐和园、故宫博物院和长城,都是 中国古代文明和智慧的象征。

There is no doubt that many famous tourist attractions in Beijing, including the Summer Palace, the Palace Museum and the Great Wall, are the symbols of ancient Chinese civilisation and wisdom.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. remote: A. adj. 远程的 B. adj. 关系较远的,远 亲的 C. adj. 偏远的,偏僻的
  - ① I'm grateful to Linda, a remote relative of mine, for her generous help. В
  - ②(2024·全国甲卷) The Saint Lukas is one of five government-sponsored medical trains that travel to remote towns in central and eastern Russia. C
  - 3 This article introduces some remote control methods of CNC system. Α
- 2. credit: A. n. 借款,贷款 B. n. 学分 C. n. 信用
  - ① You must pass the examination to get credits

for the course.

 $\underline{\underline{B}}$ 

②Her credit isn't good anywhere now.

 $\overline{c}$ 

③You can get the interest-free **credit** on all our products.

It is a movie that engages both the mind and the eye.

A. v. 聘用 B. v. (使)从事,参加 C. v. 吸引

# 语法研习课

# 现在分词作定语

## 。语法感知

①... there were over 200,000 people **reading** my blog!

②I love to photograph the rising sun, ...

③... there were over 200,000 people who read my blog!

4 I love to photograph the sun that is rising, ...

- 1. 句①②中黑体部分是现在分词作 <u>定语</u>,与所修饰 的名词之间是 主动关系。
- 2. 句③④中黑体部分是 定语从句作定语。

# ·语法精讲

#### 一、现在分词作定语的位置

现在分词作定语在句中通常有两个位置,如果是 单个的现在分词作定语,常放在被修饰词前作前置定 语;如果是现在分词短语作定语,常放在被修饰词后 作后置定语。

He is an attacking player.

他是一名进攻型运动员。

A little child learning to walk often falls.

学走路的小孩常常摔跤。

Do you know the number of people **coming to** the party?

你知道来参加聚会的人数吗?

#### 名师点拨■■■■■

当现在分词作后置定语时,可转化为相应的定语 从句。

A young man **writing novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.

→ A young man **who writes novels** gave a speech to us yesterday.

一位写小说的年轻人昨天来给我们做演讲。

The girl sitting next to me is my cousin.

→ The girl **who is sitting next to me** is my cousin. 坐在我旁边的女孩是我的表妹。

#### 二、现在分词作定语的用法

1. 说明被修饰词的性质、特征或用途时,现在分词和被修饰词之间没有主谓关系,相当于一个介词 for 引导的短语。

They set up an operating table ( = a table for operating) in a hospital.

他们将手术台架设在一家医院里。

He may be in **the reading room** ( = a room for reading).

他可能在阅览室里。

2. 与被修饰词之间为主动关系且表示正在进行的动作,可改成相应的定语从句。

There were about 200 children **studying** (= who were studying) in the art school.

大约有两百个孩子在这所艺术学校学习。

3. 有些现在分词已经转化成形容词,常作定语,用来修饰物,表示"令人……"。这类词也可以转换成定语从句。常用的此类词有 exciting, amusing, amazing, astonishing, shocking, puzzling, confusing, disappointing, discouraging, pleasing, striking, boring, tiring, touching, moving, interesting, satisfying, terrifying, frightening等。

That must have been a **terrifying** experience.

那一定是一段可怕的经历。

The experiment was an **amazing** success. 那项试验取得了惊人的成功。

There is a page **missing** from this book. 这本书缺了一页。

#### 三、现在分词的被动语态

如果现在分词与被修饰词之间是被动关系,就用它的被动语态,即 being done。being done 通常表示正在被做,常作后置定语。

The tall building **being built** now is our new school. 正在被建的高楼是我们的新学校。

The question **being discussed** was presented by the headmaster.

正在被讨论的问题是校长提出的。

## 语法冲关

#### Ⅰ. 改写短语

- 1. the meeting room  $\rightarrow$  the room for meetings
- 2. a walking stick  $\rightarrow$  a stick for walking
- 3. an embarrassing question  $\rightarrow$  a question which is embarrassing
- **4.** a sleeping child → a child who is sleeping
- 5. a listening child  $\rightarrow$  a child who is listening

#### Ⅱ. 句型转换

- 1. The young man sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.
  - → The young man who/that was sitting between John and Mary was the editor of the campus newspaper.

- 2. The man standing at the school gate is Professor
  - → The man who/that is standing at the school gate is Professor Hua.
- 3. The bike which is being repaired belongs to Mr
  - → The bike being repaired belongs to Mr Smith.
- 4. The topic being discussed is about environmental problems.
  - → The topic which is being discussed is about environmental problems.
- 5. I like to watch the leaves which are falling in the sky.
  - →I like to watch the falling leaves in the sky.

# Unit 5 课后素养评价(十九)

# Section **II** Using language

#### Ⅰ. 词语填空

#### aboard; remote; route; hike; chain

- 1. Scientists hope to send astronauts (航天员) to the remote universe one day to have a better knowledge of the universe.
- 2. Our school organises two travel routes to China, both of which are fascinating (极具吸引力的).
- 3. They are going to hike to the top of a mountain.
- **4.** The whole food chain is affected by the overuse of chemicals in agriculture.
- **5.** After all the passengers went aboard, the ship set sail.

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. As we can see, computers have brought dramatic (drama) changes to the workplace.
- 2. In order to achieve our goals, we need to make a detailed plan in advance.
- 3. There is no doubt that she has the makings of a successful journalist.
- 4. Although she is busy, she remains actively engaged in regular exercise.
- 5. The details of today's flights (fly) are displayed on the monitor.
- 6. When I go camping, I sleep in a sleeping (sleep) bag.
- 7. Last night, there were millions of people watching (watch) the opening ceremony (仪式).

8. There was a terrible noise following (follow) the burst of light.

#### Ⅲ. 句型转换

- 1. The man who is taking a walk on the playground is my English teacher.
  - → The man taking a walk on the playground is my English teacher.
- 2. Tom received a phone call from his mother who said that she would visit him this weekend.
  - → Tom received a phone call from his mother saying that she would visit him this weekend.
- 3. The topic which is being referred to is about environmental problems.
  - → The topic being referred to is environmental problems.
- 4. This is one of the problems which are being discussed at the meeting at present.
  - → This is one of the problems being discussed at the meeting at present.
- 5. The book which belongs to him is lying on the ground.
  - → The book belonging to him is lying on the ground.
- 6. His first book that will be published next month is based on a true story.
  - → His first book to be published next month is based on a true story.

#### Ⅳ. 阅读理解

We live in a town with three beaches. There are two parks less than 10 minutes' walk from home where neighbourhood children gather to play. However, what my children want to do after school is to pick up a screen and stare at it for hours. They are not alone. Today's children spend an average of four and a half hours a day looking at screens, addicted to watching television and using the Internet.

In the past few years, an increasing number of people and organisations have begun coming up with plans to resist this trend (趋势). A couple of years ago film-maker David Bond realised that his children, then aged five and three, were addicted to screens to the point where he was able to say "chocolate" into his 3-year-old son's ear without getting a response. He realised that something needed to change. He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marketed to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature.

"Just five more minutes outdoors can make a difference," David Bond says. "There is a lot of really interesting evidence which seems to be suggesting that if children are inspired up to the age of seven, then being outdoors will be on habit for life." His own children have got into the habit of playing outside now: "We just send them out into the garden and tell them not to come back in for a while."

Summer is upon us. There is an amazing world out there, and it needs our children as much as they need it. Let us get them out and let them play.

- 1. What is the problem with the author's children?
  - A. They often annoy their neighbours.
  - B. They are tired of doing their homework.
  - C. They have no friends to play with.
  - D. They stay in front of screens for too long.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"However, what my children want to do after school is to pick up a screen and stare at it for hours."可知,作者的孩子放学后就拿起电子设备盯着屏幕看,他们的问题是在屏幕前待的时间太长了。故选 D。
- 2. Which of the following can replace the underlined word

"chocolate" in Paragraph 2?

A. Pudding. B. Handbag.

C. Wine. D. Crop.

A 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的"Today's children spend an average of four and a half hours a day looking at screens, addicted to watching television and using the Internet."和第二段中的"A couple of years ago film-maker David Bond realised that his children, then aged five and three, were addicted to screens to the point where he was able to say 'chocolate' into his 3-year-old son's ear without getting a response. He realised that something needed to change."可知,孩子们对电子设备如此上瘾以至于家长说给他们拿巧克力吃,他们都不会有任何的回应。因此,pudding(甜点)可以替换画线词,指的是甜食。故选 A。

- 3. How did David Bond realise his idea?
  - A. By organising outdoor activities.
  - B. By making a documentary film.
  - C. By advertising in London media.
  - D. By creating a network of friends.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marketed to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature."可知,David Bond 通过拍一部纪录片来实现他的想法。故选B。
- **4.** Which can be a suitable title for the text?
  - A. Let Children Have Fun
  - B. Young Children Need More Free Time
  - C. Market Nature to Children
  - D. David Bond: A Role Model for Children
  - C 标题归纳题。通读全文,根据第二段中的"He documented his journey as he set about treating nature as a brand to be marked to young people. The result was *Project Wild Thing*, a film which records the birth of the World Network, a group of organisations with the common goal of getting children out into nature."可知,本文主要讲述了电影制作人 David Bond 为了让孩子们远离屏幕,拍摄自己的旅行,并将自然当作一个品牌,推销给年轻人,则 C 项"把自然推销给年轻人"适合作为本文标题。故选 C。

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Get to know the travelling experiences and feelings of the author through reading.
- 2. Learn the usage of pronouns and find out what they refer to in the text.
- 3. Learn to respect cultural diversity, form a sense of cross-cultural awareness and deeply understand the meaning of travel.

## 自主式预习 。

- T. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
- 1. Soccer needs only two feet and a ball.
- 2. A vehicle is a machine with an engine that carries people or things from one place to another, such as a bus, car, or truck. 交通工具,车辆
- **3.** A mass of something is a large amount of it. 许多

#### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
continent n. 洲,大洲, 大陆	continental adj. 大洲的, 大陆的
direction n. 方向;指导	direct v. 指挥;指示
manage v. 管理;设法 做成	management n. 管理;管 理部门
	manager n. 经理
memorable adj. 值得 纪念的;难忘的	memorise v. 记住;记录; 记下
	memory n. 记忆力;回 忆;记忆

- Ⅲ. 补全短语
- 1. make it 及时到达;取得成功
- 2. pick up (用车)接;搭载;捡起,拾起

- 3. cheer... up 使 …… 高兴/振作起来
- 4. keep in touch 保持联系
- 5. fall asleep 入睡;睡着
- 6. can't wait to do sth. 等不及做某事;迫不及待做某 事

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: had done sth. when...

I'd fallen asleep, when I heard Dad's phone

我刚睡着,突然听到爸爸的手机响了。

2. 句型公式:强调句型

It was then that I realised her seat was empty! 直到那时我才意识到她的座位是空的!

3. 句型公式: while 引导时间状语从句

Well, while I was sleeping, Dad stopped for some petrol and Mum also got out to take photos, and you can guess the rest...

原来,在我睡着的时候,爸爸停车去加油,妈妈也 下车去拍照了,你应该能猜到下面发生什么 了……

4. 句型公式: be doing... when...

Mum was using Dad's phone to take photos of the colourful little houses along the coast when we saw something amazing—a killer whale! 正当妈妈用爸爸的手机给沿岸五颜六色的小房子 拍照时,我们看到了令人惊喜的一幕———只虎 鲸!

5. 句型公式:so... that...

Mum was so excited that she dropped the phone into the sea.

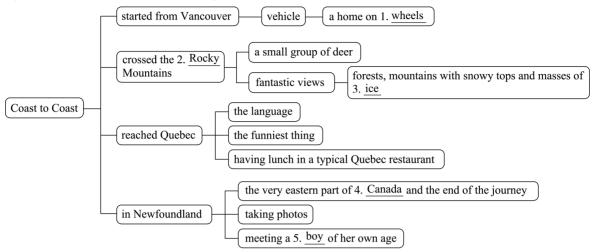
妈妈太兴奋了,结果把手机掉进了海里。

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

#### Part 1 课文理解

#### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



#### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. What is the main idea of the text?
  - A. Experiences in Canada.
  - B. Trips across the North American continent.
  - C. Funny stories happening in Quebec.
  - D. Learning French in Canada.
- 2. How did the family travel?
  - A. By train. B
    - B. By bus.
  - C. By touring car. D. By boat.
- **3.** What did the author think of the views of the Rocky Mountains?
  - A. Wonderful.
- B. Terrible.
- C. Imaginable.
- D. Boring.
- 4. What happened in Quebec that day?
  - A. The author's father lost his way.
  - B. The author overslept.
  - C. The author's mother was ill.
  - D. The author's mother was left somewhere.
- **5.** Why was the author's mother so excited at the end of their journey?
  - A. Because she saw a bear.
  - B. Because she was able to take photos.
  - C. Because she met a killer whale.
  - D. Because she watched a group of deer.

#### 答案:1~5 BCADC

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

1. We started from Vancouver, where we picked up our vehicle for the trip—a home on wheels. [句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。其中关系副

词 where 引导的是非限制性定语从句, where 指的是 in Vancouver。

[尝试翻译] 我们从温哥华出发,在那里我们开上了我们旅行用的交通工具——一辆房车。

2. We had the famous "poutine", which is a dish of French fries, fresh cheese and a hot brown sauce called "gravy".

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。关系代词 which 引导 非限制性定语 从句, which 代指先行词 "poutine"。called "gravy"是过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰前面的名词 sauce。

[尝试翻译] 我们吃了有名的"肉汁奶酪薯条",这是一道由炸薯条、新鲜奶酪和一种叫作"肉汁"的褐色热酱汁做成的菜。

3. Mum was using Dad's phone to take photos of the colourful little houses along the coast when we saw something amazing—a killer whale!

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。was/were doing/be about to do/had just done...when... 句型意为"正 在 做 ······/正 要 做······/刚 做 完 ······ 突然······",when 引导时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 正当妈妈用爸爸的手机给沿岸五颜六色的小房子拍照时,我们看到了令人惊喜的一幕——一只虎鲸!

#### ○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think Eva enjoyed most about the trip? 喀
- **2.** Could you describe a trip with your family that impressed you most?

略

#### 语言梳理 Part 2

# 1. mass n. 大量,许多;群众,民众;团,块

#### adj. 大规模的;群众的

「教材原文] There were forests, mountains with snowy tops and masses of ice.

那里有森林,白雪皑皑的群山以及大片的冰原。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)a mass of/masses of 许多,大量(of 后面所接的 名词为可数名词的复数或不可数名词,并且谓语动 词的单复数形式与该名词的数一致)
- (2)the mass of 大部分(谓语动词的单复数形式与 后面的名词的数一致)
- (3) in the mass (=as a whole) 大体上;总的来说
- (4) the masses 群众,大众
- (5) mass production 批量生产

mass market 大众市场

(6) massive adj. 巨大的;大而重的

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- 1 There are (be) masses of dark clouds in the
- ② The mass of workers (worker) do not want this strike.
- ③(2023 · 新课标 I 卷) At the end of the thirty days, you will then add back a small number of carefully chosen online activities that you believe will provide massive (mass) benefits to the things you value.
- (2)写作微练

(读后续写之人物描写)这些小女孩穿着漂亮的衣 服看起来很迷人,我们给她们拍了很多照片。

The little girls looked so charming in their beautiful clothes that we took masses of/a mass of photos of them.

### 2. make it 及时到达;取得成功;达到预定目标;约时 间、地点

#### 「教材原文 We made it!

我们做到了!

#### 「归纳拓展」

make up 组成,构成;编造;化妆;整理;和解 make up for 补偿,弥补

make out 辨别;理解;看清

make full/good use of 充分利用

make fun of(=laugh at) 嘲笑

make room for 为 … … 腾出地方

make efforts 做出努力

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Let's make it six o'clock.
- ②Kate heard a man's voice, but she couldn't make out what he was saying.
- 3 You ought not to make fun of him. He is not the one you laugh at but learn from.
- 4 Could you please make room for the old woman?
- (2)写作微练

(读后续写之细节描写)尽管他做出了极大的努力, 他还是没能成功地弥补自己的错误。

Although he made great efforts, he didn't make up for his mistake successfully.

#### 3. had done sth. when...

[教材原文] I'd fallen asleep, when I heard Dad's phone ringing.

我刚睡着,突然听到爸爸的手机响了。

#### 「归纳拓展〕

be doing sth. when... 正在做某事,突然……

be about to do sth./on the point of doing sth. when... 正要做某事,突然……

had just done sth. when... 刚做完某事,突然…… 「即学即练」

## (1)单句语法填空

- ① Tom had just fallen asleep when someone knocked at the door.
- 2) We were on the point of leaving when a big noise came from the next room.
- 3 The thief was about to put (put) his hand into the lady's handbag when the bus suddenly stopped.
- (2)写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写)我正在上网搜索一些信息 时,我们的厨房突然着火了。我哥哥和我立即采取 行动灭火。

I was searching the Internet for some information when our kitchen caught fire. My brother and I took immediate action to put out the fire.

# 多义词汇 专练

- 1. vehicle: A. n. 工具,手段 B. n. 交通工具,车辆
  - ① Vehicles also cause air pollution, which produces city smogs, leading to acid rain and

global warming.

В

- ②A television talk show is an excellent **vehicle** for self-promotion.
- **2.** mass: A. n. 群众 B. adj. 大批的,数量极多的 C. n. 团,块,堆
- ① The cold air **masses** are moving from Siberia towards Inner Mongolia.
- ②The masses are the true creators of history.
- 3 These precise instruments have already gone into mass production.

A

# Unit 5 课后素养评价(二十)

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### Ⅰ. 单词拼写

- 1. The <u>soccer</u> (英式足球) match had to be postponed because of the heavy rain.
- 2. Before the rain, the sky was a <u>mass</u> (团) of clouds.
- 3. There are two long rivers within the <u>continent</u> (大陆).
- 4. Our first <u>vehicle</u> (交通工具) was an old brokendown bicycle.
- **5.** A closed season on <u>deer</u> (鹿) hunting was established on Long Island.

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. She picked up some French when living in Paris.
- 2. The girl can't wait to share (share) the good news with her good friends.
- 3. It is important to cheer <u>up</u> and look on the bright side of life when we get into trouble.
- **4.** Do telephone me as often as you can. I don't want to lose touch with you.
- **5.** Lily was about to study (study) when someone knocked at the door.
- 6. If you apply yourself to study, you can make <u>it</u>. Ⅲ. 短语填空

pick up; fall asleep; masses of; keep in touch with; refer to

- 1. When I said some people were stupid, I wasn't referring to you.
- 2. The page was covered with <u>masses of</u> figures, making me dizzy (头晕目眩的).
- 3. Keeping in touch with our friends is an important part of friendship.
- **4.** He <u>picks up</u> this theme again in later chapters of the book.
- **5.** His eyes were shut and he seemed to have <u>fallen</u> asleep.

#### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 毫无疑问, 近视是青少年中的一个严重问题。 (doubt)

There is no doubt that near-sightedness is a serious problem among teenagers.

- 2. 是什么使得他没按时来? (强调句型)
  - What was it that prevented him from coming on time?
- 3. 我们正收拾行李准备出去度周末时,我女儿听到了呼救声。(be doing... when...)
  - We were packing to leave for a weekend away when my daughter heard cries for help.
- 4. 你等待时我会陪伴你。(while 引导时间状语从句) I'll keep you company while you're waiting.

#### Ⅴ. 语法填空

The *dizi*, the Chinese flute, is a traditional Chinese woodwind instrument 1. <a href="that/which">that/which</a> has been played for thousands of years. It is one of the oldest 2. <a href="known">known</a> (known) bamboo wind instruments and is still widely used today in various 3. <a href="styles">styles</a> (style) of Chinese music.

The dizi is 4. typically (typical) made from bamboo. It is a thin, long and hollow (空的) pipe with a blowing hole at one end and several finger holes along the body. It produces a clear and bright sound. It is used in a variety of 5. musical (music) contexts, including traditional folk music and classical bands. Usually, it 6. plays (play) an important role in Chinese opera and dance accompaniments(伴奏). Dizi players use a variety of skills 7. to improve (improve) the instrument's expressiveness. These skills include circular (循环) breathing, which allows for continuous play without taking a breath.

The *dizi* is **8.** a unique and necessary instrument in traditional Chinese music. With **9.** its (it) beautiful sound and rich history, it continues to attract audiences around the world **10.** and remains an important part of China's cultural heritage.

#### Ⅵ. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你的英国朋友 Mike 打算暑假来中国。他对中国传统文化非常感兴趣,希望你能为他推荐一些名胜古迹。请你用英语给他发一封电子邮件,向他推荐至少两个你喜欢的名胜古迹。内容包括:

- 1. 简要介绍你推荐的名胜古迹;
- 2. 说明你推荐的理由;
- 3. 表达你的祝愿。

注意:词数80左右。

Dear Mike,

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Mike,

I'm glad to know that you are coming to China during summer vacation. The following is a brief introduction about some places of interest that I strongly recommend.

The Great Wall of China is one of the great wonders in the world. Because of its rich history and magnificent appearance, the Great Wall attracts a lot of tourists, scientists, and historians. Besides, the famous West Lake is like a brilliant pearl embedded in the beautiful and fertile shores of East China Sea near the mouth of the Hangzhou Bay, whose view is charming and fascinating enough to make an impression on every visitor.

I'm looking forward to your arrival. There are many other wonderful places here. Wish you a nice journey!

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写 两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Last summer when my family was road tripping to Montana, we arrived in Great Falls late one night. The kids had fallen asleep in the car, so my husband went and checked in the hotel while I stayed with the kids. When he returned with the room keys, we woke up our children and took them out of the car, through the hotel, up the elevators and into our guest room. We kept the room dark, leaving only the entry light on, and quickly put the kids into bed hoping they'd drift back to sleep.

My husband went to put our water in the minifridge only to notice some beers. "That's strange," he said and I agreed, but having discovered leftbehind drinks in hotel fridges in the past, I didn't think much about it. I figured the housekeepers had forgotten to check it. In the meantime, my husband ran to the store and I went into the bathroom to get ready for bed. As I washed my face I looked down to see cardboard beer containers in the trash. I felt my heart begin to pound. We were in someone else's

Now feeling panic, I checked the closet. Nothing. I then went to the dresser drawers. Nothing. My eyes scanned the door room's floor and there it was: A black bag that looked like one of ours. But it wasn't!

I immediately called the front desk and the waitress in charge responded with an "Oh! This is not good!".

By now the kids were wide awake, jumping on the beds as I was trying to put all of our things back into our oversized suitcase. Just while we were packing our things, I heard someone was unlocking the door, which made my heart beat wildly.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The door opened and in came a young man.

I didn't know how to deal with the matter but luckily the waitress arrived out of breath.

#### 【参考范文】

The door opened and in came a young man. After seeing us packing our things into our suitcase, he was shocked and angry. I tried to explain what had happened. However, he wouldn't listen to me. He talked with me in a loud voice, making my kids frightened. The kids began to cry. Just at that time my husband returned, with some things bought from the store in his hands. Thinking the young man was unfriendly, he started to quarrel with him.

I didn't know how to deal with the matter but luckily the waitress arrived out of breath. Watching the waitress, all of us stopped talking. She explained that her mother became badly ill last night, which contributed to her fault. After explaining the reason to us, the waitress burst into tears. The young man, my husband and I, even my kids, tried to comfort the waitress. We said sorry to each other. The special experience in someone else's room made me realise forgiveness is a kind of virtue.



# 窗Part 1 应用文写作

## ——写明信片

#### ○写作指导

#### (一)书写明信片的目的

清楚书写明信片的目的有利于写出条理清晰的明信片。一般来说,书写明信片有以下几个目的:

- 1. 告知他人自己旅游的状况;
- 2. 告知他人自己的新住址:
- 3. 寄送节日祝福;
- 4. 传递思念;
- 5. 询问对方近况;
- 6. 告知一些必要信息。

#### (二)书写明信片的注意事项

明信片的书写可以随意一些,但还是要注意以下几点:

- 1. 开头和结尾可以按照自己的喜好进行称呼和署名;
- 2. 正文书写应明确目的,力求言简意赅;
- 3. 明信片书写空间有限,不要堆积太多信息;
- 4. 尽量使用短句型;
- 5. 对于明信片上的关键信息,可以用大写或者下划线 突出显示。

#### (三)明信片的格式

通常明信片的背面分两栏,一栏用于书写,一栏 用于填写寄送人的姓名和地址。

#### ○典题示例

假如你是李华,请你用英语给好友 Emma 写一张关于此次假期旅行的明信片,告知她一些与你相关的旅行信息。主要包括:你和家人在这个国庆假期乘飞机去了海南旅行。你们去了沙滩,在当地参观了景点,还吃了海鲜。那里风景优美,一家人玩得很开心。注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:海鲜 seafood;虾 shrimp;螃蟹 crab;鲍鱼 abalone

#### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 概括总体行程以及记叙主要的参观过程2. 说明以后的计划,表达感受

#### Step 2:要点补全

- ①After getting off the plane (下飞机), we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand there.
- ②Afterwards we had lunch <u>in a seafood restaurant</u> (在海鲜馆) near the beach there.
- ③We ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and <u>had</u> abalone soup (喝了鲍鱼汤).
- ④ We all didn't want to go home because the scenery was so beautiful (如此优美), and there were many other exciting things (其他许多令人兴奋的事情) to try.

#### Step 3:句式升级

- ①用 where 引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的句②③ Afterwards we had lunch in a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup.
- ②用 so... that... 引导的结果状语从句改写 Step 2 中的句④

The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home.

#### Step 4:连句成篇

#### 【参考范文】

Oct. 3

Hi Emma,

I went on a trip to Hainan with my family on National Day by plane. After getting off the plane, we went to the beach to see the beautiful sand there. Afterwards we had lunch in a seafood restaurant near the beach, where we ate seafood like shrimps and crabs, and had abalone soup. The scenery was so beautiful, and there were so many other exciting things to try that we all didn't want to go home, but sadly it was time for us to go.

If I have a chance to go there again, I will be more than happy.

Li Hua

#### ○学以致用

假如你是李华,你和交换生 John 经常互相交流。 这个寒假,你和妈妈去了哈尔滨。请你用英语给 John 写一张明信片,告知他你的旅行见闻。主要包 括:

- 1. 冬天的哈尔滨很冷,是一个白色的冰雪世界;
- 2. 最令人兴奋的事情是玩雪和滑冰;
- 3. 你们玩得很高兴,将永远记住哈尔滨这个冰雪

城市。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

#### 【参考范文】

Jan. 29

Hi John,

This winter holiday I was in Harbin with my mother, which is very cold in winter.

There were snow and ice everywhere and we were always in a white world. So we had to wear warm clothes. The most exciting thing was playing with snow. Skating was very interesting as well.

I will always remember Harbin, for the snow, the ice and all the beautiful things. I hoped to stay here another day, but I had to go home because our new term was coming.

I love Harbin, and I miss you, too.

Li Hua

#### 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

Danny and Sarah stepped out of the terminal and into the sunshine. They looked up at the clear blue sky, then at the distant hills that were looming over the waving palm trees. They were eager to begin their vacation.

The cab stopped quickly and quietly. Danny put their bags in the trunk and got into the backseat with Sarah. "Palm Trees Hotel, please," Danny said in excitement. "Yes, sir," answered the driver as he turned his head and gave them a bright smile. Danny and Sarah exchanged confused glances as the cab slid gently through the traffic. "Excuse me, uh, you look really familiar. Actually, you look like the movie star Rocky Overton. But of course, you can't be."

Danny and Sarah were left in mute (沉默的) disbelief when the driver told them he wasn't a real person, but a robot created to resemble a well-known actor. "Rocky" told them that the cab company had bought the newest robotic drivers because they were programmed to be safer and more reliable than human drivers. "So here I am," "Rocky" added, "your first robotic cab driver!"

Danny and Sarah tightened their grips (把手). "Rocky" assured them, "You don't have to be concerned.

I can guarantee you I'm a great driver. My eyesight is impeccable (无可挑剔的), my reflexes (反应) are superb, and I am familiar with all the streets of this town. I'm constantly updated with new traffic data, so I'll be able to avoid congestion (交通堵塞) and arrive at your destination as quickly as possible, without any stress. Have a seat, have a good rest, and have a good time on your way."

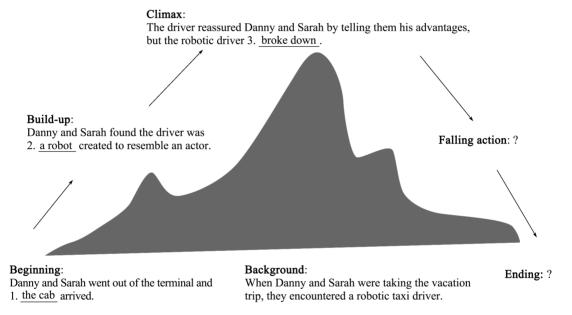
Danny and Sarah felt a bit more comfortable, so they leaned back in their seats and shut their eyes. "And another thing," "Rocky" continued, "my robot series stands for the highest level of computer technology. I'm beautifully designed and made of the finest materials, and have undergone the strictest quality control. That's why you're perfectly safe with me. Nothing could possibly go wrong... could possibly go wrong... go wrong... go wrong..."

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about Danny and Sarah's encounter with a robotic taxi driver, who reassures them about his safety and reliability.

任务二: 梳理故事情节,完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

Paragraph 1:	1. Why did Danny and Sarah feel fearful?
Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their	Because there is something wrong with the cab.
eyes wild with fear.	2. How did Danny and Sarah react to it?
	Danny tried to call out to "Rocky" to slow down, but
	in vain.
	3. How was the problem solved?
	They asked the cab company for help.

Paragraph 2:  "Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one."	<ol> <li>How did the cab company solve the problem?         The cab was changed into the automatic mode.     </li> <li>Did the solution work?         Yes, they arrived at the destination safely.     </li> <li>How did Danny and Sarah feel after resolving the emergency and what decision did they make for the rest of their vacation?         They felt relieved and grateful to be alive, and decided to go on foot for the rest of their vacation.     </li> </ol>		
任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。			

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。 注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their eyes wild with fear.	
"Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one."	

### 【参考范文】

Danny and Sarah exchanged glances, their eyes wild with fear. As the cab sped up, "Rocky" appeared to have broken down. "Slow down!" Danny called out, but there was no response from "Rocky". The cab moved at an even greater speed, narrowly avoiding a vehicle. Frightened, Danny picked up the phone. With trembling fingers, he made a phone call to the cab company. "Hello?" Danny yelled into the phone. "Our robotic driver is having a breakdown and he's completely out of control. We need help quickly!"

"Don't worry, sir," came the calm reply on the phone. "Your cab is also an unmanned one." The answer went on, "We have the authority to disable the robotic driver. I'll change your cab into the automatic mode so that you can reach your destination safely." The cab instantly slowed down and continued on its journey, though the driver could still be heard muttering, "Go wrong... go wrong..." When they reached their hotel, Danny and Sarah got out of the cab, relieved and grateful to be alive. As they saw the cab drive off, they decided to go on foot for the rest of their vacation!



### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。

Words to describe the benefits of travelling and the influence of travelling on people's lives	Make a travel brochure about one Chinese touring city
	On the road
Reconstruct the mind map of travelling and reflect on the	he attitude towards different clutures

### 答案:略

#### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

25 Sept.

Next week I will travel to Australia to visit a friend there over the school holidays. I plan to keep this blog to record my experiences and what I learn. I have already done some research on the country. Located to the south of the equator, below many other countries on the globe, it's often informally referred to as "down under".

I have also read about some iconic sites, such as the Sydney Opera House and the Great Ocean Road, and animals like the cute koalas and kangaroos. I can't wait to see all of them! However, as I major in social studies, I'm more interested in meeting people in Australia and experiencing their culture, food, and way of life.

1 Oct

I'm here in Sydney! Since I arrived, my friend has brought me to my first open-air barbecue and has also shared many different but tasty meals with me, so my first impressions of Australia have been all about food! A lot of typical Australian food, such as the Sunday roast, is originally British. Bakeries, fast-food joints, butcher shops, cafes, and restaurants everywhere provide some of the premier food experiences in the world. The influence of Asian cultures, on the other hand, led to the introduction of bean curd and Asian herbs, along with Australian versions of foods like the Chinese-inspired dim sim.

3 Oct.

My friend and I have arrived in Katherine, a town in Australia's Northern Territory. We're here to learn

about the life and customs of the Aborigines, who are native to Australia. The Aboriginal population might be small, but its influence is still visible. For example, "Bondi" in "Bondi Beach" is an Aboriginal word meaning "water breaking over rocks".

To survive in this vast land on the ocean, the Aborigines had to be in close contact with nature. This shows in their music, too, which celebrates the natural world and the spiritual world around them. Most of their musical instruments are really just sticks found on the ground, among which there is an amazing instrument called the didgeridoo.

The didgeridoo is made from a tree branch which is hollow. To play the didgeridoo, you put your mouth on one end and blow while vibrating your lips. Unlike a horn, there are no finger holes. The didgeridoo player has to change the shape of his mouth in order to change pitch. A skilled player can play for a long time without stopping to breathe. He does this by continually breathing in through his nose while breathing out through his mouth and into the didgeridoo. I tried to learn how to play it, but after trying for hours, I was convinced that I could never make a musical sound with this instrument!

6 Oct.

It's almost time for me to say goodbye to Australia. I've enjoyed my time here very much. After being here for a while, my biggest impression is the complicated mix of peoples and cultures that make up the nation. Although the main cultural influence since 1788 has been Western culture, minority cultures have also played a part in shaping the unique Australian culture, with many of the new cultural influences contributed by immigrants. It is said that now nearly half of all Australian citizens were either born overseas or have parents who were born overseas.

Personally speaking, what I like most about Australia is the people themselves. They have a straightforward and free-and-easy attitude towards life, and their friendliness and warmth made me feel at home wherever I went.

After experiencing Australia, I have to say that I agree with the tourism slogan: "There's nothing like Australia."

- 1. What interested the author most in Australia?
  - A. Visiting Australian schools.
- B. Seeing iconic attractions.
- C. Watching cute animals.
- D. Meeting local people.
- 2. What are the author's first impressions of Australia?
  - A. Varieties of food.

B. Famous buildings.

C. Different restaurants.

- D. Diverse cultures.
- **3.** Which of the following happened on 3 October?
  - A. The author's first open-air barbecue.
  - B. Reading about some iconic sites.
  - C. Sharing many different but tasty meals.
  - D. Learning how to play the didgeridoo.

### 答案:1~3 DAD

### 单元测试卷(五)

(考香范围: Unit 5 时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

#### A

No trip to Windsor could possibly be complete without a visit to amazing Windsor Castle, the family home to British kings and queens for over 1,000 years. The size of the Castle is breathtaking. In fact, it is the largest and oldest occupied castle in the world and it's where Her Majesty the Queen chooses to spend most of her private weekends. You might even time your visit when she is in residence! The marriage of Prince Harry and Ms Meghan Markle took place in Windsor on Saturday, 19 May, 2018. They became the sixteenth royal couple to celebrate their marriage at Windsor Castle since 1863. Windsor Castle offers something for everyone with so many areas to explore.

Visit the magnificent State Apartments, furnished with some of the finest works of art from the Royal Collection, including paintings by Rembrandt, Rubens and Canaletto.

Take in the splendor of St George's Chapel, location of the wedding of Prince Harry and Ms Meghan Markle, the burial place of 10 kings including Henry W and Charles I, and one of the finest examples of Gothic architecture in England.

Be amazed at Queen Mary's Dolls' House, the largest, most beautiful and most famous dolls' house in the world, created in the 1920s and filled with thousands of objects made by leading craftsmen, artists and designers of the time.

Imagine being entertained by royalty in the Semi-State Rooms, the spectacular private apartments open to visitors from September to March each year. Richly decorated, they are used by the Queen for hosting her guests.

- 1. What do we know about Windsor Castle?
  - A. The Queen seldom lives in Windsor Castle.
  - B. Tourists are not allowed to visit the Castle if the Queen is there.

- C. Windsor Castle has witnessed many royal weddings.
- D. Windsor Castle is the oldest castle in the world.
- C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"They became the sixteenth royal couple to celebrate their marriage at Windsor Castle since 1863."可知,自从1863年以来,温莎城堡见证了16次皇家婚礼。故选 C。
- 2. What can we see in Windsor Castle every day?
  - A. Famous paintings by great artists.
  - B. Beautiful dolls created in the 19th century.
  - C. The wedding place of 10 kings.
  - D. The place where the Queen entertains her guests.
  - A 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,在温莎城堡里游客每天可以看到皇家收藏的很多著名艺术家的作品。故选 A。
- **3.** Which of the following most interests an architect?
  - A. State Apartments.
  - B. St George's Chapel.
  - C. Queen Mary's Dolls' House.
  - D. Semi-State Rooms.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"... the burial place of 10 kings including Henry Ⅷ and Charles I, and one of the finest examples of Gothic architecture in England." 可知, St George's Chapel 里有很多哥特式建筑,建筑师对这样的建筑可能最感兴趣。故选 B。

#### В

In a small coastal community in Ecuador known as La Isla, I was handing out clothes and toys to children standing in a long line in their schoolyard. They had gathered there that morning, likely wearing the only clothes they owned. They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget.

I was five years old that New Year's Eve in

1988, growing up in Ecuador, with my parents and elder sister. My father came into my bedroom and gave me a plastic cowboy. I'd never owned a real toy of any kind. My family didn't have much. My mother stayed home, caring for my sister and me. My father drove a food delivery truck and was on the road for days at a time.

"I hope you like your toy," my father said, kneeling down and holding me close. I felt the warmth of his body, as if in giving me this toy he was also giving me a part of himself. Even at age five, I knew that had been a gift.

By sixth grade our family moved to the US, and life got easier. I did really well in high school. Every good grade was a thank-you to my parents for all they'd done for me. I went on to college, and after graduation, with my degree in hand, I became a pharmacist (药剂师). I was finally able to buy nice gifts for my family, but I could never give in equal measure the love I'd felt from that unexpected gift I'd received as a little boy. I wished every child could know that feeling.

Two years into my career, I made my first trip to La Isla. Two years later, I returned with my nonprofit (非营利) organisation called Toys for Ecuador. My parents, sister and I travelled to towns across rural Ecuador with New Year presents for children and gift baskets for seniors.

It was a journey that not only fulfilled a childhood wish to share that special feeling of love and generosity, but also reaffirmed (重申) my commitment to making a difference in the lives of others.

- **4.** What reminded the author of his childhood story?
  - A. The scene of children's receiving gifts.
  - B. The New Year celebration.
  - C. The children's happy school life.
  - D. The preparation of New Year gifts.
  - 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget."可知,看到孩子们收礼物的场 景,作者想起来自己童年时的故事。故选 A。
- 5. Which words can best describe the author's father?
  - A. Thankful and positive.

- B. Outgoing and romantic.
- C. Responsible and confident.
- D. Hard-working and caring.
- D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"My father drove a food delivery truck and was on the road for days at a time."可知,作者的父亲开着一辆送 餐车,一连几天都在路上。由此推断父亲工作很 努力;结合第三段中的"'I hope you like your toy,' my father said, kneeling down and holding me close. I felt the warmth of his body, as if in giving me this toy he was also giving me a part of himself."可知,父亲跪下来紧紧地抱着作者,作者 感觉到好像父亲给他这个玩具的同时,也把自己 的一部分给了他,由此推知父亲很会关心人。综 合以上信息可知,父亲工作努力并且会关心人。 故选D。
- **6.** How did the author repay his parents?
  - A. By meeting their wish to make himself a pharmacist.
  - B. By improving his academic achievements.
  - C. By buying them some unexpected gifts.
  - D. By setting up a nonprofit organisation.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"I did really well in high school. Every good grade was a thank-you to my parents for all they'd done for me."可知,作者在高中表现出色,每一次好成绩都 是对父母为自己所做一切的感谢,由此可知,作者 通过努力学习提高学习成绩来回报父母。故选 B。
- 7. Which can be the best title for the text?
  - A. Toys for Ecuador Gave Children New Year Gifts
  - B. Father's Gift Pushed a Boy to Succeed Academically
  - C. Father's Love Never Left Boyhood Memories Behind
  - D. A Plastic Cowboy Inspired Toys for Ecuador
  - D 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的"They were quiet and polite, eyes bright with excitement. Watching this, my mind flashed back to a day I would never forget."可知,文章开篇点明作者在厄 瓜多尔一个社区为孩子们发放礼物,结合下文作者 回忆自己童年时收到父亲的礼物——一个塑料牛 仔,珍惜教育机会,用优异成绩回报父母,最后学有 所成,创建了非营利组织"Toys for Ecuador"的故 事,所以 D 项与文章内容吻合,且引出了本文作者 回忆过去的经历,适合作为本文的最佳标题。故选  $D_{\circ}$

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

What if we had the power to control time,

instead of moving from the past to the present to the future? What if we could jump and travel through time in a machine? What if we could go wherever and whenever we pleased?

The mysterious puzzle of time has kept people debating its nature for hundreds of years. Science fiction writers have turned it into imaginative stories. Some scientists have even attempted to explain it using maths, trying to make the dream of time travel come true.

Albert Einstein said that time and space are one thing called "spacetime". He said there are three dimensions in space: height, width and depth. A scientist named Hermann Minkowski added time as a fourth dimension.

Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel. The first is relativity. The idea of relativity is that the force of gravity causes space to bend, which causes time to twist. The second idea focuses on special relativity. The idea is that a traveller moving superfast through flat spacetime will enter the future. Einstein considered time "relative" because it is measured based on where we are on Earth or in space.

Stephen Hawking believes that a time machine will never be built. If it were possible, he thinks we would already know. If a time machine could be built, how come no one from the future has invaded us?

The first science fiction story with this theme is The Clock That Went Backward by Edward P. Mitchell, which was published in 1881. Since then, thousands of books, films and television shows have explored the idea of time travel, in which some tools such as phones, watches, photographs and old books take travellers backward and forward.

Will time travel ever happen? Who knows? The most important is to keep your eyes open and have a sense of wonder.

- **8.** What is the author's purpose in writing the first paragraph?
  - A. To show time and space are connected.
  - B. To show people's interest in time travel.
  - C. To draw readers' attention to time travel.
  - D. To make people believe time travel is possible.

- C 写作意图题。根据第一段的内容可知,作者写第一段的目的是吸引读者对时光旅行的注意。故选 C。
- **9.** Which of the following statements could Einstein agree with?
  - A. Time travel is possible in the future.
  - B. People can't move faster than light.
  - C. Time travel is against scientific rules.
  - D. Spacetime is not a real thing in theory.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的"Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel."可推知,爱因斯坦的观点导致了关于时光旅行可能性的理论,说明爱因斯坦会同意 A 选项"时光旅行在未来是可能的"的说法。故选 A。
- **10.** What is the last but one paragraph mainly about?
  - A. The first science fiction story.
  - B. Different works about time travel.
  - C. Edward P. Mitchell, the pioneer.
  - D. Some tools used in time travel.
  - B 段落大意题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知,倒数第二段主要介绍了关于时光旅行的不同作品。故选 B。
- 11. What is the writer's attitude towards time travel?
  - A. Negative.
  - B. Approving.
  - C. Doubtful.
  - D. Hopeful.
  - D 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者对于时空旅行是充满希望的。故选 D。

D

Wang Mengshu, an expert at the Chinese Academy of Engineering, said at a group discussion on the sidelines of the annual session of the National People's Congress that Wi-Fi should not be provided on high-speed trains, as it might harm communication signals (信号) of trains and would also cost a lot in keeping trains in good condition. He also encouraged passengers to enjoy the views, instead of fixing their eyes on the tiny screens of smartphones and laptops. However, Beijing Youth Daily said it should be market demand that decides whether the Wi-Fi is offered on the trains or not.

An increasing number of people, especially

young white-collar workers, are addicted to their smartphones rather than face-to-face communication, thanks to the extensive Wi-Fi coverage across the country. That partly justifies Wang's disagreement about the offering of Wi-Fi on high-speed trains, because they shouldn't depend on high-tech devices. It is also obvious that passengers on trains without free Wi-Fi will use their smartphones and other mobile devices However, whether the trains should provide a free Wi-Fi service mainly depends on customer demand.

In other words, the China Railway Corporation has to obey relevant market rules, and provide technologically possible services to passengers if that is what they want. It cannot turn a blind eye to customers' wants.

Free Wi-Fi, in fact, is already offered on a lot of buses and coaches. This is a natural response to their competition with trains (especially high-speed ones), which are significantly faster and safer. The bus companies have been forced to improve their services to survive. So it requires proper guidance, not total "no" on the use, to make up for the negative effects of high-end technologies, such as people's increasing addiction to smartphones.

- 12. Why did Wang Mengshu think Wi-Fi shouldn't be offered on the train?
  - A. Because it may make the communication signals of trains stable.
  - B. Because it may cause a high cost in keeping trains in good condition.
  - C. Because it may help people enjoy the beautiful views throughout a journey.
  - D. Because it may prevent passengers being addicted to their smartphones and laptops.
  - 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Wi-Fi should not be provided on high-speed trains, as it might harm communication signals (信号) of trains and would also cost a lot in keeping trains in good condition."可知,高铁上提供 Wi-Fi 会使得 保持火车运行状态良好的成本提高。故选B。
- 13. What does the underlined word "justifies" in Paragraph 2 mean?
  - A. Gives an explanation.
  - B. Offers a response.
  - C. Confirms it incorrect.

- D. Proves it reasonable.
- 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句可知, "That"指代前文,即前文对王的部分观点表示同 意,认为王的观点是合理的、有理有据的。D项 "证明其合理"符合句意。故选 D。
- 14. What's the purpose of providing free Wi-Fi on many buses?
  - A. To compete for more passengers.
  - B. To help drivers stay concentrated.
  - C. To prevent passengers feeling bored.
  - D. To encourage passengers to use phones.
  - A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的"The bus companies have been forced to improve their services to survive."可知,公共汽车上提供 Wi-Fi 是为了在市场竞争中生存下来。由此可推知,在 公共汽车上装 Wi-Fi 是为了吸引更多的乘客。故 选 A。
- 15. What is the author's attitude to saying "no" to free Wi-Fi on the train?
  - A. Positive.
  - B. Negative.
  - C. Objective.
  - D. Supportive.
  - C 观点态度题。根据最后一段最后一句可知, 作者认为不应该完全不提供 Wi-Fi, 而是应该适 当引导,让乘客不要沉迷于手机。由此可推知,作 者的态度是客观的、就事论事的。故选C。
- Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Quite simply, school trips are the journeys which take place outside a student's normal environment. 16 Educational trips are normally done in a museum or a historic place. They could provide a better understanding as the students would be able to make a connection between a place, time, or even people in history and something they've seen on a field trip.

A trip to the zoo could provide a better understanding of animals. Biology is even better when there are proper animals to be named. 17 Teachers and headmasters are advised to give the students prizes and rewards for different accomplishments done on a field trip.

Planetariums (天文馆) could help students remember constellations (星座) better. 18 Planetariums could help them see that the earth is just a small planet in the universe and that there is no reason not to explore. If you are a teacher and you're lucky, you may have taken the next greatest astronaut to the planetarium on a school trip.

\_\_\_\_\_Also they could help them see that there are so many living things that they depend on and how they can take care of nature. Children are very easily inspired. \_\_\_\_\_20\_\_

Therefore, it is necessary for teachers to often take their students to field trips, where they can have fun learning.

- A. Make sure that these trips are interesting.
- B. The importance of school trips can't be ignored.
- C. A school trip is done mostly for educational purposes.
- D. So it's best to instill the good character and education in them.
- E. Games like naming animals could provide hours of fun and education.
- F. School trips to farms could help students understand the value of nature.
- G. They could also help students imagine how far the sun is from the earth.

### 答案:16~20 CEGFD

### Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分15 分)

Four teenage girls. Two tents. No cellphones. A severe thunderstorm. One hundred and thirty hours of nonstop togetherness. This was what Julia Ruelle just 21.

"It was really <u>22</u>," said Julia Ruelle of her recent weeklong adventure to the Boundary Waters Canoe Area Wilderness with three childhood friends.

Earlier this year, Julia, having completed a treatment for a brain tumour (肿瘤) in April, won an essay contest and was \_\_23\_\_ a five-day camping adventure with up to three friends. Its aim is to get kids away from technology. She struggled to choose the final three—Anna Wander, Madeline Wilson and Julianna Torelli. No \_\_24\_\_ are allowed, so getting their approval was kind of \_\_25\_\_. Having a satellite phone and promising to check in twice during the week finally won their \_\_26\_\_.

The four girls arrived in Ely on June 10 for training. They <u>27</u> the next day at 7:00 am, and quickly developed a <u>28</u>—getting up early every morning, going boating by noon, then having lunch at the campsite, <u>29</u> by swinging, reading,

talking, and napping.

"I love how you are separated from everything in your life, especially 30," Anna said. Without her phone, she said, "I'm less 31 about things." "We got along pretty well," said Madeline. "We were always talking before bed, about specific things and thoughts 32." "But we might sometimes have had arguments," Julianna added. No one was even hungry or homesick, but they were 33 nervous one night as they waited out a thunderstorm.

After the adventure, Julia will continue to take physical examinations every three months to make sure the tumour is gone. "Mental health can be \_\_34\_\_ so much in the Boundary Waters. It really helps to \_\_35\_\_ and reconnect with yourself," said Julia.

- 21. A. described
  - B. suffered
  - C. planned
  - D. experienced
  - D 根据下文的"her recent weeklong adventure to the Boundary Waters Canoe Area Wilderness with three childhood friends"可知,这是 Julia 刚刚经历的事。故选 D。
- 22. A. boring
- B. terrible
- C. perfect
- D. costly
- C 根据最后一段中 Julia 说的话可知,这次经历很完美。故选 C。
- 23. A. awarded
- B. directed
- C. promised
- D. advised
- A 根据上文的"won an essay contest"可知, Julia 获得的奖励是一次为期五天的野营历险。 故选 A。
- 24. A. friends
- B. parents
- C. teachers
- D. guides
- B 根据语境和常识可知,参加历险的是四个青少年,青少年出去参加活动一般会需要父母的许可或陪伴,故此处应是父母不得跟随。故选 B。
- 25. A. challenging
- B. educating
- C. satisfying
- D. dominating
- A 根据语境可知,参加历险的是四个青少年,且 父母不得跟随,所以要想征得父母同意是富有挑 战性的。故选 A。
- 26. A. confidence
- B. satisfaction
- C. permission
- D. expectation

C 根据语境和上文的"getting their approval"可 知,此处指她们最终得到了父母的许可。故选 C。

**27.** A. set out

B. set in

C. turned out

D. turned up

A 根据语境可知,她们 6 月 10 号抵达 Ely 培训 之后,第二天一早就动身了。set out"出发,动身" 符合题意。故选A。

**28.** A. hobby

B. project

C. routine

D. system

C 根据语境和下文的"getting up early every morning, going boating by noon, then having lunch at the campsite"可知,每天早起、划船等是 常规的活动,已经形成了固定行程。故选 C。

29. A. taught

B. followed

C. divided

D. instructed

B 根据空前的"having lunch at the campsite"可 知, "swinging, reading, talking, and napping"是 午饭之后的活动。故选B。

30. A. society

B. homework

C. entertainment

D. technology

D 根据上文的"Its aim is to get kids away from technology."可知,本次活动就是一次远离科技设 备的野营历险。故选 D。

31. A. doubtful

B. worried

C. curious

D. unsatisfied

B 根据语境可知,由于没有携带手机,所以 Anna 不太担心日常琐事。故选 B。

32. A. in addition

B. in general

C. in need

D. in total

B 根据语境可知,总的来说,大家在本次活动中 一直在聊具体的事情和想法。故选B。

33. A. unbelievably

B. supposedly

C. unsuccessfully

D. admittedly

D 根据语境可知,大家既没有想家也没有挨饿, 但是在等待雷暴过去的时候,大家都承认有些紧 张。admittedly 意为"诚然,无可否认"。故选 D。

34. A. damaged

B. improved

C. affected

D. weakened

B 根据语境可知,在本次历险中,大家的精神状 态有很大的改善。故选 B。

35. A. get away

B. get back

C. take up

D. take over

A 根据语境和上文的"Its aim is to get kids away from technology."可知,这次经历让大家远 离(技术设备)。get away"摆脱,逃离"符合语境。 故选A。

### Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分15 分)

Students control shadow puppets (皮影木偶) as the singing voice of 71-year-old Liu Aibang echoes (回荡) across the classroom. They use thin straight pieces of wood 36. to make (make) shadow puppets step onto the "stage"—a cloth screen. Those 37. sitting (sit) in front of the stage play music on drums, suona horns (唢呐) and other instruments.

This is a Daoqing shadow puppetry class at Longdong University. Except Liu, 38. the other performers of the show are all college students. Starting in the Han Dynasty, Daoqing shadow puppetry 39. has been included (include) in the national intangible cultural heritage list since 2006. In the past, shadow plays 40, were welcomed (welcome) by people of all ages, and were often performed during the festivals. 41. However, with films and TV series becoming popular in the late 1980s, many performers moved on to other jobs. 42. Faced (face) with the choice between protecting this art and making a good living, Liu chose to stay on.

One day in 2020, Liu received a phone call from Zhao Zhixue, 43. who was head of the music school at Longdong University. Zhao told him that the school planned to 44. introduce (introduction) Daoqing shadow puppetry into college classrooms and develop young students' long-term interest in intangible cultural heritage. Liu hopes to train more young people. "Just as true love is not a one-man show, the learning and keeping of 45. cultural (culture) heritage needs efforts from both the old and the young," Liu said.

Ⅴ. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是河北省秦皇岛市的一名中学生李华,请 根据以下要点,向准备来你校做交换生的英国同学介 绍海滨国家森林公园:

- 1. 位于秦皇岛市,占地 1 600 多公顷;
- 2. 森林茂密,栖息着多种珍稀动物,其中鸟类有 380 余种,占河北省鸟类总数的 90%多;
  - 3. 欢迎游览。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:公顷 hectare

### 【参考范文】

Located in Qinhuangdao, Hebei Province, Coastal National Forest Park is an incredible tourist attraction in China. It is a park best known for its thick forest and abundance of rare animals, especially varieties of birds. Covering an area of more than 1,600 hectares, the park is home to over 380 varieties of birds, which account for more than 90% of the whole amount of bird kinds in Hebei Province. It appeals to tourists from all over the world with its breathtaking beauty.

Coastal National Forest Park is thought to be a must for bird watchers. Taking a walk in such a forest is not just a time for relaxation. You will find your trip here enjoyable and rewarding.

第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Teenagers around Steve were interested in playing video games and they often shared their experience about how to play well. Steve was a very clever boy. He was good at playing games. He would win at any game he played. He won so many times that everyone around him saw him as the champion.

In fact, Steve not only became an expert at all kinds of skills but he was also good at cheating because he couldn't stand losing to anyone. He became so skilled at cheating that he could play practically and win any game by cheating without even being noticed. Every time he beat other boys, he would be proud to see others admiring him and praising his excellent skills. He enjoyed that feeling.

No one wants to play with someone who is always going to win. As time went by, almost no one around Steve wanted to play with him. But there was one poor boy named Tom who would always play with him. At first, Tom had few skills and Steve beat him easily. Gradually, Tom learnt more skills. It was still a piece of cake for Steve to beat him. One day Steve found that Tom became more skilled and it was a challenge to win the game with

Tom. In order to win, Steve used his tricks. Tom was defeated. Since then, the tricks had helped Steve win any game. Although Tom lost face, he would always accept Steve's challenge. Champion Steve enjoyed himself at poor Tom's expense and always made that poor boy look funny as he lost.

One day, Steve got bored with just playing around and thought that he could win bigger games. So he decided to apply for the video game championship as he thought that there he would find some top players that could match him.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

At the Championship, he was excited to have a chance to show off his skills.

Finally the competition ended and the champion's name was called out.

### 【参考范文】

At the Championship, he was excited to have a chance to show off his skills. When the competition started, everyone made all their efforts to play best. Steve also tried all means to play but just then he realised that he couldn't make it. That was because he had got used to using cheats and tricks. Although he was a good player, without his usual tricks, he could not make it to beat anyone. He felt awkward. Soon he had to leave the competition. He sat there, sad and ashamed.

Finally the competition ended and the champion's name was called out. Steve was surprised to know that it was the "poor" boy Tom who won the title. Steve couldn't believe it. After all, he had always beaten Tom before. Then he thought a lot and realised Tom had learned quite a lot from failures and made great progress. From then on, Steve decided to give up the desire of winning all the time. He was quite happy to lose sometimes, because that was when he would learn and improve his skills.

			-
	1	it	6
w	•		
		_	

## **Earth first**

┌ 单元概览	<u> </u>	
--------	----------	--

### ◇ 学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is about environmental protection. This unit will present multi-modal texts such as advertisement, cartoon, interview and brochure. This unit starts with many environmental problems we human beings faced, then you will read an exposition "Sharks: Dangerous or Endangered?" to draw attention to the protection of ocean animals. You also read a passage on newspaper column "What's really green?" to know about misunderstanding of environmental protection. You will listen to the conversation with regard to smog in the past and present and write a persuasive letter of environmental protection. Through this unit, you are expected to know about the advanced environmental protection idea, green lifestyle and raise the awareness of environmental protection.

### ◇ 学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
		词汇	能正确使用与"人与环境"主题相关的单词和词组。
		语法	能理解分词作宾语补足语的功能及意义,并恰当使用其介绍如何应对环境问题。
	语言知识	语篇	<ol> <li>阅读说明文,探究鲨鱼是危险动物还是濒危动物,增加对保护海洋动物这一话题的关注;</li> <li>阅读报刊专栏文章,了解生活中常见的关于环境保护的几个认识误区。</li> </ol>
语言能力		语用	使用新学的语言点谈论人们面临的环境问题及解决措施。
	听		听懂有关雾霾的对话,关注身边的环境问题。
	语言	说	能组织一段对话,并正确运用"礼貌地打断别人"这一交际方法,且能根据语境的需要正确使用词汇,使口头表达更加准确、自然。
技自	技能	读	1. 能了解倡议信的文体特点和内容要素; 2. 能分析说明文的文章结构与逻辑,深入理解课文。
		写	写一篇环保倡议信。

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	1. 能使用所学语言点对"保护环境、关爱地球"这一话题展开讨论,激发英语学习的兴趣; 2. 能多渠道获取英语学习资源,巩固本单元所学语言知识,开阔眼界,提高英语运用能力; 3. 能选择恰当的策略与方法,监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程。
文化意识	1. 能了解人们保护环境的做法,正确认识人类生活与自然环境的关系; 2. 形成人与自然和谐相处的共识,增强尊重自然、合理利用和开发自然资源、与自然和谐相处的意识。
思维品质	<ol> <li>能正确判断文章中作者的观点和态度,辩证地理解人类活动与自然环境的关系,科学地分析和评价不同地域人类活动的差异及原因,提高与自然和谐相处的意识;</li> <li>能在深入理解文本的同时联系自身实际,实现知识与思维能力的迁移。</li> </ol>

### ◇ 必备知识

必背单词	scare, target, fortunately, extinction, attitude, devote, ocean, reserve, staff, establish, damage, drought, flood, affect, supply, adopt, carbon, greenhouse, brochure, reduce, release, smog, lecture, permission, slide, majority, amount, electricity, remove, urge, concerned, contribute, average
重点表达	due to, refer to, in fear, cut off, have a(n) effect on/upon, see as, the other way round, mistake for, break down, common sense, take into account
重点知识	1. the+比较级(+主谓),the+比较级(+主谓) 2. 倍数表达法
単元语法	现在分词和过去分词作补足语
单元 写作	倡议信

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Summarise the main idea of each paragraph and analyse the structure of the text.
- 2. Find out the details about people's different attitudes towards sharks.
- 3. Figure out the author's purpose in writing.

### 自主式预习。

### 写出下列词汇的汉语意思

### (一)核心词汇

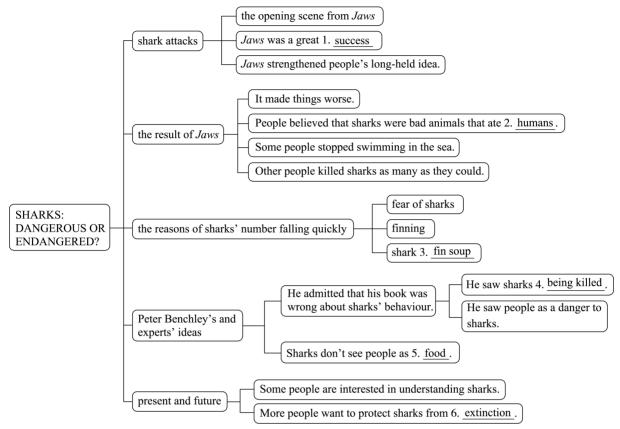
- 1. target v. 把·····作为目标
- 2. attitude n. (尤指通过行为表现出的对某事的一 般)看法,态度
- 3. scare v. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬
- 4. extinction n. 灭绝,绝种
- 5. fortunately adv. 幸运地
- **6.** due to 由于,因为
- 7. in fear 惊恐地,害怕地
- 8. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……

- 9. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅
- (二)阅读词汇
- 1. shark n. 鲨(鱼)
- 2. dive v. (通常指使用呼吸设备的)潜水
- 3. fin υ. 切去(鱼的)鳍
  - n. 鱼鳍
- 4. cut off 切断;中断
- 5. have a(n)... effect on/upon 对……有……影响
- 6. see... as... 把……看作……
- 7. the other way round 相反,正好相反

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Why did some people stop swimming in the sea?
  - A. Because swimming was forbidden.
  - B. Because it's a dangerous behaviour.
  - C. Because it's harmful to the protection of the environment.
  - D. Because they were scared of being attacked by sharks.
- 2. Why did the number of large sharks fall quickly after 1975?
  - A. Because finning killed millions of sharks.
  - B. Because the water was seriously polluted.
  - C. Because a lot of ocean creatures disappeared.
  - D. Because sharks were thrown into other waters.
- 3. What's Peter Benchley's attitude now?
  - A. The shark is a great danger to human beings.
  - B. Sharks see people as their food.
  - C. Sharks often attack people by design.
  - D. It's urgent and vital to protect sharks.
- 4. What does the text want to tell us?

- A. Sharks are dangerous animals for human beings.
- B. It's we human beings that put sharks into dangerous situations.
- C. Films play an important role in our daily life.
- D. People haven't been aware of the importance of protecting sharks.

### 答案:1~4 DADB

#### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them,

- 1. Many people who saw the film started to believe that sharks were bad animals that ate humans. [句子分析]本句是一个含有三个从句的复合句。who 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 people; believe 后that 引导宾语从句;在此从句中 that 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 animals, that 在从句中作主语。[尝试翻译] 很多看过这部电影的人开始相信鲨鱼是吃人的有害动物。
- 2. It was an area where fishermen were finning, and the sea floor was covered with dead sharks.
  [句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。关系副词where 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 area;后半句中

and 连接并列句。

[尝试翻译] 这是一个渔民割鱼鳍的区域,死去的 鲨鱼覆盖着海底。

3. Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film Jaws became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them.

[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。who 引导的定 语从句,修饰先行词 everyone,破折号连接并列

[尝试翻译]幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大

白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼---有些人开始有兴 趣去了解它们了。

### ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- 1. What's the author's purpose of writing the text? To explain people's misunderstanding of sharks and raise awareness of shark protection.
- 2. How do you think Peter Benchley felt after diving in 1980?

略

### Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十一)

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

### Ⅰ. 阅读理解

### MUSICAL HERITAGES FROM ANCIENT CHINA

Since remote antiquity, Chinese people have used music to record their lives and describe the ideals in their hearts. Catchy tunes are not only played on precious instruments, but also visualised in carvings, paintings, and buildings. Feel free to explore here!

#### Han Dynasty (202 BC to AD 220)

This period marked the significant development of the manufacturing of guqin and its music. The example unearthed from the Mawangdui Han Dynasty Tomb in Changsha, Hunan Province, proves that guain had developed into the form known today during that period.

### Song Dynasty (960 to 1279)

With economic development, a variety of musical cultures emerged to meet the entertainment needs of different social classes. Part of the painting Along the River During the Qingming Festival vividly reveals a storytelling performance. The painter adopted delicate techniques to truly record a street performer, whose superb skills are reflected by each listener's show of appreciation.

### Ming Dynasty (1368 to 1644)

At this time, traditional Chinese operas developed rapidly, promoting the formation of many singing styles. People began to enjoy operas and drama stages were built. Covering a construction area of more than 160 square metres, the Fancun village drama stage in Shanxi Province provides rich materials for the study of the local folk culture.

- 1. Which heritage would a fan of classical instruments explore?
  - A. The Ming Dynasty drama stage.
  - B. The Song Dynasty painting.
  - C. The Northern Wei Dynasty temple.
  - D. The Han Dynasty tomb.
  - D 细节理解题。根据 Han Dynasty 中的内容可 知,汉朝标志着古琴制造及其音乐的重大发展,因 此,古典乐器爱好者会探索汉墓。故选 D。
- 2. What contributed to the variety of musical cultures during Song Dynasty?
  - A. Religion.
  - B. Economy.
  - C. Politics.
  - D. Technology.
  - B 细节理解题。根据 Song Dynasty 中的"With economic development, a variety of musical cultures emerged to meet the entertainment needs of different social classes."可知,经济因素 促成了宋代音乐文化的多样性。故选B。
- 3. What can we know about musical heritages in ancient China according to the text?
  - A. Ming Dynasty witnessed the boom of traditional Chinese operas.
  - B. Most of the drama stages were built during the Northern Wei Dynasty.
  - C. The musical culture of Buddhism was developed during the Han Dynasty.
  - D. Buddhist temples were the main places for musical activities in the Song Dynasty.
  - 细节理解题。根据 Ming Dynasty 中的"At

this time, traditional Chinese operas developed rapidly, promoting the formation of many singing styles."可知,明代是中国传统戏曲兴盛的时期。故选 A。

### Ⅱ. 七选五

#### **Protecting Water Sources**

By now it's clear that if we want to live on a planet with clean-water, fresh air, and a diversity of plants and animals, we have to do everything we can to protect the Earth's health. 1

2

It takes a lot of energy to bring water from rivers, groundwater, or whatever your local water source is into your home. Water must be pumped to a treatment plant, filtered and treated with chemicals to clean it, then pumped into your neighbourhood so you can use it home. Saving as much water as possible reduces the stress this whole process puts on natural bodies of water in the environment.

#### Use fewer chemicals.

Chemicals washed down the drain (排水沟) or applied directly to the grass can pollute the water supply. \_\_3\_\_ Figure out which chemicals you can replace with something else so you can avoid washing the poisonous things down the drain.

## Never dump harmful waste materials down the drain or into the grass.

Paint, motor oil, ammonia, and other strong chemical solutions should not be dumped down the drain or into the yard, because they'll get into the groundwater. 4 Check your local sanitation department's website to find out how to deal with the harmful waste. A specialised waste site will be of great help.

- A. Conserve water at home.
- B. Conserve electricity at home.
- C. These items need to be disposed of properly.
- D. This causes problems for wildlife and humans alike.
- E. Join a community garden or make a plot in your backyard or on the balcony.
- F. Changing your personal habits regarding water and chemical usage is a great first step.
- G. Being environmentally friendly means having a lifestyle that helps the Earth more than you hurt it.

### 答案:1~5 GADCF

### Starting out & Understanding ideas Section | Language points

### 学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the basic structure of the text.
- 2. Grasp the core information through reading.
- 3. Use critical thinking to analyse people's different attitudes.
- 4. Raise the awareness of protecting animals.

### 自主式预习。

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. If you dive, you go under the surface of the sea or
- 2. If you target a particular group of people, you try to appeal to those people or affect them.

把……作为目标

3. Being unemployed produces negative attitudes to work. 态度

### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>scare</u> v. 使(某人)惊 恐,吓唬	scary adj. 可怕的;恐怖的
	scared adj. 害怕的
extinction n. 灭绝,绝种	extinct adj. 灭绝的,绝种的
	fortunate $adj$ . 幸运的
	unfortunately adv. 不幸 地
fortunately adv. 幸运地	unfortunate adj. 不幸的, 倒霉的,运气不好的;不成 功的;可惜的,可叹的,令 人遗憾的
	fortune <i>n</i> . 大笔的钱, 巨款;运气;机遇;命运

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

1. in fear 惊恐地,害怕地

- 2. cut off 切断; 中断
- 3. have a(n)... effect on/upon 对……有……影响
- 4. due to 由于,因为
- 5. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅
- 6. be scared/frightened/afraid of 害怕……

### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语 Jaws was a great success, attracting huge

audiences and winning many awards.

《大白鲨》获得了巨大的成功,吸引了大批观众并 赢得了许多奖项。

2. 句型公式:be scared of...

People have always been scared of sharks, but Jaws made things worse.

人们本就害怕鲨鱼,而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得 更糟。

3. 句型公式:the number of...

After 1975, the number of large sharks around America fell quickly, and soon fell around the world.

1975年以后,在美国附近的海域里,大型鲨鱼的数量 迅速下降,这一趋势很快蔓延到全球。

4. 句型公式:rather than

He came to see people as a danger to sharks, rather than the other way round.

他意识到人类才是鲨鱼的威胁,而不是相反的情 况。

5. 句型公式:部分否定

Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film Jaws became afraid of sharks-some became interested in understanding them.

幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人 都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始有兴趣去了解它 们了。

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### 1. scare v. 使(某人)惊恐,吓唬 n. 惊恐,恐慌

[教材原文] People have always been scared of sharks, but *Jaws* made things worse.

人们本就害怕鲨鱼,而电影《大白鲨》让事情变得更糟。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1) scare sb. into doing sth. 威胁/恐吓某人做某事 scare... away/off 把……吓跑
- (2) scared adj. 害怕的

be scared of (doing) sth. 害怕(做)某事

be scared to do sth. 不敢做某事

be scared to death 吓得要死

be scared (that)... 恐惧;害怕……

(3)scary adj. 可怕的;恐怖的

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①(2023 新课标 II 卷) Though some are initially scared of the insects and turned off by the dirt, most are eager to try something new.
- ②Seeing the angry mother, the boy was scared to tell (tell) the truth.
- ③She was scared of walking (walk) home alone in the fog, so she called a taxi.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之心理描写)当我意识到那头熊回来 攻击我们的时候,我**几乎要吓死了**。

When I realised that the bear was coming back to attack us, I was nearly scared to death.

②(读后续写之场景描写)没有好心的保罗帮忙,马克决不可能赤手空拳**把狼吓跑**。

Mac could by no means scare the wolf off/away with bare hands without the help of kind-hearted Paul.

### 2. fortunately adv. 幸运地

[教材原文] Fortunately, not everyone who watched the film *Jaws* became afraid of sharks—some became interested in understanding them. 幸运的是,并不是每个观看了电影《大白鲨》的人都变得害怕鲨鱼——有些人开始有兴趣去了解它们了。

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) fortune n. 大笔的钱,巨款;运气;机遇;命运 have good/bad fortune 运气好/不好 make a fortune 发财

try one's fortune 碰运气

tell one's fortune 给人算命

(2)fortunate adj. 幸运的

be fortunate to do sth. 做某事是幸运的

(3)unfortunately adv. 不幸地

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① The young man is determined never to come back before he can make a big fortune.
- ② <u>Fortunately</u> (fortune), after a brief stay in hospital, Ben was well enough to be allowed to go home.
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之活动报道)我**有幸得到一次**沿丝绸 之路旅行的**宝贵机会**。
- ①I am fortunate to get a precious opportunity to travel along the Silk Road.(fortunate)
- ② I have the good fortune to get a precious opportunity to travel along the Silk Road. (fortune)

### 3. refer to 提到;参考;涉及;指的是;查阅

[教材原文] What environmental problem does each cartoon **refer to**?

每幅漫画都提到了什么样的环境问题?

### [归纳拓展]

(1) refer v. 参考,查阅;涉及;提到 refer to... as... 把……称为…… refer sth. to sb. 把某物提交给某人

(2) reference n. 参考;涉及 in/with reference to 关于 for reference 以供参考

### 一名师 点拨■■■■■

refer to/look up 都可以用来表示"查阅"之意,但 其宾语有所不同: refer to+a book/dictionary; look up sth. in a book/dictionary。

### [即学即练]

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① They always refer to me <u>as</u> a bookworm because I am always addicted to reading.
- ② Apart from the textbooks, I often refer to other reference (refer) materials to assist my studies.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之告知信)**关于比赛**如果你想知道 更多,请联系我。

If you want to know more in/with reference to the competition, just contact me. (reference)

②(应用文写作之建议信)如果你遇到了不认识的 字,你可以查字典或者向他人求助。

If you meet with the characters you don't know, you can refer to a dictionary or turn to others for help.

### 4. cut off 切断;中断

[教材原文]Finning is a type of fishing where sharks are caught and their fins cut off.

割鳍是一种渔猎活动,即人们捕到鲨鱼后将其鱼鳍 割下。

### 「归纳拓展」

cut down 砍倒;削减,缩减

cut in 插嘴

cut up 切碎

cut across 走捷径,走近路

cut out (机器)突然熄火;删去;切去;停止

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Cut up the carrots before you put them into the
- 2 She kept cutting in on our conversation, which made us very angry.
- 3 I usually encounter her when I cut across the park

on my way home.

- 4 The town was cut off from the rest of the world due to heavy snow.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿)许多树木正在被砍伐,许多 动物正在被猎杀,我们的环境正在被破坏,难道我 们不应该采取措施去改变现状吗?

With many trees being cut down, many animals being hunted and our environment being destroyed, shouldn't we take measures to make a difference?

### 多义词汇 专练

- 1. refer to A. 参考 B. 查阅 C. 指的是
  - D. 提到,谈到
  - ① If you don't know the exact meaning of the word, you may refer to the dictionary.
  - 2 Your notes are excellent materials to refer to when you are studying for a test.
  - (3) We have reached an agreement that we will not refer to the matter again. D
  - (4) I was not **referring to** her when I said so. С
- 2. Think about who will use your products, then target them with keywords. С

A. v. 把 ·····作为攻击目标

B. n. 目标;指标

C. v. 把 ······· 对准(某群体)

## Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十二)

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. It is reported that over 1,000 sharks were finned (fin) last year.
- 2. It was her first time to write a story which proved a great success.
- 3. What is your attitude towards/to senior high students taking up a part-time job?
- 4. She lost her watch, but fortunately (fortunate) her mother found it on her way to school.
- 5. The change in climate might be one of the causes for the extinction (extinct) of dinosaurs.
- 6. Hearing the bad news, they stood there in fear and trembling, not knowing how to do it.

### Ⅱ. 短语填空

due to; have an effect on; be scared of; cut off; see... as; refer to; in fear; rather than

1. What attracted him is her personality rather than her beauty.

- 2. Even though I am scared of talking with strangers, I will sign up for the charity party.
- 3. It is reported that landslides (滑坡) have cut off many villages in remote areas.
- 4. Obviously, some animals are dying out due to some human activities.
- **5.** The statistic figures in the report are not accurate. You should not refer to them.
- 6. A change in diet today could take several months to have an effect on your hair.
- 7. Many students now see university as a stepping stone to a good job.
- 8. Seeing the snake winding on the path, the girl ran away in fear.

### Ⅲ. 补全句子

1. 沉浸于绘画中,约翰没有注意到黄昏来临。(感官 动词+宾语+宾语补足语)

Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening coming on.

2. 听到这个消息,他们都高兴得跳了起来。(现在分词作状语)

Hearing the news, they all jumped with joy.

- 3. 学生的人数依然不清楚。(the number of...)
  There is still confusion about the number of students.
- 4. 骑自行车不仅可以帮助我们强身健体而且还可以减少空气污染。(not only... but also...)
  Cycling can not only build up our bodies but also reduce air pollution.
- **5.** 并非所有人都已意识到全球变暖的严重后果。(部分否定)

Not everyone has been aware of the serious consequence of global warming.

### Ⅳ. 完形填空

She looked up at me sadly, her pain being unbearably obvious. I 1 her as she swam silently around the small pool. The top left corner of her yellow shell was 2, and her flippers (鳍状肢) were filled with cuts and scars.

These 3 creatures looked as though they were war heroes wounded in battle, but they were just a group of innocent sea turtles injured by 4 humans.

Earlier that day, our students learned those endangered sea turtles were being \_\_5\_ all the time \_\_6\_ water pollution, litter, and careless boaters and fishermen. We were taught how to \_\_7\_ the deaths and injuries of this species and conserve our ocean life and environment.

I had been conscious of the damage our environment was suffering \_\_8 \_\_ I had never truly been given the opportunity to \_\_9 \_\_ the devastating (毁灭性的) effects of environmental destruction until I observed that \_\_10 \_\_. Seeing a picture of these animals, we cannot truly sense the \_\_11 \_\_ on their faces. Now that I have witnessed the \_\_12 caused by the pollution and people's carelessness, I try to encourage my friends to \_\_13 \_\_ their eating habit, which can \_\_14 \_\_ our environment. We need to start saving our environment now \_\_15 \_\_ it's too late.

- 1. A. recognised B. introduced C. watched D. satisfied
  - C 根据语境可知,"我"看着她静静地在小池塘里游着。watch 意为"观察;观看",符合题意。
- 2. A. strange B. missing C. shining D. complex
  - B 根据下文可知,这是只受伤的海龟。此处应该 是指左上角的黄色外壳不见(missing)了。
- **3.** A. troublesome B. rare

C. ugly D. unfortunate

D 根据上文她左上角的黄色外壳不见了,她的鳍

状肢布满了刀伤和伤疤可知,它们是不幸的 (unfortunate)。

4. A. skilful B. stubborn C. intelligent D. careless

D 根据下文的"careless boaters and fishermen" 可知,这是一群无辜的海龟,被粗心的(careless)人

类伤害。 **5.** A. studied

B. discovered

C. killed

D. displayed

C 这些濒临灭绝的海龟因为水污染、(乱丢)垃圾、粗心大意的渔船和渔民而死去(killed)。

- **6.** A. because of
- B. in case of

C. in spite of

D. apart from

A 这些濒临灭绝的海龟因为(because of)水污染、乱丢垃圾、粗心大意的渔船和渔民而被杀。

- 7. A. report
- B. lessen

C. escape D. prove

B 根据常识可知,"我们"学会了如何减少这个物种的伤亡。lessen 为动词,意为"减少"。

- **8.** A. so
- B. but

C. or

D. and

B "我"已意识到"我们"的环境不断遭受破坏,但 (but)"我"从来没能真正有机会看到环境被破坏带来的毁灭性影响,直到看到那只海龟。

- **9.** A. see
- B. predict

C. prevent D. experience

A "我"已意识到"我们"的环境不断遭受破坏,但 "我"从来没有真正有机会看到(see)环境破坏后的 毁灭性影响,直到看到那只海龟。

- 10. A. boater
- B. fisherman
- C. visitor
- D. turtle

D 根据上文的"sea turtles"可知,此处指海龟(turtle)。

- **11.** A. pain
- B. dirt
- C. mask
- D. sign

A 看这些动物的照片无法使"我们"真正感觉到它们遭受的痛苦(pain)。

- **12.** A. worry
- B. harm
- C. anger
- D. shame

B 根据语境可知,"我"已经目睹了由污染和人类的疏忽造成的伤害(harm)。

- 13. A. mention
- B. form
- C. change
- D. check
- C "我"试图鼓励"我"的朋友们改变(change)他们的饮食习惯。
- 14. A. describe
- B. witness
- C. investigate
- D. benefit
- D 这样做会使"我们"的环境受益。benefit 意为 "对……有好处",符合题意。
- **15.** A. unless
- B. before
- C. while
- D. though

B 在事情无法挽回之前(before),"我们"要开始 拯救环境了。

#### Section | Using language

#### 学习任务目标

- 1. Master basic knowledge of this lesson and use it freely.
- 2. Learn to use -ing and -ed as complement correctly.
- 3. Find the ways to deal with global warming and learn to interrupt others politely.

### 自主式预习 。

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. As is known to all, smoking can seriously damage your health.
- 2. People were concerned that wildlife could be affected by the pesticides (杀虫剂).
- 3. This is a two-year course taught by means of lectures and seminars (研讨会). 讲座,讲课
- 4. The staff of an organisation are the people who work for it.
- 5. The goal is to reduce the amount of pollution released into the atmosphere.
- **6.** More than 70 people were killed in the **floods**.

7. Due to the earthquake, the water supply is unsafe, making people's life more difficult.

- 8. The soil is cracking up (龟裂) because of the drought.
- **9.** If not treated, the illness can become **severe**.

10. A brochure is a magazine or thin book with pictures that gives you information about a product or service. 小册子

### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
devote v. 致力,献身, 倾注	devoted $adj$ . 忠实的;深 爱的
	devotion n. 深爱,热爱; 奉献
cruelty n. 残忍,残酷, 残暴	cruel adj. 残酷的,残暴 的
presentation n. 报告, (观点的)陈述,说明	present v. 呈现;授予;提出;提交

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
ootoblish '母子 '邓子	established adj. 已确立的;确定的
establish v. 建立,设立	establishment n. 建立; 确立
adopt v. 采取(某种方	adopted $adj$ . 收养的,领 养的
法)	adoption n. 采用,采纳; 收养,领养
reduce v. 减少,降低	reduction n. 减少,降低
infection n. 感染,传染	infect v. 传染,使感染
病	infected adj. 受感染的
permission n. 允许,许可	permit v. 允许,许可 n.许可证;特许证
reserve n. (野生生物) 保护区	reservation n. (美)(野生 动物)保护区;预订;保留 (意见)

#### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. be devoted to 致力于……
- 2. have a(n)... impact on/upon 对……有……的影响
- 3. keep... from ... 阻止……遭到……
- 4. get sb. involved in ... 使某人参与 ······
- 5. replace... with ... 用 ······取代 ······
- 6. aim at 旨在;瞄准
- 7. instead of 代替,而不是

### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:过去分词短语作后置定语 We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water supply downstream.

我们也看到这些变化引发了干旱和水灾,影响了 下游的供水。

2. 句型公式:include doing sth.

This includes keeping the original environment

from being touched, as well as adopting new, sustainable ways of feeding farm animals.

这包括阻止原始环境遭受破坏,以及采用新的、可持续的方式喂养农场动物。

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### 1. devote v. 致力,献身,倾注

[教材原文]Now, she is a model and performance artist **devoted** to ocean conservation.

现在,她是一名模特和行为艺术家,致力于海洋保护。

### 「归纳拓展」

(1) devote one's life/time/energies to (doing) sth. 把某人的一生/时间/精力用在/献给(做)某事上 devote oneself to 致力于,献身于;专心于

(2)devoted adj. 忠实的;深爱的

be devoted to (doing) sth. 献身于/专心致志于(做)某事

(3) devotion n. 深爱,热爱;奉献

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① These doctors are determined to devote their energies to <u>finding</u> (find) a new cure for the lung cancer.
- ②My mother, a high school teacher, has won a number of teaching awards for her <u>devotion</u> (devote) to her work.
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之人物介绍)我最钦佩的人是我的邻居,他**致力于帮助他人**。
- ①The person I admire most is my neighbour who devotes himself to giving others a helping hand. (devote)
- ②My neighbour is so devoted to giving others a helping hand that I admire him most.(devoted)
- ③ <u>Devoted to giving others a helping hand</u>, my neighbour is the person I admire most.(分词作状语)

# supply n. (煤气、电力、自来水等)供应(系统);供应量;补给 v. 供给,供应

[教材原文] We've also seen droughts and floods caused by these changes, which affect the water supply downstream.

我们也看到这些变化引发了干旱和水灾,影响了下游的供水。

### [归纳拓展]

(1)water/food/blood supply 水/食物/血液供应 power supply 电源

a supply of 供应……

in short supply 供应不足

(2) supply sth. to sb. (= supply sb. with sth.) 给某人提供某物

### 【易混辨析】provide/supply/offer

易混词	含义及区别
provide	v. 提供(物品或信息) provide sb. with sth./provide sth. for sb. 给某人提供某物
supply	v. (定期、大量地)供应,提供 supply sb. with sth./supply sth. for sb. 给某人提供某物
v. 主动提供(物品或帮助) offer offer sb. sth./offer sth. to sb. 给某人提供 某物;offer to do sth. 愿意做某事	

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① What will happen when food and petrol <u>supplies</u> (supply) run low?
- ②The fresh vegetables are in short supply on the mountaintop, which has a negative influence on their life.
- ③Don't forget that camels need a large supply of plants grown in the desert to eat.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)这次采摘活动**为我们提供了一个**能更进一步理解农民艰辛的**机会**。

This picking activity supplied a chance to us/us with a chance to further understand the hardship of the farmers.

### 3. reduce v. 减少,降低;缩小

[教材原文] Reduce waste by choosing reusable products—get a reusable water bottle, for example.

通过选择可重复使用的产品以减少废弃物——比如,购买一个可重复使用的水瓶。

### [归纳拓展]

reduce (...) by... 把 .....减少了 .......

reduce sb. to doing sth. 使某人沦落到做某事的地 步;迫使某人做某事(to 是介词)

reduce sth. to ruins 把某物夷为废墟

(2) reduction n. 减少,降低

make a reduction 减少

#### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- (1) With great effort, she has reduced her weight by five kilograms in the past 7 days.
- ② (2023 · 新课标 I 卷) Somehow, these arguments and reasoning resulted in a global reduction (reduce) in error.
- 3 In the old society, he was reduced (reduce) to begging for a living.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信)我写信邀请你加入我们学 校的乒乓球队,因为打乒乓球不仅能缓解压力,还 能保持身体健康。

I am writing to invite you to join the table tennis team in our school because playing table tennis can not only reduce pressure, but also keep physically healthy.

### 4. permission n. 允许,许可

「教材原文 ] A polite interruption is usually framed as a request for **permission** to interrupt someone, often starting with If..., May I...? or Can I...? 礼貌的打断通常被理解为请求允许打断某人,通常以 If..., May I...? 或 Can I...? 开始。

### [归纳拓展]

(1)ask for permission 请求许可 give sb. permission to do sth. 允许某人做某事 without permission 未经许可 with sb.'s permission 经某人同意

(2) permit v. 允许,许可 n. 许可证;特许证 permit doing sth. 允许做某事 permit sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① To protect the wild animals, people are not permitted to gain (gain) access to natural reserves.
- 2 We don't permit using (use) the lab without the teacher's permission (permit).
- ③Passengers are permitted to carry (carry) only one

piece of hand luggage onto the plane.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之通知)如果天气允许,比赛将于下午2 点在我校体育馆举行,持续约3小时。

Weather permitting/If weather permits, the competition to be held in our school stadium will begin at 2 pm and last for roughly 3 hours.

### 5. the+比较级(+主谓),the+比较级(+主谓)

「教材原文] The less energy you use, the less carbon dioxide is released.

你消耗的能量越少,释放的二氧化碳就越少。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)"the+比较级, the+比较级..."意为"越,就 越……",第一个"the+比较级"是表示条件的状语 从句(在表示将来意义时,从句用一般现在时表示 将来);第二个"the+比较级"是主句。
- (2)"比较级+and+比较级"表示"越来越……"。
- (3)"the+比较级+of (the)+名词/代词",表示 "(两者中)较……的"。

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①As far as I'm concerned, the more you practise drawing, the better (good) at it you will become.
- 2 The more difficult (difficult) the questions are, the less likely he is able to answer them.
- 3 The more (much) you listen and read, the better you will write and speak.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之建议信)你练习得越多,你说中文

The more you practice, the more fluently you will speak Chinese.

②(读后续写之心理描写)走在那条泥土路上的时 候,天越黑我越害怕。

While I was walking on the dirt path, the darker it was, the more frightened I was.

### 多义词汇 专练

1. His mother, grandmother and great grandmother were all born at the **reserve** and still live there. B

A. n. 预约

C. n. 保留 2. But when he finally reached her, the woman flooded him with questions: "Who are you? What

antique shop?" A. v. 大量涌入

B. v. 泛滥

C

B. n. 保护区

C. v. (使)充满

### 语法研习课

### 现在分词和过去分词作补足语

### ·语法感知

- ①It made people frightened of sharks, ...
- ②I wanted two tickets reserved.
- 3 We see a woman swimming at night in a dark sea.
- 1. 句①②中黑体部分是过去分词作<u>补足语</u>,与宾语之间是被动关系。
- 2. 句③中黑体部分是现在分词作<u>补足语</u>,与宾语之间 是 主动关系。

### ·语法精讲

### 一、现在分词作宾语补足语

现在分词作宾语补足语时,往往表示正在进行的动作或经常存在的状态,与宾语之间构成主动关系。

- 1. 现在分词常作以下动词(短语)的宾语补足语。
  - (1)表示感觉和心理状态的感官动词(短语),如 see, hear, feel, smell, find, notice, observe, look at, listen to 等。

I felt somebody standing behind me.

我感觉有人站在我后面。

I saw the little boy crying there.

我看到那个小男孩在那里哭。

(2)表示使动意义的动词,如 have, keep, get, leave 等。

We **kept** the fire **burning** all night long. 我们让火整夜燃烧着。

I won't **have** you **running** about in the room. 我不允许你在房间里跑来跑去。

### ----名 师 点 拨■■■■■

使役动词后接现在分词作宾语补足语,表示"让……一直做某事";当 have/keep/leave 接不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语时,表示"让某人/某物做……";当 have/get/keep/leave 后接过去分词作宾语补足语时,表示"使某人/某物被……"。Be careful, or you'll have your hands hurt.小心一些,否则你会弄伤手的。

2. 用于 with 复合结构中,其中现在分词与前面的名词或代词之间构成主动关系。

I couldn't do my homework with the noise going on.

由于噪声不断,我没法做家庭作业。

With so many people looking at her, she felt nervous.

这么多人看着她,她感到紧张。

### ····名 师 点 拨 ■■■■■

在 with 复合结构(with+名词/代词+非谓语动词)中,当非谓语动词与前面的名词或代词表示被动关系时,用过去分词;表示主动关系时,用现在分词;表示目的或将来时,用动词不定式。

### 二、过去分词作宾语补足语

1. 过去分词作宾语补足语时,往往是说明宾语的状态或性质,宾语和过去分词之间是逻辑上的被动关系。

I saw his eyes **fixed** on me with curiosity.

我看见他的眼睛盯着我,充满了好奇。

We want the work **finished** by Saturday.

我们想要这项工作在周六前完成。

We found the house deserted.

我们发现这所房子被废弃了。

With the homework **finished**, Tom went out to play with his friends.

家庭作业完成了,汤姆和他的朋友们出去玩了。

- 2. 能接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词
  - (1)表示"感觉"或"心理状态"的动词,如 see, hear, feel, watch, notice, think, consider, find 等;
  - (2)表示"致使"或"保持某状态"意义的动词,如make, get, have, keep, leave等;
  - (3)表示"希望、要求、命令"意义的动词,如 want, wish, like, expect, order 等。

We saw the thief caught by the police.

我们看见小偷被警察抓住了。

Don't leave such an important thing undone.

不要留下这么重要的事不完成。

He **had** his hat **blown** away on his way home. 在回家的路上他的帽子被吹掉了。

I want the house whitewashed before we move in. 我想要在我们搬进去之前把房子粉刷完。

### 。语法冲关

### Ⅰ. 单句语法填空

- 1. The manager was satisfied to see many new products developed (develop) after great efforts.
- 2. When we saw the road <u>blocked</u> (block) with snow, we decided to spend the holiday at home.
- 3. Back from his two-year medical service in Africa, Dr Lee was very happy to see his mother <u>taken</u> (take) good care of at home.
- **4.** I looked up and noticed a snake winding (wind) its way up the tree to catch its breakfast.

- 5. Jenny hopes that Mr Smith will suggest a good way to have her written English improved (improve) in a short period.
- 6. In order to make the room warm, the old lady had the fire burning (burn) all night.
- 7. With the exam approaching (approach), it is a good idea to review your class notes.
- 8. With the development of technology, we can use computers to keep the traffic running (run) smoothly.
- 9. She looked around and caught a man putting (put) his hand into the pocket of a passenger.
- 10. I'm afraid I can't make myself understood (understand) due to my poor English.

### Ⅱ. 完成句子

1. The guests left most of the dishes untouched, because they didn't taste delicious.

- 客人们动都没动大部分的菜,因为它们不可口。
- 2. Finding her car stolen, she hurried to ask a policeman for help.
  - 发现她的车被偷了,她赶紧找警察帮忙。
- 3. We hurriedly ended our meeting, leaving many problems to be settled.
  - 我们匆匆忙忙地结束了会议,留下了很多问题待
- 4. Unfortunately, she found her ring gone on her way home.
  - 不幸的是,在回家的路上,她发现她的戒指不见
- 5. My mother never allows me to play computer games with my homework unfinished.
  - 我妈妈从来不允许我在作业还没完成的情况下玩 电脑游戏。

### Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十三)

### Section **II** Using language

### Ⅰ. 词语填空

establish; severe; damage; lecture; affect; adopt; staff; reduce; devote oneself to; flood; release...

- 1. It's said that this disease affects millions of people in the world every year.
- 2. In order to reduce pollution, we human beings have no choice but to choose some clean resources.
- 3. According to the report, the new technology has been more widely adopted.
- 4. The musician devoted himself to music and won a great success in his career.
- 5. We have established trade ties with these regions.
- 6. It's reported that up to one hundred tons of chemicals a year are released from the factory.
- 7. Drinking and smoking can damage your health.
- 8. A severe earthquake that happened last night turned the small village down to ground.
- 9. The book is an expansion of a series of lectures given last year.
- 10. The town located in the west of the city was destroyed by the floods after the storm.
- 11. Ten staff members of this company are looking into the matter.

### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- 1. The nation's fuel supplies (supply) will not last
- 2. Only if a teacher has given permission (permit) is a student allowed to enter the lab.
- 3. It was the most extreme example of cruelty (cruel) to animals I had ever seen.
- 4. If the drought (dry) continues there's going to be a famine (饥荒).
- 5. In the last section of the presentation (present), what problems are we focusing on?
- 6. The earlier (early) you start, the sooner you'll be back.
- 7. The murderer was brought in, with his hands tied (tie) behind his back.
- 8. He was so nervous that he could hear his heart beating (beat) wildly.
- 9. Don't leave the water running (run) all the time while you brush your teeth.
- 10. He didn't keep on asking me the time any longer as he had had his watch repaired (repair).

#### Ⅲ. 完成句子

1. Wherever we go, we will see this kind of products advertised.

无论我们到哪里,都会看到这种产品在做广告。

2. I need a new passport, so I will have to have my photograph taken.

我需要一本新护照,所以我得去拍张照片。

3. If you want to  $\underline{\text{make yourself respected}}$ , you are above all to respect yourself.

如果你想让自己被尊重,你必须首先尊重自己。

- 4. The Internet keeps us informed of the latest news and also provides entertainment in the house. 网络使我们了解最新的新闻,而且也在家里为我们提供娱乐(活动)。
- **5.** Nowadays, more and more people like to hunt for what they want online and <u>have them delivered</u> by the express company.

现在,越来越多的人喜欢在网上搜寻他们想要的东西,然后让快递公司邮寄。

#### Ⅳ. 阅读理解

Hundreds of fish in Canada beat the heat in human-made streams of cold water. The approach could help protect cold-water species as climate change warms rivers.

Fish can become stressed or even die when the water gets too hot. In rivers, Atlantic salmon and other cold-water species sometimes escape the heat by swimming to cooler zones. Such cool sites may be found near groundwater springs. These small rivers and streams flow into larger waterways.

"People have done a lot to preserve and add to these natural shelters," said Kathryn Smith, a civil engineer in Canada at Dalhousie University in Halifax, Nova Scotia. Her team worked on the new river-cooling project. She said, "Until now, there hasn't really been an emphasis if we can create coldwater habitat."

To test the idea, her team pumped (用泵输送) groundwater from a nearby well into the Wrights River in Nova Scotia. The groundwater was 9℃. This created an artificial stream of cool water. It was up to 20℃ cooler than the surrounding water.

This stream attracted several hundred fish of different life stages and species. These included Atlantic salmon. Most were fry (鱼苗), young still carrying their eggs' yolk sacs. These small fry hung out in the stream throughout the test. But when a heat wave raised river temperatures to about  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ , older fish took shelter in the stream, too.

The team also tried a second approach. They changed the route of some water from the river into an underground trench (沟). Here, the water cooled a bit before flowing back into the river. This method cooled part of the river without needing a pump. The water temperature fell by only a few degrees Celsius

this way. But even so, fish were spotted in the cooled flow throughout the summer.

- 1. What did the team do during the project?
  - A. They raised different fish.
  - B. They made the water cooler.
  - C. They dealt with climate change.
  - D. They developed a lot of streams.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"To test the idea, her team pumped (用泵输送) groundwater from a nearby well into the Wrights River in Nova Scotia."可知,该团队在项目中让水变得凉爽。故选B。
- 2. What can we know about Atlantic salmon from Paragraph 2?
  - A. It dislikes too hot water.
  - B. It dies from other fish's hunting.
  - C. It is always found in the spring.
  - D. It prefers to live in small streams.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"Fish can become stressed or even die when the water gets too hot. In rivers, Atlantic salmon and other coldwater species sometimes escape the heat by swimming to cooler zones."可知,大西洋鲑鱼不喜欢太热的水。故选 A。
- 3. Which word can best describe the project?
  - A. Costly.
- B. Effective.
- C. Meaningless.
- D. Historic.
- B 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容和最后一段中的"This method cooled part of the river without needing a pump. The water temperature fell by only a few degrees Celsius this way. But even so, fish were spotted in the cooled flow throughout the summer."可知,这个项目有效地吸引了各种鱼类,包括大西洋鲑鱼,在热浪来临时,它们在水流中避难。因此,这个项目是有效的。故选B。
- **4.** Which may be the best title for the text?
  - A. Climate Change Forced Fish to Escape
  - B. Fish Sought Cold Water to Avoid Dying
  - C. A Project Protected Fish from the Heat
  - D. A Team Preserved the Rivers in Canada
  - C 标题归纳题。根据第一段和第四段的内容以及最后一段中的"This method cooled part of the river without needing a pump. The water temperature fell by only a few degrees Celsius this way. But even so, fish were spotted in the cooled flow throughout the summer."可知,这篇文章主要介绍了一个保护鱼类免受高温影响的项目。故选 C。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

### 学习任务目标

- 1. Find out if the four "green truths" are true or false.
- 2. Figure out the details about the "green truths".
- 3. Think and share what you can do to become "greener".

### 自主式预习

### Ⅰ. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The majority of people interviewed prefer watching TV to listening to the radio.

2. The amount of something is how much there is, or how much you have, need, or get.

数量,数额

- 3. A device is an object that has been invented for a particular purpose. 设备,仪器,装置
- 4. It's thought a gas leak may have caused the explosion. (使)漏,(使)渗漏
- 5. The company launched (发起) an advertising campaign to improve its image. (宣传)活动
- 6. The average age of the boys in this class is fifteen. 平均(数)的

### Ⅱ. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
urge v. 竭力主张,强	urgent adj. 紧急的,急 迫的
烈要求,敦促	urgency <i>n</i> . 紧急,迫切; 紧急的事
remove v. 移走,搬走, 去掉	removal n. 移动;去除; 搬迁
contribute v. 促成,造成(某事发生)	contribution n. 贡献;捐 献;稿件
majority n. 多数,大多数(人或物)	major adj. 主要的 v. 主 修,专攻
electricity n. 电	electric adj. 用电的;电 动的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
concerned adj. 焦急	concern $n$ . 忧虑,担心 $v$ . 使忧虑,使担心
的,担忧的	concerning <i>prep</i> . 就······ 而言,关于;涉及

### Ⅲ. 补全短语

- 1. mistake... for ... 把 ·······误看作 ······
- 2. break down 分解;发生故障;失败;破裂;垮掉;打 破;情绪失控
- 3. take... into account 把 ······考虑进去
- 4. depend on 取决于;依靠;依赖
- 5. in fact 事实上;实际上

### Ⅳ. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: which 引导非限制性定语从句 Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, which mistake them for food. 塑料袋会变成垃圾,对野生动物很危险,因为它们 会把塑料袋误认为食物。

2. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作主语

However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.

然而,生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍,耗水 则多达三倍。

3. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语

To make sure your appliance is in fact off, remove the plug from its power supply.

为了确保电器设备彻底关闭,请把插头从电源上 拔下来。

### 4. 句型公式:强调句型

<u>It is</u> the production of food, not its transport, <u>that</u> uses most of the energy and produces most of the greenhouse gases.

消耗大部分能源和产生大部分温室气体的是食品

的生产,而不是食品的运输。

5. 句型公式:it 作形式主语

It's not always better to take a shower than a bath.

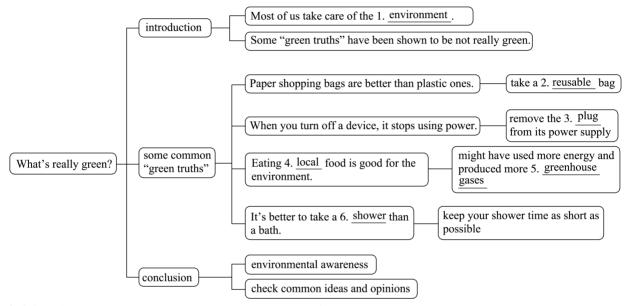
淋浴并不总是比泡澡好。

### ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### Part 1 课文理解

### ○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text.



### ○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text.

- 1. Which of the following are environmentally friendly?
  - A. Paper bags.
  - B. Plastic bags.
  - C. Reusable bags.
  - D. Unrecycled bags.
- 2. What can we know from the text?
  - A. Paper bags are a great danger to wild animals.
  - B. Paper bags are better choices than plastic bags.
  - C. Making plastic bags uses much more energy than making paper bags.
  - D. Making paper bags uses much more water than making plastic bags.
- 3. How can we really save power?
  - A. By turning off a device.
  - B. By making the device into stand-by mode.
  - C. By removing the plug from its power supply.
  - D. By using a device all the time.

- **4.** What's the author's purpose in writing the text?
  - A. To tell readers the importance of saving energy.
  - B. To inform readers how to keep the balance of nature.
  - C. To explain to readers what "the real green" is.
  - D. To show readers how to choose proper devices.

#### 答案:1~4 CDCC

### ○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them.

 Most of us are aware that we must take care of the environment, and the majority of us take steps to save energy and reduce waste and pollution.

[句子分析]本句是一个由 and 连接的并列复合句。 that 引导的是宾语从句, to save... and reduce... 是 两个并列的目的状语。

[尝试翻译]我们大多数人都意识到了我们必须关心环境,而且我们大多数人也采取了措施节约能源,减少浪费和污染。

2. Plastic bags cause litter and are a danger to wild animals, which mistake them for food.

「句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。主句中 and 连接并列谓语,逗号后面的 which 引导非限制性 定语从句。

[尝试翻译]塑料袋会变成垃圾,对野生动物很危 险,因为它们会把塑料袋误认为食物。

3. It is the production of food, not its transport, that uses most of the energy and produces most of the greenhouse gases.

### [句子分析]本句是一个强调句,强调的是主语,即 the production of food, not its transport.

「尝试翻译]消耗大部分能源和产生大部分温室气 体的是食品的生产,而不是食品的运输。

### ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions.

- 1. What's the main idea of the text? What's really green in our daily life.
- 2. Could you share your "green" actions with the class?

略

#### 语言梳理 Part 2

### 1. majority n. 多数,大多数(人或物)

「教材原文 ] Most of us are aware that we must take care of the environment, and the majority of us take steps to save energy and reduce waste and pollution.

我们大多数人都意识到了我们必须关心环境,而且 我们大多数人也采取了措施节约能源,减少浪费和 污染。

### 「归纳拓展」

- (1)in a/the majority 占大多数
- a/the majority of 大多数,大部分(作主语时,谓语 动词的单复数取决于 of 后的名词)
- (2) major adj. 主要的 v. 主修,专攻 major in... 主修 ······
- (3) minor adj. 少数的,较小的;次要的
- (4) minority n. 少数,少数人

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① There are (be) a majority of students who believe that space exploration has more advantages.
- 2 As a graduate majoring in the English language, I feel excited to apply for the position.
- ③I believe that students supporting me are in the majority.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动报道)有些人中途放弃了,但是 **大部分参赛者**都成功跑到了终点。

Some people gave up halfway, but the majority of the participants made it to the finishing line.

### 2. amount n. 数量,数额;金额 v. 总计,共达;等于,相 当于

[教材原文] However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.

然而,生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍,耗水 则多达三倍。

### 「归纳拓展」

(1)an amount of 许多······(通常修饰不可数名词; 作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式)

a large/small amount of 大/少量的 ······(通常修饰 不可数名词;作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式)

large/small amounts of 大/少量的 ······(通常修饰 不可数名词;作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式)

(2)amount to 达到;等于

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Joe has spent quite an amount of energy on his
- ②A large amount of water is (be) wasted every
- 3 As far as I know, large amounts of money have been spent (spend) on the construction of the school by now.
- 4 Keeping what belongs to another person amounts to stealing.
- (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿)许多专家提倡减少砍伐树 木的数量。

Many experts advocate reducing the amount of trees that are cut down.

### 3. concerned adj. 焦急的,担忧的;关心的;相关的, 有关的

[教材原文]We are concerned that...

我们担心……

### 「归纳拓展〕

(1) be concerned about/for 担心……

be concerned that... 担心……

be concerned with 与……有关:涉及

as far as sb. be concerned 就某人而言

(2) concern n. 忧虑,担心 υ. 使忧虑,使担心

show/express concern about/for 对 …… 表示关 心/担心

concern oneself about/with sb./sth. 关心某人/某

事;担心某人/某事

(3) concerning prep. 就……而言,关于;涉及

### ┈名 师 点 拨 ■■■■

concerned 可用作形容词,意为"焦急的,担忧的; 关心的"时,作前置定语,表示"相关的,有关的" 时,作后置定语。

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ① I am writing to tell you something <u>concerning</u> (concern) the coming-of-age ceremony held in our school.
- ②The meeting was concerned with reforms and everyone present was concerned for/about their own interests.
- 3 He was concerned (concern) with the murder.
- There's no need to concern yourself with/about this matter.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之慰问信)听说您生病了,我们很**担** 心您。

Hearing that you have been ill, we <u>are concerned</u> about/for you.

②(应用文写作之活动报道)在我看来,它使我们意识到了作为成年人我们所承担的责任。

As far as I am concerned, it makes us aware of the responsibility we are shouldering as adults.

### **4. contribute** *v*. 促成,造成(某事发生);捐献,捐助; 投稿

[教材原文]Look at the three items that **contribute** to a carbon footprint.

看看造成碳足迹的三类物品。

#### 「归纳拓展」

- (1) contribute to 促成,导致 contribute... to... 向……捐献;向……投稿
- (2) contribution *n*. 贡献;捐献;稿件 make a contribution/contributions to 对……做出贡献;向……捐款
- (3) contributor n. 捐款人;撰稿人;起作用的因素「即学即练」
- (1)单句语法填空
- ① Our teacher has contributed a number of articles to the magazine.
- ②Loneliness is a serious social problem that can contribute to depression.
- ③ Environmental protection starts with me, and everyone can make a contribution to the cause.

- (2)写作微练
- ①(应用文写作之倡议信)我相信,只要我们每个人都**对海洋保护做出贡献**,海洋会更加干净美丽。

I'm confident that as long as each of us <u>makes a</u> contribution to the ocean protection, the ocean will be cleaner and more beautiful.

②(读后续写之主旨升华)我坚信诚实的重要性,这将有助于建设一个温暖和谐的社会。

I'm firmly convinced of the significance of honesty, which will contribute to building a warm and harmonious society.

# 5. break down 分解;发生故障;失败;破裂;垮掉;打破;情绪失控

[教材原文] It takes hundreds of years for plastic to **break down**, but much less time for paper. 塑料需要数百年才能分解,而纸的降解时间要短得多。

### [归纳拓展]

break out (坏事)突然发生;(战争)爆发 break away (from) 逃脱,挣脱,脱离 break in 闯入;打断谈话,插嘴 break into 闯进;打断 break through 冲破,突破 break up 打碎;破裂;终止;驱散

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Unfortunately, I'm sorry to tell you that the machine broke down again.
- ② Some people broke down the door and broke into his house. They broke up the TV and something else.
- ③ After the storm, the sun broke through the clouds, which was a striking scene.
- (2)写作微练
- ①(读后续写之情景描写)教授刚一走上讲台,**观众就爆发出**雷鸣般的掌声。

No sooner had the professor stepped on the stage than the audience broke into thunderous applause. ②(应用文写作之求助信)我能做些什么来帮助他们改善情况、摆脱困境呢?

What can I do to help them improve the situation and break away from the difficult position?

### 6. 倍数表达法

[教材原文] However, making a paper bag uses four times as much energy as making a plastic bag and up to three times the amount of water.

然而,生产纸袋的耗能为生产塑料袋的四倍,耗水 则多达三倍。

### 「归纳拓展」

常用的倍数表达法:

- (1)倍数+as+adj./adv.的原级+as+其他
- (2)倍数+adj./adv. 的比较级+than+其他
- (3) 倍数 + the + n. (size/height/weight/length/ width/depth...)+of+其他
- (4)倍数+what 从句

### ····名 师 点 拨 ■■■■■■

- (1)上述结构中的"倍数"也可用分数、百分数代
- (2)表示两倍时,一般用 twice/double;三倍及三 倍以上用"基数词+times"。

### 「即学即练」

- (1)单句语法填空
- ①Peter's jacket looked just the same as Jack's, but it cost twice as much as his.
- ②The electronic waste stream (流) is increasing three times faster (fast) than traditional garbage as a whole.
- 30 Our manager presented a report three times the length (long) of mine.
- 4 The number of students now in this school is four times what it was ten years ago.
- (2)写作微练
- (应用文写作之投稿)这部短片讲述了我们学校的 发展。现在,我们新学校的面积是 10 年前的三倍 大。
- 1) The short film tells about the development of our school. Now our new school is three times as large as what it was ten years ago.(倍数+as+ adj./adv.原级+as)
- The short film tells about the development of our school. Now our new school is three times larger than what it was ten years ago.(倍数+ adj./adv.比较级+than)
- 3 The short film tells about the development of

our school. Now our new school is three times the size of what it was ten years ago.(倍数+the+n. +of)

### 多义词汇 专练

- 1. lecture: A. n. 讲座,演讲 B. n. 教训 C. v. 训斥
  - (1) What makes me annoyed is that he is always **lecturing** me about my behaviour.
  - ② Scottish National Portrait (肖像画) Gallery presents a series of lectures for the general public.

- 3 I know I must stop smoking—don't give me a lecture about it. В
- 2. remove: A. υ. 脱去 B. υ. 清除 C. v. 免职
  - ①He **removed** his jacket when he arrived home.

Α

- 2) He was severely criticised and **removed** from his
- 3 The agreement **removes** the last serious obstacle to the signing of the treaty. В
- 3. break down: A.打破 B.分解 C.(谈判)失败 (身体)垮掉
  - ① In other words, your health will break down if you work too hard. D
  - 2 The two countries are going to meet to break down some barriers to trade between them.
  - 3 The peace talks broke down with no agreement reached. C
  - (4) As is known to all, plastic bags are difficult to break down. В
- 4. I looked down at my book as soon as his eyes released me, trying to find my place. Α

A. v. 放开 B. v. 释放,排放

C. v. 公布;发行

### Unit 6 课后素养评价(二十四)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

### 1.单词拼写

- 1. How to use <u>electricity</u> (电) safely has become general knowledge in our village.
- 2. The Smile Project has grown into a widespread campaign (活动) with one simple task: share joy.
- 3. His words gave us the <u>false</u> (不正确的) impression that he would lend us money, but he would not.
- 4. Children nowadays spend more time than ever in front of electronic devices (设备).
- 5. To reduce the <u>amount</u> (数量) of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials.
- 6. The <u>average</u> (平均的) age of the women interviewed was only 21.5.

#### Ⅱ. 单句语法填空

- Concerned (concern) about his student, the teacher called the student's parents to find out why he was so often absent from class.
- 2. Teenagers shouldn't be removed <u>from</u> school although they don't do well in studies.
- The people in the earthquake-stricken area are in urgent (urge) need of food and medicine.
- **4.** Everyone on the team contributed to winning (win) the game.
- **5.** On average, how much time do you spend on sports activities each week?

### Ⅲ. 短语填空

take... into account; break down; supply... with; the majority of; call on; turn off; depend on; mistake... for

- 1. The doctor admitted that he <u>mistook</u> the symptom (症状) for the common cold at first.
- 2. The project is aimed at <u>calling on</u> people to take effective (有效的) measures to protect polar bears.
- 3. The majority of students prefer to go cycling to taking a bus.

- 4. Would you mind if I turn off the radio?
- **5.** The company <u>supplied</u> our school <u>with</u> a lot of advanced teaching equipment.
- **6.** Children <u>depend on</u> their parents for all of their material needs.
- 7. If Tim carries on working like this, he'll break down sooner or later.
- **8.** A good speaker usually <u>takes</u> the audience <u>into</u> account when making a speech.

### Ⅳ. 完成句子

1. My deskmate devoted three times as much time and energy as she did before.

我同桌付出的是以前三倍的时间和精力。

2. It is because of the delicious local food that she fell in love with the city.

正是因为当地美味的食物,她才爱上了这座城市。

3. We should take steps to protect the air from being polluted.

我们应该采取措施保护空气不受污染。

4. It is urgent that the government (should) take immediate measures.

政府必须立即采取措施。

5. <u>To avoid</u> embarrassment, you'd better learn about Chinese table manners, which are different from yours.

为了避免尴尬,你最好了解中国的餐桌礼仪,这 和你们的不同。

### Ⅴ. 语法填空

In May, 2023, the National Museum of China (NMC) launched 1. its (it) first original stage play, Joyful Songs In a Flourishing Age, as part of a project seeking to make cultural heritage active again.

Inspired by *The Pottery Storyteller Beating a Drum*, a piece in the NMC's collection from the Eastern Han Dynasty, 2. the play presented a fantasy "dialogue" between the ancient ceramic (陶 瓷的) figures and the audience while 3. integrating (integrate) art forms such as drama, musical and opera.

Dialogues across time and space are happening in new ways at the NMC. The bronze (青铜) exhibits from the Xia, Shang and Zhou dynasties 4. displayed (display) inside the NMC's Ancient China exhibition hall often lead visitors 5. to be impressed (impress) by ancient Chinese civilization. Collectible (值得收藏的) cards featuring 6. images (image) of the museum's collections have also proven quite popular with visitors.

Since 2018, the NMC 7. has developed (develop) virtual exhibition halls and published short videos on its social media platforms. Therefore, visitors can enjoy exhibitions online, getting a taste of Chinese culture 8. without even leaving their homes. Not only can cultural and creative products bridge gaps, 9. but they can also help visitors better relate to 10. hidden (hide) cultural meanings.

### Ⅵ. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

学校的环保俱乐部(Saving the Environment Club) 于上周六开展了一次义务劳动,地点是城市公园。内容 包括:张贴海报、打扫街道、分发宣传广告、打扫公园等。

假如你是张亚,参加了这次义务劳动,请你给你 的朋友 Bruce 写一封电子邮件,向他介绍这次劳动的 情况,并谈谈你的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Bruce.

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club
of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park
with some other volunteers.

Yours,

Zhang Ya

### 【参考范文】

Dear Bruce,

I'm a volunteer in Saving the Environment Club of my school. Last Saturday, I went to the City Park with some other volunteers.

Some of us put up signs about protecting the environment. It's meaningful to make people know the importance of protecting the environment. Some handed out advertisements. Others cleaned the streets. We also helped clean up the City Park. When we finished all the work, we were very tired. But we felt very happy at the same time.

It's our duty to do something for the environment around us. I think it's fantastic to be a volunteer. What do you think of volunteering? Please write back!

Yours,

Zhang Ya

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写 两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Sometimes things may seem beyond our efforts, but keep on and you will find beautiful views in front of you.

I was on my second outdoor experience trip that every student had to go on. That year, we had a choice of what difficulty level we wanted: one through five. My friends and I had agreed that one would make us seem lazy and that challenging ourselves would make for a good story. In choosing level two, we believed that it would still be a fun experience.

We were quickly proven wrong.

The further we drove into the White Mountains, the higher the walls on either side of the winding highway grew. I was still in awe of the mountains I had seen so many times before, but I couldn't help feeling my heart shaking with anxiety. Soon I would have to leave the school bus that brought 50 students out into the wilderness like every year before.

My group consisted of my friends, Riley and Ann, and six extremely athletic boys. We arrived at the base camp lodge (木屋) first. After putting things aside and rearranging our bags, we made our way out into the wilderness.

The three of us girls were questioning if this

was really a level two. The path was unbelievably steep (陡峭) and rocky towards the top of the mountain where the first hut was located. We were practically jogging in an attempt to keep up with the boys ahead of us. Before the trip, we were told to take breaks as often as we needed to drink water, but that wasn't helping our pounding hearts and heavy breathing as much as it should have.

Then, 30 minutes into the most difficult hike the three of us had ever done, Riley slipped and landed on her knee. After a few moments, we turned back down the mountain as it was decided that Riley could not make the trip with us. We sat on the grass outside the lodge where we had started while Riley was brought inside to join the level one group. Ann and I exchanged breathless glances, our cheeks red and wet with sweat.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

	"Do	you 1	think v	we should	l ask if	we could	join
the	level	one g	roup to	00?" I asl	ked Ann.		
	The	next	days,	although	extrem	ely tired	, we
kep	t on.						

### 【参考范文】

"Do you think we should ask if we could join the level one group too?" I asked Ann. "I know you won't," she breathed out. "I won't!" I said to myself, looking at the awesome mountains in the distance. Then we started up the steep and rocky path again, attempting to keep up with the boys. Our bags felt heavier; legs burned; backs hurt; tears threatened to spill over our sweat-covered eyes. I wanted nothing more than to turn back and leave right then and there. But, I couldn't; I didn't want to be someone who gave up easily.

The next days, although extremely tired, we kept on. Ann and I still found ourselves lagging behind the boys. Instead of embarrassment, I felt as though I was gaining more out of the trip than anyone else. As the boys ran, Ann and I hung back and took breaks, drinking water and admiring the deep green valleys from high above. Level two was fun, too. And eventually we made it to the destination. Facing the beautiful views in front of us, I exchanged a glance with Ann, both of us beaming.

## 迁・移・应・用

### 窗Part 1 应用文写作

### -倡议信

### ○写作指导

倡议信属于应用文的一种,提倡或呼吁开展某项 有意义的活动,或推行某种行之有效的做法。其格式 及写作步骤如下:

### (一)格式

通常由称呼、正文、结尾、落款四部分组成。

- 1. 称呼。写称呼是为了明确倡议的对象,一般要根据 倡议的对象选用适当的称呼,如:"Dear friends" "Dear schoolmates" "Dear editors" "Dear students"等。
- 2.正文。倡议信意在唤起他人的响应,这就要求倡议 者必须清楚说明倡议背景、原因,申明倡议目的,写 明倡议内容,让人信服,这样人们才能响应并自觉 行动。
- 3. 结尾。结尾可表明倡议者的决心和希望或者提出 某种建议,但是一般不在结尾用表示敬意或祝愿 的话。
- 4. 落款。在倡议信右下方署上倡议发出者的姓名。

#### (二)写作步骤

第一步:写明发出倡议的背景、原因和目的。倡 议信的发出贵在引起响应,只有交代清楚原因、背景、 事实,并申明目的,被呼吁方才会理解和信服,并展开 行动。

第二步:写明倡议的具体内容和要求,这是正文 的重点部分。内容要具体化,最好分条列举,做到清 晰明确,一目了然,这样才能体现它的意义和行动价 值。

第三步:结尾要表示倡议者的决心、希望或者给 出某种建议。

### ○典题示例

为了唤起青少年的环保意识,你校就"如何保护 环境"发起了建议征集活动。你以学校学生会主席的 名义,发出了全员环保的倡议,如下图所示:



请根据倡议内容及以下写作要点写一封倡议信。 要点如下:

- 1. 保护环境是我们中学生的职责;
- 2. 保护环境的一些具体措施;
- 3. 让我们都为地球母亲尽一份力。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

- 2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
- 3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear friends,

Let's take action to protect our mother—the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以 第一人称 为主
要点	1. 保护环境的原因及目的 2. 保护环境的具体措施 3. 给出建议

#### Step 2:要点补全

①We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth (加强你们保护地球的意识).

- ②First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution (一种减少污染的好方法).
- ③ Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away (保护土壤不被冲走).
- ④ We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter (通过捡垃圾来保持我们的学校干净).
- ⑤Finally, remember to turn off (记得关掉) the water taps when you finish washing and turn off the lights when you leave the classroom (当你们离开教室时).
- ⑥ In a word (总之), we can make the earth more beautiful (使地球更加美丽) tomorrow only when we form the good habit of environmental protection.

### Step 3:句式升级

Sten 4. 连句成篇

①用状语从句的省略升级 Step 2 中的句⑤

Finally, remember to turn off the water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom.

②用 only 置于句首引导的状语从句升级 Step 2 中的句⑥

In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful tomorrow.

F	

### 【参考范文】

Dear friends,

We're writing this letter to raise your awareness of protecting the earth. So we propose doing the following things.

First, walking to school is a good way to reduce pollution. Second, we should plant trees every spring to protect the soil from being washed away. Third, it's also important to recycle everything useful. We should keep our school clean by picking up any litter. Finally, remember to turn off the

water taps when finishing washing and turn off the lights when leaving the classroom. In a word, only when we form the good habit of environmental protection can we make the earth more beautiful tomorrow.

Let's take action to protect our mother—the earth now.

Thank you!

The Students' Union

### ○学以致用

为响应"保护环境,低碳生活"的号召,你校正在 开展"Power Saving—A Must for Everyone"的主题 活动,请你以学生会的名义用英语给全校学生写一封 倡议信,内容包括:

- 1. 节约用电的原因及意义;
- 2. 节约用电的具体做法;
- 3. 发起倡议。

注意:词数 80 左右。

#### 【参考范文】

Dear schoolmates,

As is known to us, without electricity the society cannot run smoothly. But around us, electricity is often regrettably wasted. In contrast, many places have been suffering severe power shortages since this summer. So it's necessary for us to save electricity.

First and foremost, we should make it a habit to save electricity and practise it in our daily life. For example, when leaving the room, we should turn off the lights. Moreover, we should remind more people around us, such as our parents, close relatives and friends, of the importance of saving electricity.

Let's take an active part in the power saving action, start from ourselves, and act from now on.

The Students' Union

### **⊗Part 2** 读后续写

阅读下面的文章,完成任务。

It was one of the hottest days of the dry season. We had not seen rain in almost a month. The crops were dying. Cows had stopped giving milk. The creeks and streams were long gone back into the earth. It was a dry season that would bankrupt several farmers before it was through. Every day, my husband and his brothers would go about the tiring process of trying to get water to the farm. If we didn't see some rain soon, we would lose everything.

It was on this day that I learned the true lesson of sharing and witnessed the only miracle I had seen with my own eyes. I was in the kitchen making lunch for my husband and his brothers when I saw my six-year-old son, Billy, walking towards the woods. He wasn't walking with the usual carefree abandon of a youth but with a serious purpose. I could only see his back. He was obviously walking with a great effort trying to be as still as possible. Minutes after he disappeared into the woods, he came running out again towards the house. I went back to make sandwiches, thinking that whatever task he had been doing was completed.

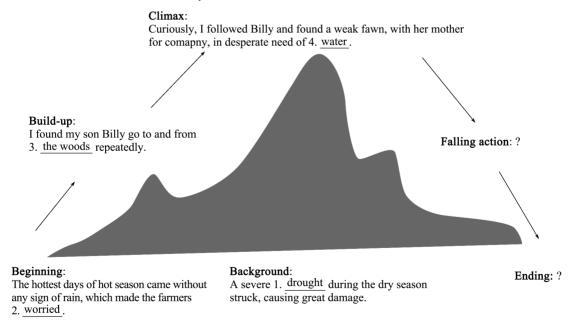
Moments later, however, he was once again walking in that slow purposeful stride towards the woods. This activity went on for over an hour: walking carefully to the woods, and then running back to the house. Finally, my curiosity got the best of me. I crept out of the house and followed him on his journey.

He was cupping both hands in front of him as he walked, very careful not to spill the water he held. Maybe two or three tablespoons were held in his tiny hands. I sneaked closer as he went into the woods. Branches and thorns slapped his little face but he did not try to avoid them. He had a much greater purpose. As I leaned in to spy on him, I saw an amazing sight. A mother deer with a huge pair of deer horns appeared in front of him, with a baby fawn (幼鹿) lying on the dry ground. I almost screamed to get him away. 任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about a heartwarming act of kindness and resilience by a young boy.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思和完善故事发展情节。

	1. How did Billy feed the fawn?
Paragraph 1:	He knelt by the fawn's side and carefully placed
However, Billy walked right up to them	his cupped hands close to its mouth.
	2. How did the baby fawn respond to Billy's
	actions?
	The baby fawn lifted its head up and lapped up
	the water cupped in Billy's hands.
	3. How did the mother deer behave during this
	interaction?
	The mother deer stood by, watching over he
	fawn and Billy.
Paragraph 2:  I witnessed the most beautiful heart working	
hard to save a life.	1. What did I do after witnessing the whole thing:
·	I strode to Billy and held him tight.
	2. How did Billy react to my sudden appearance?
	Billy felt very surprised and tried to explain.
	3. What miracle happened?
	It rained that day.
务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节经	续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。
意:续写词数应为 150 左右。	

# 【参考范文】

However, Billy walked right up to them. Cautiously, he knelt down by the weak baby fawn, seemingly familiar with the two creatures. The fawn, suffering from dehydration and heat exhaustion lifted its head up with great efforts and eagerly lapped up the water cupped in my beautiful boy's hands. The mother deer stood by as if in guard. Not until the fawn licked the last drip of water did Billy move a little bit. I contained myself not to make a slightest sound, for fear of scaring them.

I witnessed the most beautiful heart working hard to save a life. With the water gone, Billy jumped to his feet and met my smiling eyes. Before he tried to explain, I strode to him and held him tight. As the tears that rolled down my face began to hit the ground, they were suddenly joined by other drops and more drops and more. I looked up at the sky. The rain that came that day was a miracle, saving our farm, just like my boy saved a life.

# 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。

Words to describe the serious situation of the earth about environmental problems	Write a persuasive letter about environmental protection
	Earth first
Figure out the reasons for environmental problems and	l write down the measures to address them

# 答案:略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

The phrase "protect animals" appear everywhere in books and on screens because some animals are in danger of dying out. But sometimes the reality can be a little different from what people read or watch.

About 300 black bears were killed in Florida, the US, in October. It's been the first bear hunt since 1994.

Animal protection groups protested this decision. But local officials explained that the black bear population had grown to 3,500 and become a menace to local people. In the past two years, bears have hurt at least four people in Florida.

This brings an old question back into the spotlight—which is more important, protecting animals or protecting people's interests?

This question is asked in other countries too. In Switzerland, a wolf was sentenced to death by the Swiss

government months ago. This is because the wolf killed 38 sheep and local people lost a lot of money. Days ago in China, three old men were arrested for killing a serow (鬣羚), a protected species. But they insisted they didn't know about this and killed the animal because it ruined their crops.

However, these stories don't always mean that animal protection stops due to human interests, especially involving economic development. A man named Zhou Weisen set up a wild animal base in Guilin, Guangxi. He saved over 170 tigers and 300 bears. But his base also offered jobs to local people.

"There may never be a standard answer to the question of whether we should give more attention to the environment or human development," said Robert May, a British biologist at University of Oxford. "But we shouldn't push either one to the side, as the future is hanging in the balance."

- 1. What does the underlined word "menace" in the third paragraph mean?
  - A. Danger.
- B. Chance.
- C. Relief.
- D. Treasure.
- 2. What does the author intend to tell us by mentioning Zhou Weisen's story?
  - A. Protecting animals needs hard work.
  - B. Zhou was good at feeding wild animals.
  - C. Zhou had a good relationship with local people.
  - D. Protecting animals can also bring economic development.

### 答案:1~2 AD

# 单元测试卷(六)

(考查范围: Unit 6 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

# Volunteer by Supporting a Local Animal Rescue Centre in Africa!

If you have a passion for animals and a strong interest in environmental conservation, programme is an ideal fit for you. Your role will involve assisting and supporting a local animal shelter, which not only provides care for homeless animals but also rehabilitates injured wildlife.

In addition to looking after the animals' needs, volunteers also play an important role in welcoming visitors at the entrance and addressing any questions they may have about the shelter or its inhabitants. As you spend more time volunteering, you will gain valuable knowledge and experience in wildlife management.

### Requirements

- -Applicants must be at least 15 years old and enrolled in high school or above by the programme start date.
  - —Speaking English is a basic requirement.
- There are no nationality restrictions. Volunteers from both Africa and other countries are welcome.
- —You will need to be available to help from 9:00 am to 4:00 pm on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Sunday.

## Programme Fees

Duration	Programme Fees
1 week (minimum stay)	300 dollars
2 weeks	600 dollars
3 weeks	900 dollars
4 weeks	1,200 dollars
5 weeks	1,500 dollars
50 weeks (maximum stay)	15,000 dollars

- \* Booking payments (15%): The booking payment is merely to secure the volunteer placement. Payment is made by mobile phone. You can also pay by credit card.
- \* Final payments (85%): The final payment shall be agreed upon with Volunteer Now Africa during the application process.
- 1. What can a volunteer do in the rescue centre?
  - A. In search of homeless animals.
  - B. Communicate with visitors.
  - C. Receive training to assist with animal placement.
  - D. Deliver lectures about animals.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"In addition to looking after the animals' needs, volunteers also play an important role in welcoming visitors at the entrance and addressing any questions they may have about the shelter or its inhabitants."可 知,除了照顾动物外,志愿者们还要在入口处欢迎 来访者,并回答来访者关于救助中心或那里的动物 的任何问题,也就是要和访客沟通。故选 B。
- 2. Who can be a volunteer in the programme?
  - A. An adult who can only speak German.
  - B. A college student from Canada.
  - C. A student in primary school.
  - D. A local individual free on Saturdays.
  - 推理判断题。根据 Requirements 部分中的 "Applicants must be at least 15 years old and enrolled in high school or above by the programme start date." "Speaking English is a basic requirement." "There are no nationality restrictions."可知,志愿者无国籍限制,要求年龄 在15岁及以上、高中及以上学历且会说英语,由此 推知,"来自加拿大的一个大学生"符合要求。故选 В
- 3. If you want to apply as a volunteer for a duration of 3 weeks, how much should you pay to make a reservation?

A. 45 dollars.

B. 90 dollars.

C. 135 dollars.

D. 180 dollars.

C 细节理解题。根据 Programme Fees 部分中的 表格内容可知,该志愿者项目三周的费用是 900 美元。再结合表格下文的"Booking payments (15%)"可知,志愿者需要交纳 15%的订金。由此可知,申请成为为期三周的志愿者,需要缴纳 900  $\times15\%=135$  美元的预约费。故选 C。

B

Nabilah Abdullah has been enthusiastically sculpting with clay for nearly 20 years, from one of a dozen workshops in the Sarawak Pottery Centre, just to the north of Kuching, Malaysia. Nabilah spends each morning making new works and each afternoon selling them from her shop, Ally Clay Crafts, in Kuching's Steamship Building.

Works in progress fill every shelf of Nabilah's workshop. There are containers and pots waiting to be fired, and bowls about to be polished. There are a row of elegant leaf-shaped brooches (胸针), deep green and highly polished. "They're made by pressing real leaves into the clay and making a unique imprint," says Nabilah. "I take inspiration from nature—the rainforest is my supermarket."

But Nabilah's consuming passion is a black pot. Evidence of pots like this has been uncovered in the Niah Caves, an archaeological hot spot in the north of the country where a skull was found that dates back around 60,000 years. Nabilah was inspired to create her own pot, following a visit to the Borneo Cultures Museum. The black pot was used to cook rice—the rounded bottom allowed the fire to heat it evenly. Nabilah travelled three hours into the rainforest to learn how to make these pots from an old man in his house. He showed Nabilah how it was done, pushing a smooth round stone down into a column of clay, then beating its outside with a wooden paddle until it took on the round shape of the stone. He was doing this just as his ancestors did thousands of years ago, following the same process and using the same tools. The only difference is that the pot will be finished in a kiln (窑) rather than an open fire, because the smoke pollution from the open fire is far too great.

"Tradition is so important; it marks where we are from," Nabilah adds. "Our ancestors were very clever and we mustn't lose that wisdom. If I don't do this and show others how to do it, the art will be lost forever. It's my mission to preserve these skills for future generations."

- **4.** Why does the author mention Nabilah's daily routine in Paragraph 1?
  - A. To advertise her works.
  - B. To present her passion for work.
  - C. To introduce her work environment.
  - D. To highlight the features of her works.
  - B 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段中提到 Nabilah 的日常习惯是为了展示她对工作的热情。故选 B。
- 5. What do we know about the brooches made by Nabilah?
  - A. They wait to be polished.
  - B. They feature shelf patterns.
  - C. They sell well in supermarkets.
  - D. They are based on physical objects.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"'They're made by pressing real leaves into the clay and making a unique imprint,' says Nabilah. 'I take inspiration from nature—the rainforest is my supermarket.'"可知, Nabilah 制作的胸针是以实物为基础的。故选 D。
- **6.** What does Paragraph 3 mainly tell us about Nabilah?
  - A. Her show of black pots in a museum.
  - B. Her discovery of ancient pots in caves.
  - C. Her journey to learn traditional pot making.
  - D. Her solution to using a kiln for making pots.
  - C 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,第三段主要讲述了Nabilah学习传统制陶技艺的旅程,她前往雨林向一位老人学习如何制作这些陶器。故选C。
- 7. Which word can best describe Nabilah?
  - A. Responsible.
- B. Reserved.
- C. Humble.
- D. Humorous.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知, Nabilah 认为传统很重要,她不能让祖先们的智慧 丢失,她有责任将这些技能保留下来传给后代。因 此,最能描述 Nabilah 的词是"有责任心的 (Responsible)"。故选 A。 C

If you were to throw, say, a banana peel out of your car while driving along the motorway, that would be a completely harmless action, due to the fact that it's part of a fruit—right? Actually, no. A banana peel can take up to two years to be naturally processed, and with a third of motorists admitting to littering while driving, that's a whole lot of discarded banana peels. An orange peel and a cigarette butt have a similar biodegrading (生物降 解) term to that of a banana peel, but tin cans last up to 100 years; and plastic bottles last forever, so do glass bottles.

Despite the fact that longer-lasting materials will serve to damage the environment and its animals for longer, we can't merely measure the severity of a certain type of rubbish by its lifetime. For example, despite having a fairly short length of biodegrading time, more than 120 tons of cigaretterelated litter is discarded in the UK every day.

It's not a cheap habit either: to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers 500 million pounds, and when you include our green spaces, that goes up to 1 billion pounds. So, it's not surprising that if caught fly-tipping you could face a 20,000-pound fine or even jail time and, if you dispose of something dangerous, the court could give you five years to serve. Regardless of how severe these punishments might seem, however, among the reported cases only 2,000 were found guilty out of 825,000, so we still have some way to go in making sure people obey the rules.

- 8. What does the underlined word "discarded" in Paragraph 1 mean?
  - A. Harmless.
- B. Processed.
- C. Thrown.
- D. Long-lasting.
- C 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的"admitting to littering"可知,此处表示被丢弃的香蕉皮。故 选 C。
- **9.** Which of the following has the longest biodegrading term?
  - A. Glass bottles.
- B. Tin cans.
- C. Cigarette butts.
- D. Banana peels.

- A 推理判断题。根据第一段最后一句可知, plastic bottles 和 glass bottles 的生物降解时间 最长。故选 A。
- 10. What can be inferred from the passage?
  - A. The severity of rubbish can be measured only by its lifetime.
  - B. Quite a few people were found guilty of illegally littering.
  - C. Every year UK taxpayers spend 500 million pounds keeping streets free of dirt.
  - D. Cigarette-related litter and peels can be ignored for their fairly short lifetime.
  - C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的"to keep our streets clean annually costs UK taxpayers 500 million pounds"可知,每年英国纳税人需花费 5 亿英镑来保持街道干净。故选C。
- 11. What is the purpose of the passage?
  - A. To inform readers of different biodegrading terms.
  - B. To call for people not to litter illegally.
  - C. To encourage people to use fewer plastic
  - D. To stress the importance of good behaviour.
  - B 写作意图题。根据全文所述可知,在我们所 扔的垃圾中,不同的垃圾被分解时需要的时间不 同,我们也不能仅凭垃圾被分解时需要的时间判 断其严重性。故该篇文章旨在号召大家合法扔垃 圾。故选 B。

D

Space tourism is not all about rockets—giant space balloons can do it too! The Spain-based company HALO Space completed the first test flight of its balloon in December 2023. This marked another company's joining the competition of making space tourism a reality.

During the test flight, the balloon reached an altitude of 37 kilometres where passengers would be able to view Earth from the blackness of space, according to Daily Mail. When the flights are available, the company aims to carry 3,000 passengers on 400 trips every year.

The balloon is usually filled with helium (氦气) or hydrogen, which are both much lighter than air, and it flies because of the buoyancy force (浮力). The balloon is filled with the amount of gas that will give it enough lift to get off the ground and rise. As it rises, the gas inside the balloon expands because atmospheric pressure drops. The atmosphere is 100 to 200 times less dense (稠密的) at float altitudes than on the ground. The balloon stops when the density of the gas inside and the air outside is about the same—neutral buoyancy (中性浮力) is achieved. It then begins to descend (下降) as gas is let out.

Therefore, the whole trip is not stressful. Another company that gives out space tours by balloons, the US-based Space Perspective, claims that the trips are about relaxation. The craft (飞行器) rises slowly at 12 miles (about 19.3 kilometres) per hour, and it takes about two hours to get to the 30 km altitude.

Since its successful test flight in June 2022, Space Perspective started selling tickets for spaceflights in 2024—and it has already sold out. The company now buys ships to turn them into "floating spaceports", reported *Daily Mail*. By lifting the craft from ships on the sea, there will be more launch opportunities, such as flights at sunrise and sunset.

- **12.** What is the purpose of the test flight of the balloons?
  - A. To teach people life skills in space.
  - B. To make space travel come true.
  - C. To test the speed of the balloons.
  - D. To sell more tickets for space research.
  - B 细节理解题。根据第一段第二、三句可知,气 球试飞的目的是使太空旅行成为现实。故选 B。
- 13. What's the height of HALO Space's first test flight?
  - A. 12 miles.
  - B. 19.3 kilometres.
  - C. 30 kilometres.
  - D. 37 kilometres.
  - D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的"During the test flight, the balloon reached an altitude of 37 kilometres where passengers would be able to view Earth from the blackness of space,

according to Daily Mail."可知,在测试飞行中, 气球达到了37公里的高度。故选 D。

- 14. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?
  - A. The similarity of helium or hydrogen.
  - B. The reason for air pressure.
  - C. The space balloon's working principle.
  - D. The features of the buoyancy force.
  - C 段落大意题。根据第三段中的"The balloon is usually filled with helium (氦气) or hydrogen... will give it enough lift to get off the ground and rise." 以及"The balloon stops when the density of the gas inside and the air outside is about the same—neutral buoyancy (中性浮力) is achieved. It then begins to descend (下降) as gas is let out."可知,此处讲述的是气球是如何上升以及下降的。由此可知,本段主要讲述的是气球依靠浮力飞行的原理。故选 C。
- **15.** Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?
  - A. Giant Space Balloons: A New Way for Space Tourism
  - B. Different Kinds of Spacecraft for Tourism
  - C. The Future of Rockets in Space Tourism
  - D. The Challenges of Space Tourism
  - A 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容可知,本文 报道了西班牙的一家公司完成了其气球的首次试 飞,标志着又一家公司加入了使太空旅行成为现 实的竞争。结合下文中介绍的气球飞行原理及其 优势等可知,"巨型太空气球:太空旅游的新途径" 能概括本文的内容,适合作为标题。故选 A。
- Ⅱ. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分12.5 分)

High on the Qinghai-Xizang Plateau lies China's "water tower" Sanjiangyuan. <u>16</u> The three rivers, the Yellow River, the Yangtze River and the Lancang River, provide water for about half the population of China. However, human activities such as overgrazing (过度放牧) are putting this ecosystem at risk.

Sanjiangyuan National Park is a model of ecoprotection. 19 For example, Herdsmen have given their grasslands to nature and resettled in urban areas. As for wildlife, they are monitored by field conservation stations to keep the environment in good condition.

The idea of a national park system is still new in China, but it must be realised. With great efforts, people may one day be able to enjoy themselves in the vast lands of Sanjiangyuan and run freely across the plains alongside nature's animals. 20

- A. Hopefully, though, we have realised the damage.
- B. It's home to the headwater of China's three big
- C. Unfortunately, the situation has got worse and worse.
- D. It attracts visitors with its fantastic natural beauty and various wildlife.
- E. The park has increased the area's green coverage and attracted more wildlife.
- F. Hopefully, the success of Sanjiangyuan will mark the start of a greener future.
- G. The local government has different ways of slowing environmental degradation.

### 答案:16~20 BAEGF

### Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分15 分)

I didn't use to understand why everyone liked pandas so much. I thought they only got so much attention because they were 21 . But my trip with the Chinese Felid Conservation Alliance (中国 猫科动物保护联盟) 22 changed my opinion.

Our destination was the Baishuihe National Nature Reserve in Sichuan Province. The reserve used to have a panda 23, but since the earthquake in 2008, no pandas had been 24 . The goal of our 25 was to go deep into the reserve and set up a wildlife camera there.

On our first day, we set out in the morning and climbed until 4 in the afternoon. Upon setting up our camp, I unrolled my sleeping bag and was so 26 as to fall asleep immediately. The rest of the team was still busy making a 27 , but I was already dead to the world, only 28 that the fire's heat made it nice and warm. Carrying our sleeping bags,

we hiked along a(n) 29 path in the deep mountains for two more 30 .

During that trip, I learned a lot about pandas. It 31 that pandas aren't the way they appear in zoos. Instead, they have a(n) 32 ability to survive and can live comfortably in those 33 conditions, where I thought I was going to fall over and die.

The 34 has been doing its job this whole time. Although we didn't get any panda pictures the first year, we did 35 in the second year. That was the first time since the earthquake that pandas had been seen in the reserve.

- **21**. A. cute
- B. wild
- C. dangerous
- D. extinct

A 根据常识可知,大熊猫是可爱的,所以作者猜 想大家喜欢大熊猫是因为它们可爱。故选A。

- **22.** A. creativity
- B. totally
- C. formally
- D. equally

B 根据上文的"But"及下文的"changed my opinion"可知,这里表示改变想法的程度,totally 意为"完全地",符合句意。故选 B。

- 23. A. competition
- B. population
- C. organisation
- D. destination
- B 根据下文的"but"及"no pandas"可知,以前这 里是有大熊猫的。故选 B。
- 24. A. buried
- B. injured
- C. described
- D. sighted
- D 根据句意可知,2008年以后,在这片区域再没 有看到过大熊猫。故选 D。
- 25. A. trip
- B. programme
- C. struggle
- D. life

A 根据上文的"my trip with the Chinese Felid Conservation Alliance"中的原词再现可知,应选 trip。故选A。

- 26. A. absorbed
- B. annoyed
- C. bored
- D. tired

D 根据上文的"On our first day, we set out in the morning and climbed until 4 in the afternoon."可知,作者爬了一天的山,很累。故选  $D_{\circ}$ 

- **27**. A. fire
- B. hole
- C. difference
- D. proposal
- A 根据下文的"fire's heat"可知,他们在生火。

故选A。

28. A. protesting

B. assuming

C. noticing

D. proving

C 根据下文的"the fire's heat made it nice and warm"可知,只有 noticing"意识到"符合句意。故选 C。

29. A. flat

B. straight

C. challenging

D. amazing

C 根据下文的"in the deep mountains"可知,这条小路并不好走,充满挑战。故选 C。

**30.** A. hours

B. days

C. weeks

D. months

B 根据上文的"On our first day..."可知,作者一行人又走了两天。故选 B。

31. A. matters

B. happens

C. comes about

D. turns out

D 根据下文的"that pandas aren't the way they appear in zoos"可知,作者通过这次旅程发现了大熊猫真实的生活方式。故选 D。

32. A. amazing

B. similar

C. limited

D. false

A 根据下文的"survive and can live comfortably"及"where I thought I was going to fall over and die"可知,野外的生存环境很不好,但是大熊猫依然舒适地生活着,说明它们有惊人的生存能力。故选 A。

**33.** A. economic

B. terrible

C. common

D. suitable

B 根据下文的"where I thought I was going to fall over and die"可知,大熊猫的野外生活环境很不好。故选 B。

**34.** A. panda

B. camp

C. camera

D. zoo

C 根据上文的"set up a wildlife camera"可知,摄像机安装好后一直在进行摄像工作,下文的"Although we didn't get any panda pictures"也是提示。故选 C。

**35**. A. relax

B. retire

C. survive

D. succeed

D 根据上文的"Although we didn't get any panda pictures the first year..."可知,尽管摄像机第一年没拍到大熊猫,但第二年成功拍到了照片。故选 D。

## Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分15 分)

36. Located (locate) about 200 kilometres south of Beijing, the Nandagang Migratory Bird Habitat in Cangzhou, Hebei Province, is now welcoming the autumn and winter migration (迁徙) season. This area is 37. an important stop for many migratory birds travelling along the East Asia-Australasia Flyway.

In recent years, the Nandagang Wetland and Bird Nature Reserve 38. has built (build) a system for scientific research and monitoring. This has helped people learn more about different bird species, their numbers, and where they live, while also making protection and rescue efforts 39. more effective (effect). In July, Nandagang was recognised 40. as a World Natural Heritage Site, becoming the first natural heritage site in Hebei Province.

41. However, in the past, the habitat had problems because of pond aquaculture (池塘养殖) in some areas. This caused blocked waterways, poor water quality, and a smaller wetland area, 42. which hurt the birds' living space. Since 2020, projects to restore the environment have been started, 43. including (include) removing aquaculture and restoring wetlands. As a result, the number and 44. variety (vary) of bird species in Nandagang have been increasing each year, reaching a total of 269 species. This includes 16 species of national first-class 45. protected (protect) birds, such as the Redcrowned Crane and the Mandarin Duck.

Ⅴ. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

为了增强绿色消费意识,你校将举办英文演讲比赛,请你以"How to Live Green"为题写一篇演讲稿参赛。内容包括:

- 1. 你对绿色生活的理解;
- 2. 你的建议。

注意:词数 80 左右。

### 【参考范文】

### How to Live Green

Good morning, everyone. It is my honour to talk about how to live green here. Green life is a lifestyle of minimising energy consumption, thereby reducing carbon dioxide emissions. For ordinary people, we can do a lot of small things to live a green life.

First of all, we can give something a second life. For instance, the water which has been used to wash rice can be used to clean furniture, water the flowers and so on. In addition, we must pay attention to energy saving. For instance, we can go to school by cycling, using public transport or an electric car, rather than driving gas-guzzling vehicles. Last but not least, we are supposed to broadcast the awareness of green life and call on people around us to live a green life.

That's all. Thanks for your listening.

第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两 段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was the middle of the day with a bright sun, a blue sky, green grass, and a soft breeze (微风). It was a great day to play outside and the best day of my life because I got a new ball and a new bike as my sixth birthday presents, and I was visiting my cousin, Kristy, at her house.

"Here I go!" shouted David while kicking my new ball. David lived next door and was older than me. I thought he was a wild child, but he was actually very kind. The ball went flying as if it were going to space. "That was high!" Kristy said in surprise and we went after the ball. We all had a great time.

Later we had supper and the food my aunt made was good. While Kristy was helping do the dishes, David and I ran outside to play. We started taking turns riding my bike. David suggested that we ride it to the forest. And I agreed. David and I got on the bike and David started going fast.

As we rode through the forest, I felt the wind brushing my face. It felt so great and free. Suddenly the bike hit a fallen branch and we went flying off the bike. Lying on the ground, I felt dizzy (眩晕). I checked myself for injuries and saw some but they didn't bother me.

"David!" I shouted out loudly and anxiously.

"Hev," said a voice. I turned my head and it was David, who was standing behind me, holding my broken bike. At the sight of my disabled bike, I was so sad that I couldn't hold back my tears. It took David some time to calm me down.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

When we realised it was time to walk home, we
found ourselves lost.
It was completely dark when we saw fireworks
being set off in the distance.

### 【参考范文】

When we realised it was time to walk home, we found ourselves lost. It was getting darker and darker. I felt so scared that tears rolled down my face again. David attempted to comfort me. He told me that he once made some marks on the trees in the forest, which might help us find the way home. Therefore, we made efforts to look for the marks but in vain. Having walked anxiously for about an hour in the forest, we failed to find our way out.

It was completely dark when we saw fireworks being set off in the distance. We ran excitedly in that direction as fast as possible. Soon we found my aunt's house, in front of which my cousin Kristy was holding some fireworks and lighting them. Seeing us back safe, Kristy cheerfully hugged us. She told us that when noticing we had been away for long, she was concerned about our safety. She set off fireworks to draw our attention and guide us. It was an unforgettable experience. Without David's comfort and Kristy's fireworks, I would have lost in the forest forever.

# 模块测试卷

(考查范围: Unit 1—Unit 6 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

### A

Rock climbing, one of the fastest growing sports, not only builds physical strength and mental focus, but also leads you to some beautiful places. Here are some climbing spots for climbers.

### Acadia National Park, Maine

This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks. The granite (花岗岩) is good for climbing. In some areas, you need to start when the sea is at its lowest level. The area has guides, instructors and climbing schools, making it particularly welcoming for beginners.

### City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho

This national reserve near the Utah border is worth a trip for the scenery alone. Named by gold miners heading to California in 1849, its granite looks like skyscrapers, towering 600 feet above the ground. It's a fascinating area from the geologic and geographic angles. Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance.

### Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado

While you can find climbing gyms across the country, this one just in the south of Denver is worth a special trip. With more than 53,000 square feet, the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga.

- 1. What is special about Acadia National Park?
  - A. It has good climbing routes.
  - B. It's located in a coastal area.
  - C. It provides a free guided trip.
  - D. It's intended for beginners.
  - B 细节理解题。根据 Acadia National Park, Maine 部分中的"This popular New England park is one of the few places where you can climb seaside rocks."及"when the sea is at its lowest level"可知,阿卡迪亚国家公园是为数不多的临海

的可攀岩之处,这是其特别之处。故选 B。

- 2. What can you do in City of Rocks National Reserve?
  - A. Meet many gold miners.
  - B. Enjoy the view from a tower.
  - C. Go to enjoy a festival in August.
  - D. Get trained in a climbing gym.
  - C 细节理解题。根据 City of Rocks National Reserve, Idaho 部分中的"Many visitors come for August's Idaho Mountain Festival, a celebration of climbing with top athletes in attendance."可知,游客在爱达荷州的岩石之城国家自然保护区可以参加爱达荷山脉节。故选 C。
- **3.** Which of the following favours a parent with a child?
  - A. Acadia National Park.
  - B. Idaho Mountain.
  - C. City of Rocks National Reserve.
  - D. Earth Treks Englewood.
  - D 细节理解题。根据 Earth Treks Englewood, Colorado 部分中的"the massive facility has a special rock climbing area, a group of guides and even extras like childcare and yoga"可知,带小孩的家长适合去 Earth Treks Englewood。故选 D。

R

Sofia Zalazar was born with a cleft (唇裂), so expressing herself vocally was difficult while she was growing up. The other children laughed at her for the way she spoke, and she struggled to feel like she fit in.

Sofia was fitted with a bulb (咽球) that fit inside her mouth to help her form accurate sounds. While Sofia began to make great progress in speaking clearly, she still felt embarrassed around her classmates.

During school lunches, she didn't want any of them to see her remove her bulb in order that she could eat. She would slip into the bathroom before the meal to remove it, and then remain silent throughout lunch while her classmates chatted and laughed all around her. The process made her feel lonely even when she was surrounded by others.

When she was 15, Sofia learned that Smile Train, the world's largest cleft charity, would sponsor local professionals at nearby Notti Hospital to perform the operation she had waited so long for. She was overjoyed at the prospect of removing her bulb for good and living a confident life.

Now, Sofia no longer requires a bulb! The operation and ensuing treatments Smile Train sponsored also resulted in permanent speech improvements that made an immediate positive impact on the teenager's daily life.

After Sofia shared a few verses of her favourite song in a Smile Train video, something truly remarkable happened. Sebastian Yatra, Colombian singer and songwriter who wrote the hit, saw the video and recorded a special message just for her! Sofia was so excited by Sebastian's message and by the incredible effect her own voice made!

Smile Train has helped more than 1.5 million children like Sofia, and it continues to let smiles heal families all over the world.

- 4. What does the underlined part "expressing herself vocally" mean in Paragraph 1?
  - A. Screaming hard.
  - B. Speaking weakly.
  - C. Talking actively.
  - D. Pronouncing properly.
  - D 词义猜测题。根据画线处的后一句"The other children laughed at her for the way she spoke, and she struggled to feel like she fit in."可知,她 要正确发音是很困难的。故选 D。
- **5.** Which one was a challenge for Sofia with a bulb?
  - A. Chatting freely.
  - B. Looking natural.
  - C. Eating things.
  - D. Opening her mouth.
  - 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"During school lunches, she didn't want any of them to see her remove her bulb in order that she could eat. She would slip into the bathroom before the meal to remove it, and then remain silent throughout lunch while her classmates chatted and laughed all around her."可知,她吃东西的时候需要摘下咽球, 整个午餐时间都保持沉默。故选 C。

- 6. What was the outcome of Sofia sharing her singing in a Smile Train video?
  - A. She became a professional singer.
  - B. She gained widespread recognition on social media.
  - C. She was offered a scholarship to a music academy.
  - D. She received a special message from a famous
  - 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的"Sebastian Yatra, the Colombian singer and songwriter who wrote the hit, saw the video and recorded a special message just for her! Sofia was so excited by Sebastian's message and by the incredible effect her own voice made!"可知, Sofia 分享了她 的歌声后,收到一位著名歌手的一份特别的留言。 故选D。
- 7. What can be inferred about the impact of Smile Train's assistance on children like Sofia?
  - A. It has a lasting and huge effect on their lives.
  - B. It offers a one-time solution to their physical challenges.
  - C. It provides a momentary improvement for their confidence.
  - D. It is limited and does not address their emotional needs.
  - A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,微笑 列车慈善机构对像 Sofia 这样的孩子的生活产生 了持久而巨大的影响。故选A。

It keeps what's inside a mystery until you open it. There are usually toys in mystery boxes; but now, food has been added to the list.

Recently, the trend of "leftover mystery boxes" has become popular in many Chinese cities such as Beijing, Nanjing and Chengdu. Stores pack boxes full of unsold food or food nearing its expiration date at low prices.

"We make the leftover mystery boxes available to buy at the end of the day," Wu Tian, a staff member at a convenience chain store in Beijing, told China Daily. The food, such as milk, bread and sandwiches, is sold at about half the original price and is usually sold out quickly. Many bakeries have also joined the "mystery box club".

"Due to their low cost, leftover mystery boxes

are promising as a new business model and attract consumers," Hong Yong, a Commerce Ministry expert, told *China Daily*. "They also follow zerowaste and environmental protection concepts."

However, some people have raised food security concerns. If consumers buy a food mystery box for their breakfast the next morning, even if the food looks fine at the moment, it may have gone bad overnight. Moreover, food made in the store, such as bread, isn't labeled with the production date in many cases, according to *China Consumer News*. If a consumer unpacks a mystery box and discovers that the food tastes bad or has already passed the last date, then it will be difficult for them to protect their rights, such as getting money back.

Only by considering both food safety and consumer rights can mystery blind boxes achieve a win-win situation for both buyers and sellers, commented *China Youth Daily*.

- **8.** What leads to the rise of the trend of "leftover mystery boxes"?
  - A. It offers customers lower prices for those unsold food.
  - B. Stores make the leftover mystery boxes available at night.
  - C. People feel like such food as milk and bread more attractive.
  - D. It goes against the concept of zero-waste and environmental protection.
  - A 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容和第四段中的"Due to their low cost, leftover mystery boxes are promising as a new business model and attract consumers..."可知,剩食盲盒的兴起是因为它们以低价出售未售出的食物或即将过期的食物,这吸引了消费者。故选 A。
- **9.** What does the underlined word "expiration" in Paragraph 2 mean?
  - A. Buying.
- B. Ending.
- C. Producing.
- D. Selling.
- B 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句中的"nearing its... date"和"at low prices"可推知,临近保质期限的食物才会以低价出售。故 expiration 与 ending 同义,意为"结束"。故选 B。
- **10.** Why are some people worried about customers buying a food mystery box?
  - A. Because customers' rights are hard to protect.

- B. Because the food has gone bad when it's bought.
- C. Because the production dates are not clear enough.
- D. Because customers cannot get a refund in many cases.
- A 细节理解题。根据第五段中的"If a consumer unpacks a mystery box and discovers that the food tastes bad or has already passed the last date, then it will be difficult for them to protect their rights, such as getting money back."可知,一些人对购买剩食盲盒感到担忧是因为消费者的权益很难保护。故选 A。
- 11. What is the author's attitude towards the leftover mystery boxes?
  - A. Supportive.
  - B. Disapproving.
  - C. Objective.
  - D. Doubtful.
  - C 观点态度题。根据第四段中的"Due to their low cost, leftover mystery boxes are promising as a new business model and attract consumers..."和第五段中的"However, some people have raised food security concerns."可知,作者在介绍剩食盲盒时,既提到了它的好处,如减少食物浪费、吸引消费者等,也提到了它的问题,如食品安全问题和消费者权益难以保障等。因此,作者对待剩食盲盒的态度是客观的。故选 C。

D

"The weather station in Furnace Creek, Death Valley, California, reported a temperature of 54.4°C on 16 August," said Clare Nullis, World Meteorological Organisation (WMO) spokesperson. "If verified (证实), it would be the highest temperature on Earth since 1931, and the third-hottest temperature ever recorded on the planet."

Speaking in Geneva, Ms Nullis told reporters that WMO had tasked a group of international experts to check the reading by examining the observation (观测), the equipment used, and how it compared to data collected at nearby stations.

According to WMO's data, the hottest temperature ever recorded was in Furnace Creek, Death Valley, California, reaching 56.7°C on 10 July 1913. The next highest temperature was set in

July 1931 in Kebili, Tunisia, reaching 55℃. Other high temperature records include 54°C in Mitribah, Kuwait on 21 July 2016.

The findings show that the equipment at Furnace Creek meteorological station was in proper working condition at the time of Sunday's observation, Ms Nullis noted. "Although the full verification process will likely take many months," Ms Nullis said, "all the markers so far show that this is a fair and acceptable observation."

The very hot conditions have come along with a heatwave on the US west coast. The US National Weather Service (NWS) has issued (发布) numerous heat warnings explaining that the high temperatures will continue this week. The NWS in Las Vegas, which covers the Death Valley area, said online, "We are faced with a long-lasting heat event. Another run at 54.4°C-plus temperatures in Death Valley remains possible."

The development follows repeated warnings from WMO about high temperatures which are having a bad influence, causing wildfires in places such as forests and grasslands.

- 12. What is the highest temperature recorded on Earth since 1913?
  - A. 55.0℃.
- B. 56.7℃.
- C. 54.4℃.
- D. 54.0℃.
- B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的"According to WMO's data, the hottest temperature ever recorded was in Furnace Creek, Death Valley, California, reaching 56.7℃ on 10 July 1913." 可 知,自1913年以来,地球上的最高温度纪录是 56.7℃。故选 B。
- 13. What does Ms Nullis think of the observation in Furnace Creek?
  - A. It's changeable.
  - B. It's incorrect.
  - C. It's believable.
  - D. It's unfair.
  - C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的"'Although the full verification process will likely take many months,' Ms Nullis said, 'all the markers so far show that this is a fair and acceptable observation.'"可知, Nullis 认为在 Furnace Creek 的观测数据是可信的。故选C。
- 14. What can we infer about the Death Valley area

from the last two paragraphs?

- A. It will probably see hotter weather.
- B. It was badly hit by deadly wildfires.
- C. It will face temperature drops this week.
- D. It was well-known for its good grasslands.
- A 推理判断题。根据第五段中的"The NWS in Las Vegas, which covers the Death Valley area, said online, 'We are faced with a long-lasting Another run at 54.4℃-plus heat event. Valley temperatures in Death remains possible.'"可知,死亡谷地区可能将面临更极端 的高温天气。故选A。
- 15. Which is the most suitable title for the text?
  - A. The New Development Follows a Summer Event
  - B. The Hot Weather Has a Bad Influence on Tunisia
  - C. WMO Carried out a Survey of the Mistaken Report
  - D. Furnace Creek Temperature is Close to a Record High
  - D 标题归纳题。通读全文尤其是第一段的内容 可知,本文主要介绍了美国加州死亡谷 Furnace Creek 的高温可能会接近历史纪录,故 D 项适合 作为本文标题。故选D。
- Ⅱ. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Whether your friends live a long way away or you're just not able to hang out in person right now, it can be difficult to come up with fun things to do together. Here are some ideas for online fun with friends.

### Collaborate (合作) on a project.

16 You might have a good time exercising your creativity together. Some things you can do as a group include: Brainstorming ideas or writing together in a cloud-based application.

### Listen to music.

Music is a great way to bond with friends, whether you all like the same bands or want to share new songs with each other. 17 If you and your friends all have the music listening app, use Group Sessions on your phone's to listen together.

### Read together.

Book clubs are classic. You and your friends can pick a new book for everyone, or make recommendations for each other. Whether you read the books on a call together, or on your own time, it'll give you a new piece of literature to discuss together. 18 You may be able to get access to free eBooks through a library's website or app.

### Do group workouts.

Even if it's okay to go to the gym, sometimes the weather or traffic doesn't allow it. \_\_19\_\_ You can also try yoga or meditation (冥想) sessions together too, as a less-intense choice.

### Learn or practise skills together.

Building a skill with friends might appeal to you. If one of your friends has a hobby that you'd like to pick up, or vice versa, you can try mentoring each other online. 20

- A. There are also online tours of famous landmarks.
- B. The simplest way is to send the songs to each other.
- C. Creating something together can be a fun experience.
- D. Don't panic if you don't have the money for new books.
- E. You can also practise that you're both learning together.
- F. The health benefits of working out in the gym are countless
- G. You and your friends can schedule a time to work out together.

# 答案:16~20 CBDGE

# Ⅲ. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

We had just come back home after a big trip. My 5-year-old boy, Baldwin, couldn't 21 to share our stories with his grandmother. Our final 22 was the Appalachian Trail, one of the longest footpaths in the world. We finished the route without any 23 in 209 days. The 24 was really hard work, but full of fun. The landscape along the way was 25, with green woods and wild animals like kangaroos. My husband and I had little time to 26 our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres, but tried hard to keep our little boy happy and excited. When we were tired, we got to eat Skittles, a colourful sweet treat, to make my son 27 . We slept in a tent, 28 at 5:30 in the morning and walking all day. Talking with other hikers along the way prevented 29 and brought extra joy.

My son was even several months 30 than "Buddy Backpacker", a boy who once held the record for the youngest person for the route. We had

been hiking 31 my son was two years old. We took every opportunity to go outside and 32 the world. It may seem like an impossible activity for a child. However, it turned out that he was strong enough to 33 it. My son's trip earned 34 from Dale, the oldest person to hike the route. He said, "It's going to change his life forever. Baldwin has gone through some hardships, making him stronger. This challenge contributes to his social and 35 development. He will smile through his life."

- 21. A. regret
- B. wait
- C. promise
- D. decide

B can't wait to do sth. 意为"迫不及待地做某事",符合语境,这里指孩子旅行回来很兴奋,特别急切地想要讲给祖母听。故选 B。

- 22. A. agreement
- B. edge
- C. movement
- D. destination
- D 根据上文的"a big trip"可知,他们刚刚旅行回来,下文的 Appalachian Trail 是一个地名,应该是旅行所去的地方,即目的地。故选 D。
- 23. A. vehicle
- B. direction
- C. luggage
- D. supply

A 根据上文的"one of the longest footpaths"可知,他们去的是步行道,下文也多次提到 hiking, 应该没有使用车辆等交通工具,完全徒步完成。故选 A。

- 24. A. jogging
- B. surfing
- C. hiking
- D. hunting
- C 根据上文的"one of the longest footpaths"及下文的"our own physical pain from walking so many kilometres"可知,此次旅行是徒步远足。故选 C。
- 25. A. available
- B. normal
- C. awful
- D. dramatic
- D 下文描述了路途中看到的绿色树林、袋鼠等野生动物,这说明沿途风景引人注目。故选 D。
- **26.** A. pay attention to
- B. put on
- C. add to
- D. live up to

A 作者和丈夫徒步很远的路途之后,身体疼痛,可是为了让孩子开心,没有时间和精力去顾及自己的身体劳累或疼痛,pay attention to 符合语境。故选 A。

- **27**. A. brave
- B. concerned
- C. grateful
- D. energetic
- D 孩子累了,让孩子吃些糖果应该是为了让孩子精力充沛。故选 D。

**28.** A. lying

B. waking

C. talking

D. settling

B 上文提到睡觉,下文的早上五点半应该是醒 来的时间。故选 B。

29. A. laziness

B. sadness

C. boredom

D. injury

C 根据下文的"brought extra joy"可知,跟别人 聊天是避免无聊。故选C。

30. A. shorter

B. younger

C. earlier

D. quicker

B 根据上文的"even"可知,"Buddy Backpacker" 曾经是年龄最小的纪录保持者,作者的儿子比纪 录保持者甚至更小,younger符合语境。故选B。

**31**. A. if

B. since

C. until

D. because

B 根据上下文可知,儿子现在五岁,儿子两岁时 应用一般过去时,主句为完成时。由此可知,儿子 两岁至最近五岁期间,作者一直坚持有时间就带 孩子进行徒步旅行。两岁是开始的时间,所以 since 符合语境。故选 B。

32. A. change

B. recognise

C. explore

D. photograph

C 带孩子外出徒步旅行,应该是想让孩子探索 世界、探索未知。故选C。

**33.** A. make

B. feel

C. know

D. find

A make it 意为"获得成功",这里指孩子成功地 完成了远足。故选A。

34. A. prize

B. lesson

C. praise

D. harvest

C 根据语境可知,作者的儿子赢得了 Dale 的赞 扬,他是这条路线上年龄最大的徒步旅行者。故 选 C。

35. A. emotional

B. intellectual

C. imaginative

D. magical

A 作者的儿子这么小就完成了如此大的挑战, 一方面有助于他社交能力的发展,另一方面他的 精神情感方面也应该会受到积极的影响,让他变 得更坚强,能更好地体验人生。故选 A。

Ⅳ. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Imagine having everything you need: healthcentres, stores, parks—just a few 36. steps (step) from home. It could make you healthier and build stronger connections between you and your neighbours.

This is the idea behind the 15-minute city. Here, people can get all the services they need within 15 minutes of home, either on foot 37. or by bike. This model is being developed in cities around the world, from Paris to Portland. Carlos Moreno is a scientific 38. director (direct) at France's IAE Paris Sorbonne Business School. He is also a key theorist (理论家) behind the 15-minute city plan for Paris. "My idea is to create a livable city 39. which/that can increase the quality of life," Moreno says.

15 minutes' cities were inspired by the need **40.** to fight (fight) climate (气候) change. In a 15minute city, the focus is on 41. building (build) more sidewalks and bike lanes. Moreno says walking or biking across the city 42. is (be) a good way to greatly reduce CO2 emissions (排放物).

Joe Zehnder, chief planner for the city of Portland, Oregon, is developing "20-minute neighbourhoods". "Having stores close 43. to home gives people more chances to choose healthy foods," Zehnder says.

As a neighbourhood becomes more convenient, housing costs can increase. This 44. certainly (certain) leaves a lot of people out. Zehnder says his approach is "to try to create more housing and more types of housing, so that families in 45. different (difference) economic situations have an opportunity to live there".

Ⅴ. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假定你是李华,本周日下午你市大剧院有川剧变 脸演出(Sichuan Opera face-changing performance), 请给你校外籍教师 Smith 先生写一封邮件,内容包 括:

- 1. 邀请他观看演出;
- 2. 演出信息:时间、地点和表演者等;
- 3. 期待回复。

注意:词数 80 左右。

# 【参考范文】

Dear Mr Smith,

How's everything going recently? I'm writing

to invite you to enjoy a Sichuan Opera face-changing performance this Sunday!

This performance will start at 3 pm and last about 3 hours at the City Theatre. A famous master of Sichuan Opera will perform this unique form of traditional Chinese art for the audience. I know you're interested in Chinese opera so I believe it's a valuable chance for you to enjoy it in person.

I'm looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

### 第二节 读后续写(满分25分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A light rain was falling as my sister Jill and I ran out of the shop. Across the street from the shop was a gas station where the Greyhound bus stopped, which was closed for New Year, but I saw a family standing outside the locked door, gathering closely together under the narrow overhang in an attempt to keep dry.

Once we got home, there was barely time to enjoy our presents. We had to go off to our grandparents' house for our annual family dinner. As we drove down the highway through town, I noticed that the family was still there, standing outside the closed gas station.

My father was driving very slowly down the highway. The closer we got to the turnoff (盆道) for my grandparents' house, the slower the car went. Suddenly, my father made a U-turn in the middle of the road and said that he couldn't stand it. "What?" asked my mother. "It's those people back there at the station, standing in the rain. They've got children. It's New Year. I can't stand it."

When my father pulled into the service station, I saw that there were five of them; the parents and three children—two girls and a small boy, who were getting wet standing there. My father rolled down his window. "Happy New Year," he said.

"Thanks. You, too," the man replied. He was very tall and had to bend slightly to look into the

car.

"Are you waiting for the bus?" my father asked. The man said that they were. Knowing the bus wouldn't come along for several hours, my father invited them to our home to shelter from the rain.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

	The	man	thought	about	it	for	a	moment,	but
then	refu	sed.							

When we got out of the car at our house,	the three
children ran through the front door happily	

# 【参考范文】

The man thought about it for a moment, but then refused. He said he didn't want to put us to any bother. My father explained that the rain would last long and our house was near the station. After my parents' strong persuasion, he finally agreed and thanked us all the time. They climbed into the car. They had no luggage, only the clothes they were wearing. Once they settled in, my father looked back over his shoulder handing them some tissues to wipe the rainwater from their faces.

When we got out of the car at our house, the three children ran through the front door happily. My mother noticed all their clothes were wet, so she found some of ours for them to change. Jill and I decided to share our New Year presents with the children. One of the girls chose Jill's doll and immediately hugged it to her breast. When the rain stopped, my father drove them to the station. As they drove away, I watched out the window as long as I could, looking back at their happy faces. That was the day when Jill and I learned the joy of making others happy.